

SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

bizhub C250P/C252P

This Service Manual is designed for machine with Firmware Card Ver. G4 and onward.

FIELD SERVICE TOTAL CONTENTS

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS	S-1
IMPORTANT NOTICE	S-1
DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION	S-1
SAFETY WARNINGS	S-2
WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE	S-18
MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT	S-20
Composition of the service manual	C-1
Notation of the service manual	C-2
bizhub C250P/C252P Main Unit	
General	1
Maintenance	13
Adjustment/Setting	149
Troubleshooting	307
Appendix	397

Blank Page

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS

Read carefully the Safety and Important Warning Items described below to understand them before doing service work.

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Because of possible hazards to an inexperienced person servicing this product as well as the risk of damage to the product, KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. (hereafter called the KMBT) strongly recommends that all servicing be performed only by KMBT-trained service technicians.

Changes may have been made to this product to improve its performance after this Service Manual was printed. Accordingly, KMBT does not warrant, either explicitly or implicitly, that the information contained in this Service Manual is complete and accurate.

The user of this Service Manual must assume all risks of personal injury and/or damage to the product while servicing the product for which this Service Manual is intended.

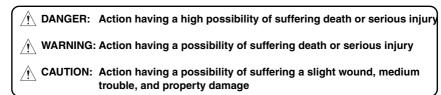
Therefore, this Service Manual must be carefully read before doing service work both in the course of technical training and even after that, for performing maintenance and control of the product properly.

Keep this Service Manual also for future service.

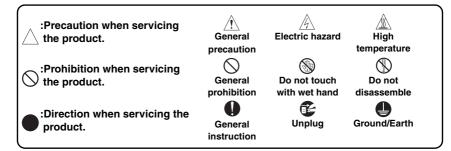
DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION

In this Service Manual, each of three expressions " \(\underset \) DANGER", " \(\underset \) WARNING", and " \(\underset \) CAUTION" is defined as follows together with a symbol mark to be used in a limited meaning.

When servicing the product, the relevant works (disassembling, reassembling, adjustment, repair, maintenance, etc.) need to be conducted with utmost care.



Symbols used for safety and important warning items are defined as follows:



SAFETY WARNINGS

[1] MODIFICATIONS NOT AUTHORIZED BY KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

KONICA MINOLTA brand products are renowned for their high reliability. This reliability is achieved through high-quality design and a solid service network.

Product design is a highly complicated and delicate process where numerous mechanical, physical, and electrical aspects have to be taken into consideration, with the aim of arriving at proper tolerances and safety factors. For this reason, unauthorized modifications involve a high risk of degradation in performance and safety. Such modifications are therefore strictly prohibited, the points listed below are not exhaustive, but they illustrate the reasoning behind this policy.

Prohibited Actions ! DANGER Using any cables or power cord not specified by KMBT. Using any fuse or thermostat not specified by KMBT. Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury. Disabling fuse functions or bridging fuse terminals with wire, metal clips, solder or similar object. Disabling relay functions (such as wedging paper between relay contacts) Disabling safety functions (interlocks, safety circuits, etc.) Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury. · Making any modification to the product unless instructed by KMBT Using parts not specified by KMBT

[2] POWER PLUG SELECTION

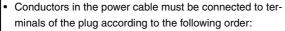
In some countries or areas, the power plug provided with the product may not fit wall outlet used in the area. In that case, it is obligation of customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) to attach appropriate power plug or power cord set in order to connect the product to the supply.

Power Cord Set or Power Plug

⚠ WARNING

- Use power supply cord set which meets the following criteria:
 - provided with a plug having configuration intended for the connection to wall outlet appropriate for the product's rated voltage and current, and
 - the plug has pin/terminal(s) for grounding, and
 - provided with three-conductor cable having enough current capacity, and
 - the cord set meets regulatory requirements for the area. Use of inadequate cord set leads to fire or electric shock.
- · Attach power plug which meets the following criteria:
 - having configuration intended for the connection to wall outlet appropriate for the product's rated voltage and current, and
 - the plug has pin/terminal(s) for grounding, and
 - meets regulatory requirements for the area.

Use of inadequate cord set leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or electric shock.



Black or Brown: L (line)

• White or Light Blue: N (neutral)

• Green/Yellow: PE (earth)

Wrong connection may cancel safeguards within the product, and results in fire or electric shock.







[3] CHECKPOINTS WHEN PERFORMING ON-SITE SERVICE

KONICA MINOLTA brand products are extensively tested before shipping, to ensure that all applicable safety standards are met, in order to protect the customer and customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) from the risk of injury. However, in daily use, any electrical equipment may be subject to parts wear and eventual failure. In order to maintain safety and reliability, the CE must perform regular safety checks.

Power Supply

Connection to Power Supply

WARNING

Check that mains voltage is as specified.
 Connection to wrong voltage supply may result in fire or electric shock.



 Connect power plug directly into wall outlet having same configuration as the plug.

Use of an adapter leads to the product connecting to inadequate power supply (voltage, current capacity, grounding), and may result in fire or electric shock. If proper wall outlet is not available, advice the customer to contact qualified electrician for the installation.



 Plug the power cord into the dedicated wall outlet with a capacity greater than the maximum power consumption.
 If excessive current flows in the wall outlet, fire may result.



 If two or more power cords can be plugged into the wall outlet, the total load must not exceed the rating of the wall outlet.



If excessive current flows in the wall outlet, fire may result.

 Make sure the power cord is plugged in the wall outlet securely.

Contact problems may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and the risk of fire.



Check whether the product is grounded properly.
 If current leakage occurs in an ungrounded product, you may suffer electric shock while operating the product.
 Connect power plug to grounded wall outlet.



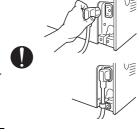
Power Plug and Cord

⚠ WARNING

 When using the power cord set (inlet type) that came with this product, make sure the connector is securely inserted in the inlet of the product.

When securing measure is provided, secure the cord with the fixture properly.

If the power cord (inlet type) is not connected to the product securely, a contact problem may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and risk of fire.



 Check whether the power cord is not stepped on or pinched by a table and so on.

Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire.



 Check whether the power cord is damaged. Check whether the sheath is damaged.

If the power plug, cord, or sheath is damaged, replace with a new power cord (with plug and connector on each end) specified by KMBT. Using the damaged power cord may result in fire or electric shock.



• Do not bundle or tie the power cord.

Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire.



 Check whether dust is collected around the power plug and wall outlet.

Using the power plug and wall outlet without removing dust may result in fire.



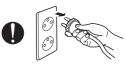
 Do not insert the power plug into the wall outlet with a wet hand.

The risk of electric shock exists.



 When unplugging the power cord, grasp the plug, not the cable.

The cable may be broken, leading to a risk of fire and electric shock.

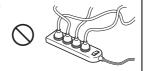


Wiring

⚠ WARNING

 Never use multi-plug adapters to plug multiple power cords in the same outlet.

If used, the risk of fire exists.



When an extension cord is required, use a specified one.
 Current that can flow in the extension cord is limited, so using a too long extension cord may result in fire.

Do not use an extension cable reel with the cable taken up. Fire may result.



2. Installation Requirements

Prohibited Installation Places

⚠ WARNING

 Do not place the product near flammable materials or volatile materials that may catch fire.

A risk of fire exists.



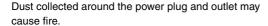
 Do not place the product in a place exposed to water such as rain.

A risk of fire and electric shock exists.

When not Using the Product for a long time

∴ WARNING

 When the product is not used over an extended period of time (holidays, etc.), switch it off and unplug the power cord.



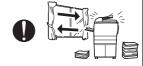




Ventilation

CAUTION

- The product generates ozone gas during operation, but it will not be harmful to the human body.
 - If a bad smell of ozone is present in the following cases, ventilate the room.
 - a. When the product is used in a poorly ventilated room
 - b. When taking a lot of copies
 - c. When using multiple products at the same time



Stability

! CAUTION

 Be sure to lock the caster stoppers.
 In the case of an earthquake and so on, the product may slide, leading to a injury.

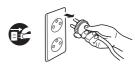


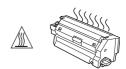
Inspection before Servicing

⚠ CAUTION

- Before conducting an inspection, read all relevant documentation (service manual, technical notices, etc.) and proceed with the inspection following the prescribed procedure, using only the prescribed tools. Do not make any adjustment not described in the documentation.
 - If the prescribed procedure or tool is not used, the product may break and a risk of injury or fire exists.
- Before conducting an inspection, be sure to disconnect the power plugs from the product and options.
 When the power plug is inserted in the wall outlet, some units are still powered even if the POWER switch is turned OFF. A risk of electric shock exists.
- The area around the fixing unit is hot.
 You may get burnt.







Work Performed with the Product Powered On

⚠ WARNING

 Take every care when making adjustments or performing an operation check with the product powered.

If you make adjustments or perform an operation check with the external cover detached, you may touch live or high-voltage parts or you may be caught in moving gears or the timing belt, leading to a risk of injury.



 Take every care when servicing with the external cover detached.

High-voltage exists around the drum unit. A risk of electric shock exists.



Safety Checkpoints

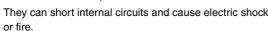
⚠ WARNING

 Check the exterior and frame for edges, burrs, and other damage.



The user or CE may be injured.

 Do not allow any metal parts such as clips, staples, and screws to fall into the product.







Check wiring for squeezing and any other damage.
 Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.



 Carefully remove all toner remnants and dust from electrical parts and electrode units such as a charging corona unit.



Current can leak, leading to a risk of product trouble or fire.

Check high-voltage cables and sheaths for any damage.
 Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.





Safety Checkpoints

WARNING

 Check electrode units such as a charging corona unit for deterioration and sign of leakage.

Current can leak, leading to a risk of trouble or fire.



 Before disassembling or adjusting the write unit (P/H unit) incorporating a laser, make sure that the power cord has been disconnected.

The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of eyesight.



 Do not remove the cover of the write unit. Do not supply power with the write unit shifted from the specified mounting position.

The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of eyesight.



 When replacing a lithium battery, replace it with a new lithium battery specified in the Parts Guide Manual. Dispose of the used lithium battery using the method specified by local authority.

Improper replacement can cause explosion.

A risk of fire exists.

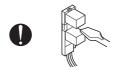


 After replacing a part to which AC voltage is applied (e.g., optical lamp and fixing lamp), be sure to check the installation state.



 Check the interlock switch and actuator for loosening and check whether the interlock functions properly.

If the interlock does not function, you may receive an electric shock or be injured when you insert your hand in the product (e.g., for clearing paper jam).



 Make sure the wiring cannot come into contact with sharp edges, burrs, or other pointed parts.

Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire.



Safety Checkpoints

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that all screws, components, wiring, connectors, etc. that were removed for safety check and maintenance have been reinstalled in the original location. (Pay special attention to forgotten connectors, pinched cables, forgotten screws, etc.)



A risk of product trouble, electric shock, and fire exists.

Handling of Consumables

⚠ WARNING

 Toner and developer are not harmful substances, but care must be taken not to breathe excessive amounts or let the substances come into contact with eyes, etc. It may be stimulative.



If the substances get in the eye, rinse with plenty of water immediately. When symptoms are noticeable, consult a physician.



Never throw the used cartridge and toner into fire.
 You may be burned due to dust explosion.



Handling of Service Materials

! CAUTION

Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
 Drum cleaner (isopropyl alcohol) and roller cleaner (acetone-based) are highly flammable and must be handled with care. A risk of fire exists.





 Do not replace the cover or turn the product ON before any solvent remnants on the cleaned parts have fully evaporated.





A risk of fire exists.

Handling of Service Materials

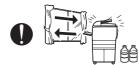
↑ CAUTION

 Use only a small amount of cleaner at a time and take care not to spill any liquid. If this happens, immediately wipe it off.



A risk of fire exists.

When using any solvent, ventilate the room well.
 Breathing large quantities of organic solvents can lead to discomfort.



[4] Used Batteries Precautions

ALL Areas

CAUTION

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced.

Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.

Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Germany

VORSICHT!

Explosionsgefahr bei unsachgemäßem Austausch der Batterie.

Ersatz nur durch denselben oder einen vom Hersteller empfohlenen gleichwertigen Typ. Entsorgung gebrauchter Batterien nach Angaben des Herstellers.

France

ATTENTION

Il y a danger d'explosion s'il y a remplacement incorrect de la batterie.

Remplacer uniquement avec une batterie du même type ou d'un type équivalent recommandé par le constructeur.

Mettre au rebut les batteries usagées conformément aux instructions du fabricant.

Denmark

ADVARSEL!

Lithiumbatteri - Eksplosionsfare ved fejlagtig håndtering. Udskiftning må kun ske med batteri af samme fabrikat og type.

Levér det brugte batteri tilbage til leverandøren.

Finland, Sweden

VAROITUS

Paristo voi räjähtää, jos se on virheellisesti asennettu.

Vaihda paristo ainoastaan laitevalmistajan suosittelemaan tyyppiin.

Hävitä käytetty paristo valmistajan ohjeiden mukaisesti.

VARNING

Explosionsfara vid felaktigt batteribyte.

Använd samma batterityp eller en ekvivalent typ som rekommenderas av apparattillverkaren.

Kassera använt batteri enligt fabrikantens instruktion.

Norway

ADVARSEL

Eksplosjonsfare ved feilaktig skifte av batteri.

Benytt samme batteritype eller en tilsvarende type anbefalt av apparatfabrikanten.

Brukte batterier kasseres i henhold til fabrikantens instruksjoner.

[5] FUSE

CAUTION

Double pole / neutral fusing

ATTENTION

Double pôle / fusible sur le neutre.

[6] Laser Safety

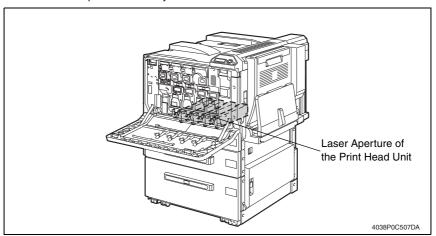
 This is a digital machine certified as a Class 1 laser product. There is no possibility of danger from a laser, provided the machine is serviced according to the instruction in this manual.

6.1 Internal Laser Radiation

semiconductor laser		
Maximum power of the laser diode	10 mW	
Maximum average radiation power (*)	8.0 μW	
Wavelength	775-800 nm	

^{*}at laser aperture of the Print Head Unit

- This product employs a Class 3B laser diode that emits an invisible laser beam. The laser diode and the scanning polygon mirror are incorporated in the print head unit.
- The print head unit is NOT A FIELD SERVICEABLE ITEM. Therefore, the print head unit should not be opened under any circumstances.



U.S.A., Canada (CDRH Regulation)

- This machine is certified as a Class 1 Laser product under Radiation Performance Standard according to the Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act of 1990. Compliance is mandatory for Laser products marketed in the United States and is reported to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS). This means that the device does not produce hazardous laser radiation.
- The label shown on page S-16 indicates compliance with the CDRH regulations and must be attached to laser products marketed in the United States.

CAUTION

 Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

semiconductor laser	
Maximum power of the laser diode	10 mW
Wavelength	775-800 nm

All Areas

CAUTION

 Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

semiconductor laser		
Maximum power of the laser diode	10 mW	
Wavelength	775-800 nm	

Denmark

ADVARSEL

Usynlig laserstråling ved åbning, når sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude af funktion.
 Undgå udsættelse for stråling. Klasse 1 laser produkt der opfylder IEC60825-1 sikkerheds kravene.

halvlederlaser		
Laserdiodens højeste styrke	10 mW	
bølgelængden	775-800 nm	

Finland, Sweden

LUOKAN 1 LASERLAITE KLASS 1 LASER APPARAT

VAROITUS!

Laitteen käyttäminen muulla kuin tässä käyttöohjeessa mainitulla tavalla saattaa altistaa käyttäjän turvallisuusluokan 1 ylittävälle näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle.

puolijohdelaser		
Laserdiodin suurin teho	10 mW	
aallonpituus	775-800 nm	

VARNING!

 Om apparaten används på annat sätt än i denna bruksanvisning specificerats, kan användaren utsättas för osynlig laserstrålning, som överskrider gränsen för laserklass 1.

halvledarlaser	
Den maximala effekten för laserdioden	10 mW
våglängden	775-800 nm

VARO!

 Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettaessa olet alttiina näkymättomälle lasersäteilylle. Älä katso säteeseen.

VARNING!

 Osynlig laserstråining när denna del är öppnad och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej stråien.

Norway

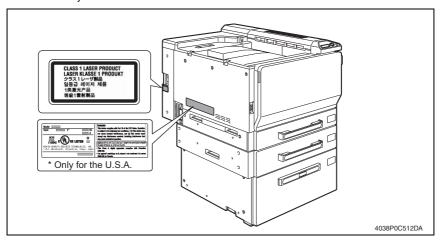
ADVERSEL

Dersom apparatet brukes på annen måte enn spesifisert i denne bruksanvisning, kan brukeren utsettes för unsynlig laserstrålning, som overskrider grensen for laser klass 1.

halvleder laser	
Maksimal effekt till laserdiode	10 mW
bølgelengde	775-800 nm

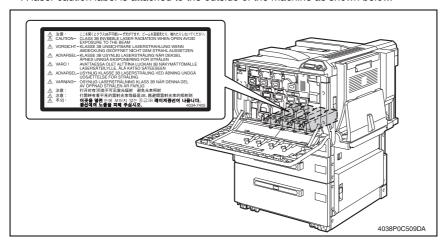
6.2 Laser Safety Label

· A laser safety label is attached to the inside of the machine as shown below.



6.3 Laser Caution Label

• A laser caution label is attached to the outside of the machine as shown below.



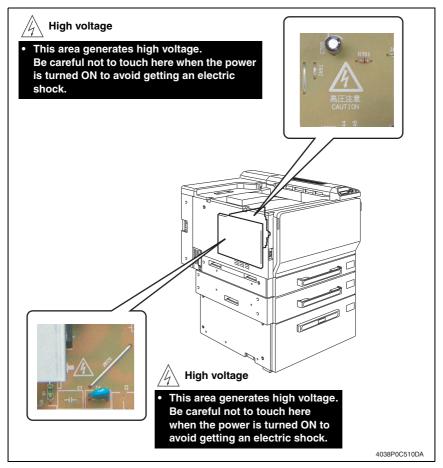
6.4 PRECAUTIONS FOR HANDLING THE LASER EQUIPMENT

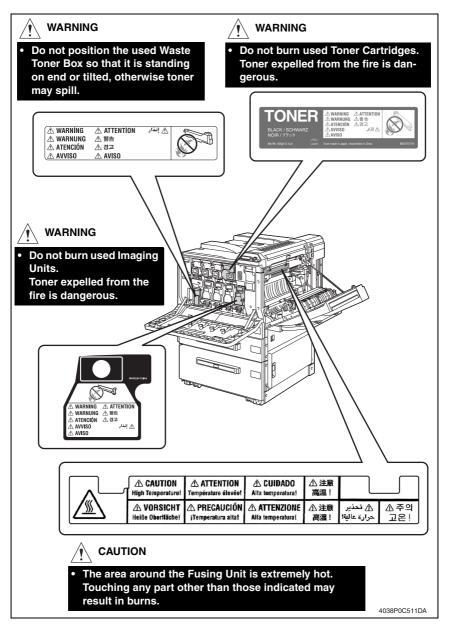
- When laser protective goggles are to be used, select ones with a lens conforming to the above specifications.
- When a disassembly job needs to be performed in the laser beam path, such as when working around the printerhead and PC Drum, be sure first to turn the printer OFF.
- If the job requires that the printer be left ON, take off your watch and ring and wear laser protective goggles.
- A highly reflective tool can be dangerous if it is brought into the laser beam path. Use utmost care when handling tools on the user's premises.
- The Print Head is not to be disassembled or adjusted in the field. Replace the Unit or Assembly including the Control Board. Therefore, remove the Laser Diode, and do not perform Control Board trimmer adjustment.

WARNING INDICATIONS ON THE MACHINE

Caution labels shown are attached in some areas on/in the machine.

When accessing these areas for maintenance, repair, or adjustment, special care should be taken to avoid burns and electric shock.





⚠ CAUTION:

 You may be burned or injured if you touch any area that you are advised not to touch by any caution label. Do not remove caution labels. If any caution label has come off or soiled and therefore the caution cannot be read, contact our Service Office.

MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT

- If an accident has occurred, the distributor who has been notified first must immediately take emergency measures to provide relief to affected persons and to prevent further damage.
- If a report of a serious accident has been received from a customer, an on-site evaluation must be carried out quickly and KMBT must be notified.
- 3. To determine the cause of the accident, conditions and materials must be recorded through direct on-site checks, in accordance with instructions issued by KMBT.
- For reports and measures concerning serious accidents, follow the regulations specified by every distributor.

Composition of the service manual

This service manual explains about the Field Service section of the machine.

Since the Theory of Operation section is same as that of C250/C252, refer to the Theory of Operation section of C250/C252 service manual.

Field Service section gives, as information required by the CE at the site (or at the customer's premise), a rough outline of the service schedule and its details, maintenance steps, the object and role of each adjustment, error codes and supplementary information.

The basic configuration of each section is as follows.

<Field service section>

GENERAL: Explanation of system configuration, and product

specifications

MAINTENANCE: Explanation of service schedule, service jig, and firmware

version up method etc.

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING: Explanation of utility mode and service mode etc.

TROUBLESHOOTING: Explanation of lists of jam codes and error codes, and

their countermeasures etc.

APPENDIX: Parts layout drawings

Notation of the service manual

A. Product name

In this manual, each of the products is described as follows:

(1) PWB-MFP: MFP Control Board

PWB-M: Control Board

(2) bizhub C250P/C252P: Main body
 (3) Microsoft Windows 98: Windows 98
 Microsoft Windows Me: Windows Me

Microsoft Windows NT 4.0: Windows NT 4.0 or Windows NT

Microsoft Windows 2000: Windows 2000
Microsoft Windows XP: Windows XP

When the description is made in combination of the OS's mentioned above:

Windows 98/Me

Windows NT 4.0/2000 Windows NT/2000/XP

Windows 98/Me/ NT/2000/XP

B. Brand name

The company names and product names mentioned in this manual are the brand name or the registered trademark of each company.

C. Feeding Direction

- When the long side of the paper is parallel with the feeding direction, it is called Short Edge Feeding. The feeding direction which is perpendicular to the Short Edge Feeding is called the Long Edge Feeding.
- Short Edge Feeding will be identified with [S (Abbreviation for Short Edge Feeding)] on the paper size. No specific notation is added for the Long Edge Feeding.
 When the size has only the Short Edge Feeding with no Long Edge Feeding, [S] will not be added to the paper size.

<Sample notation>

Paper size	Feeding direction	Notation
A4	Long Edge Feeding	A4
A4	Short Edge Feeding	A4S
A3	Short Edge Feeding	A3



SERVICE MANUAL

FIELD SERVICE

bizhub C250P/C252P Main Unit

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show to the left of the revised section.
 A number within represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **\(\hat{\hat{h}} \)** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0:
 The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2006/09	3.0	<u> 2</u>	Added the description of bizhub C252P/ Error corrections / Corresponded to a Card Version G4
2006/03	2.0	A	Corresponded to Phase2 /Corresponded to a full version manual
2005/09	1.0	_	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

bizhub C250P/C252P Main Unit

General

	1.	Syste	em configuration	1
	2.	Product specifications		4
	3.	Center cross section		9
	4.	Pape	r path	10
	5.	Imag	e creation process	11
١	/lain	itena	ance	
	6.	Perio	dical check	13
	6.1	Ser	vice schedule	13
	6.2	Mai	ntenance items	13
	6.2	2.1	Parts to be replaced by users (CRU)	13
	6.2	2.2	Periodical parts replacement 1 (per 120,000-print)	14
	6.2	2.3	Periodical parts replacement 2 (per 200,000-print)	14
	6.2	2.4	Periodical parts replacement 3 (per 300,000-print)	15
	6.3	Mai	ntenance parts	16
	6.3	3.1	Replacement parts	16
	6.3	3.2	Cleaning parts	17
	6.4	Cor	ncept of parts life	18
	6.5	Mai	ntenance procedure (Periodical check parts)	20
	6.	5.1	Replacing the Tray 1 Feed Roller	20
	6.	5.2	Replacing the Tray 1 Separation Roller Assy	20
	6.	5.3	Replacing the Bypass Tray Feed Roller	21
	6.	5.4	Replacing the Bypass Tray Separation Roller Assy	23
	6.	5.5	Replacing the Tray 2 Separation Roller	24
	6.	5.6	Replacing the Tray 2 Feed Roller	25
	6.	5.7	Replacing the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller	28
	6.	5.8	Cleaning of the Registration Roller	30
	6.	5.9	Replacing the Waste Toner Box	31
	6.	5.10	Cleaning of the Area around the Waste Toner Collecting Port	32
	6.	5.11	Replacing the Ozone Filter	32
	6.	5.12	Replacing the Deodorant Filter	32
	6.	5.13	Replacing the Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance	
	6.	5.14	Replacing the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan	

6.6 Rep	lacing the unit	34
6.6.1	Replacing the 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	34
6.6.2	Replacing the Image Transfer Belt Unit	34
6.6.3	Cleaning of the Image Transfer Entrance Guide	36
6.6.4	Cleaning of the IDC/Registration Sensor 1, 2	37
6.6.5	Replacing the Toner Cartridge (C, M, Y, K)	37
6.6.6	Cleaning of the Comb Electrode	38
6.6.7	Replacing the Imaging Unit (C, M, Y, K)	39
6.6.8	Replacing the Fusing Unit	42
7. Servi	ce tool	44
7.1 CE	Tool list	44
7.2 Prin	t materials	45
7.2.1	Imaging Unit Single Parts (IU)	45
7.2.2	Toner Cartridge Single Parts (T/C)	45
7.2.3	Waste Toner Box	45
7.2.4	Maintenance Kit	45
8. Servi	ce Jig	46
	struction of the Service Jig	
8.2 Sett	ing up the Service Jig	47
8.2.1	Prepare the unit necessary for the Service jig	47
8.2.2	Connecting the Service jig	48
8.2.3	Connecting the Jig Software to the Printer	49
9. Electr	rical/Image Adjustment	52
9.1 Call	ing the Service Mode to Screen	52
9.2 List	of Functions	52
9.2.1	X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)	
10. Firmv	vare upgrade	58
	line	
	parations for firmware rewriting by Cygwin	
10.2.1	Outline	
10.2.2	Service environment	59
10.2.3	Installing the Cygwin	59
10.2.4	Settings of the Windows Environmental Variable	
10.2.5	Writing into the Compact flash	63
10.3 Pre	parations for firmware rewriting by Firmware Imaging Toolkit 2006	
10.3.1	Correspond model	66
10.3.2	Function outline	66
10.3.3	System environment	66

10.	3.4	Installation of software	67
10.	3.5	Update of software	69
10.	3.6	Screen	70
10.	3.7	Details of each function	72
10.	3.8	How to write firmware data	74
10.4	Firm	ware rewriting by compact flash	79
10.4	4.1	Updating method	79
10.4	4.2	Action When Data Transfer Fails	80
10.5	Upd	ating the Firmware with the Internet ISW	81
10.	5.1	Out line	81
10.	5.2	Service environment	81
10.	5.3	Preparations for Firmware rewriting	81
10.	5.4	Firmware rewriting	84
11.	Other		85
11.1	Disa	ssembly/Adjustment prohibited items	85
11.2	Disa	ssembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)	86
11.	2.1	Disassembly/Assembly parts list	86
11.2	2.2	Cleaning parts list	87
11.3	Disa	ssembly/Assembly procedure	88
11.3	3.1	Left Cover (bizhub C250P)/Rear Left Cover	88
11.	3.2	Exit Tray/Upper Rear Cover/Lower Rear Cover	89
11.3	3.3	Multi Bypass Tray Left Cover/Multi Bypass Tray Right Cover/ Multi Bypass Tray Upper Cover	90
11.3	3.4	Front Door	91
11.3	3.5	Rear Right Cover	91
11.3	3.6	Left cover (bizhub C252P)	92
11.3	3.7	Control Panel	93
11.3	3.8	Tray 1	93
11.3	3.9	T 0	95
11.3		Tray 2	00
11.3	3.10	Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	
	3.10 3.11	•	95
		Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	95 96
11.	3.11	Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	95 96 97
11.3 11.3	3.11 3.12	Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	95 96 97 99
11.3 11.3 11.3	3.11 3.12 3.13	Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	95 96 97 99 01
11.3 11.3 11.3 11.3	3.11 3.12 3.13 3.14	Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	95 96 97 99 01
11.3 11.3 11.3 11.3	3.11 3.12 3.13 3.14 3.15	Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	95 96 97 99 01 03
11.3 11.3 11.3 11.3 11.3	3.11 3.12 3.13 3.14 3.15 3.16	Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	95 96 97 99 01 03 04

11.3.19	High Voltage Unit (HV1)	108
11.3.20	Tray 1 Paper Size Board (PWB-I)	109
11.3.21	Tray 2 Control Board (PWB-Z-PC)	110
11.3.22	Tray 2 Paper Size Board (PWB-I-PC)	112
11.3.23	PH Interface Board (PWB-D)	114
11.3.24	Multi Bypass Unit	116
11.3.25	PH Unit	118
11.3.26	Transport Drive Assy	122
11.3.27	Hopper Drive Assy	124
11.3.28	Right Door Assy	125
11.3.29	PWB Box	128
11.3.30	Color Developing Motor (M3)	132
11.3.31	Color PC Drum Motor (M2)	132
11.3.32	Toner Supply Motor C/K (M7)	132
11.3.33	Toner Supply Motor Y/M (M6)	133
11.3.34	Main Motor (M1)	133
11.3.35	Fusing Drive Motor (M4)	134
11.3.36	Tray 2 Lift-Up Motor (M3-PC)	136
11.3.37	Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor (M1-PC)	136
11.3.38	Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor (M2-PC)	138
11.3.39	IDC/Registration Sensor/1, IDC/Registration Sensor/2 (SE1/SE2)	139
11.4 Cle	aning procedure	141
11.4.1	PH Window	141
11.4.2	Image Transfer Belt Unit	
11.4.2 11.4.3	Image Transfer Belt Unit Tray 1 Feed Roller	142
		142 142
11.4.3	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 142
11.4.3 11.4.4	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 142 143
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5	Tray 1 Feed Roller Tray 1 Separation Roller Bypass Tray Feed Roller	142 142 142 143
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6	Tray 1 Feed Roller Tray 1 Separation Roller Bypass Tray Feed Roller Bypass Tray Separation Roller	142 142 142 143 144
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6 11.4.7	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 143 144 145
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6 11.4.7 11.4.8 11.4.9	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 143 144 145
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6 11.4.7 11.4.8 11.4.9	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 143 144 145 147
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6 11.4.7 11.4.8 11.4.9 Adjustme	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 143 144 147 148
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6 11.4.7 11.4.8 11.4.9 Adjustme 12. How 13. Control	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 143 145 148 149 150
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6 11.4.7 11.4.8 11.4.9 Adjustme 12. How 13. Conti	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 143 144 145 148 149 150
11.4.3 11.4.4 11.4.5 11.4.6 11.4.7 11.4.8 11.4.9 Adjustme 12. How 13. Control 13.1 Idea	Tray 1 Feed Roller	142 142 143 145 147 148 150 150

13.3.1	Procedure	156
13.3.2	Cancelling the settings	156
13.3.3	Changing the settings on the Setting menu	156
13.4 Set	tings in Job Operation (Account Track)	157
13.5 Set	tings in Paper Tray	158
13.6 Bar	nner Printing	158
14. User	Setting	159
	er Setting Function Setting Procedure	
14.1.1	Procedure	
14.1.2	Cancelling the settings	
14.1.3	Changing the settings on the Setting menu	159
14.2 Set	tings in User setting	
14.2.1	Print Reports	
14.2.2	System Setting	160
14.2.3	Power Save	160
14.2.4	Tray Setting	161
14.2.5	Output Setting	162
14.2.6	Printer Setting	163
14.3 Set	tings in Admin. Setting	168
14.3.1	Procedure	168
14.3.2	Canceling the settings	168
14.3.3	Changing the settings on Admin. Setting	168
14.3.4	Network	169
14.3.5	I/F Setting	182
14.3.6	Time Adjustment	183
14.3.7	System Setting	184
14.3.8	User Box Oper	185
14.3.9	List Output Mode List	185
14.3.10	Call Center	185
14.3.11	Security Setting	185
14.3.12	OpenAPI	192
14.3.13	Data Capture	193
15. Adjus	stment item list	194
16. TECI	H. REP. MODE	196
16.1 Cal	ling the Tech. Rep. Mode to Screen	196
16.1.1	Procedure	
16.1.2	Exiting	197
16.1.3	Changing the Setting Value in Service Mode Functions	197

h. Rep. Mode function tree	198
tings in Tech. Rep. Mode	200
Counter Reset	200
Running Mode	200
Option Board	200
List Output	201
Serial Number	201
Image Controller	202
Unit Change	202
LCT Paper Size	202
Initialization	203
Foolscap Size	203
No Sleep	203
Security Setting	204
HDD Formatting	205
Version Upgrade	205
Data Capture	207
Data Backup	210
Software SW	210
Comm. System	210
tings in CS Remote Care	211
Outlines	211
Setting Up the CS Remote Care	211
Software SW setting for CS Remote Care	214
Setup confirmation	219
Calling the Maintenance	219
Calling the Center from the Administrator	219
Checking the transmission log	219
Detail on settings	220
List of the CS Remote Care error code	225
Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care	227
oft	228
nection when using the Jig Software	228
Connecting the Crossing Cable	228
v to display the Jig Software	229
software function tree (Service Mode)	230
e/Time Input mode	232
Date & Time Setting mode screen	232
	ings in Tech. Rep. Mode Counter Reset

Troubleshooting

17.5 Ma	chine	233
17.5.1	Fusing Temperature	233
17.5.2	Fusing Transport Speed	234
17.5.3	Printer Area	235
17.5.4	Printer Resist Loop	237
17.5.5	Color Registration Adjustment	238
17.5.6	Fusing Loop Size	239
17.5.7	Manual Bypass Tray Adjustment	239
17.5.8	Lead Edge Erase Adjustment	239
	nware Version	
17.7 Ima	ging Process Adjustment	240
17.7.1	X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)	240
17.7.2	D Max Density	240
17.7.3	Background Voltage Margin	241
17.7.4	Transfer Output Fine Adjustment	241
17.7.5	Stabilizer	242
17.7.6	Thick Paper Density Adjustment	243
17.7.7	TCR Toner Supply	244
17.7.8	Monochrome Density Adjustment	244
17.7.9	Dev. Bias Choice	244
17.8 CS	Remote Care	245
17.8.1	Outlines	245
17.8.2	Setting Up the CS Remote Care	245
17.8.3	Software SW setting for CS Remote Care	248
17.8.4	Setup confirmation	253
17.8.5	Calling the Maintenance	253
17.8.6	Calling the Center from the Administrator	253
17.8.7	Checking the transmission log	253
17.8.8	Detail on settings	254
17.8.9	List of the CS Remote Care error code	259
17.8.10	Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care	262
17.9 Sys	stem 1	263
17.9.1	Marketing Area	263
17.9.2	Serial Number	263
17.9.3	No Sleep	263
17.9.4	Foolscap Size Setting	264
17.9.5	Install Date	264
17.9.6	Initialization	264

17.9.7	Communication System Setting	265
17.10 Syst	tem 2	266
17.10.1	HDD	266
17.10.2	Image Controller Setting	266
17.10.3	Option Board Status	266
17.10.4	Unit Change	267
17.10.5	Software Switch Setting	267
17.10.6	LCT Paper Size Setting	267
17.10.7	Data Capture	268
17.11 Cou	nter	271
17.11.1	Procedure	271
17.11.2	Life	271
17.11.3	Jam	271
17.11.4	Service Call Counter	272
17.11.5	Warning	272
17.11.6	Maintenance	272
17.11.7	Service Total Counter	272
17.11.8	Counter of Each Mode	273
17.11.9	Service Call History (Data)	273
17.11.10	Paper Jam History	273
17.12 List	Output	274
17.12.1	Machine Management List	274
17.12.2	Adjustment List	274
17.13 Stat	e Confirmation	274
17.13.1	Sensor Check	274
17.13.2	Table Number	284
17.13.3	Level History1	284
17.13.4	Level History2	284
17.13.5	Temp. & Humidity	284
17.13.6	Memory/HDD Adj	285
17.13.7	Memory/HDD State	286
17.13.8	Color Regist	287
17.13.9	IU Lot No.	287
17.13.10	Adjustment Data List	287
17.14 Test	Mode	288
17.14.1	Procedure for Test Pattern Output	288
17.14.2	Gradation Pattern	288
17.14.3	Halftone Pattern	289

17.14.4	Lattice Pattern	289
17.14.5	Solid Pattern	. 290
17.14.6	Color Sample	. 290
17.14.7	8 Color Solid Pattern	. 291
17.14.8	Running Mode	291
17.15 Fin	sher	. 291
17.16 Inte	rnet ISW	. 292
17.16.1	Internet ISW Set	292
17.16.2	HTTP Setting	. 293
17.16.3	FTP Setting	. 294
17.16.4	Forwarding Access Setting	. 295
18. Enha	nced Security	. 296
18.1 Enl	nanced Security Function Setting Procedure	. 296
18.1.1	Procedure	296
18.1.2	Exiting	. 296
18.2 Enl	nanced Security Function Tree	296
18.3 Set	tings in the Enhanced Security	. 297
18.3.1	CE Password	. 297
18.3.2	Administrator Password	. 297
18.3.3	CE Authentication	297
18.3.4	IU Life Stop Setting	. 298
19. Billin	g Setting	. 299
19.1 Billi	ng Setting Function Setting Procedure	. 299
19.1.1	Procedure	. 299
19.1.2	Exiting	. 299
19.2 Billi	ng Setting Function Tree	. 299
19.3 Set	tings in the Billing Setting	. 300
19.3.1	Counter Setting	300
19.3.2	Coverage Rate Clear	301
20. Proc	edure for Resetting	. 302
	uble resetting	
20.2 Cor	ntents to be cleared by Reset function	302
	nanical adjustment	
21.1 Me	chanical adjustment of the bypass tray section	
21.1.1	Adjustment of the Bypass Paper Size Unit	
21.2 PH	Unit Mechanical Adjustment	305
21.2.1	Skew Adjustment	305

22. Jam	Display	307
22.1 Mi	sfeed Display	307
22.1.1	bizhub C250P	307
22.1.2	bizhub C252P	308
22.2 Mi	sfeed Display Resetting Procedure	309
22.3 Se	nsor layout	309
22.4 Sc	lution	311
22.4.1	Initial Check Items	311
22.4.2	Misfeed at Tray 1 feed section	312
22.4.3	Misfeed at 2nd Image Transfer section	313
22.4.4	Misfeed at Tray 2 feed, Tray 2 vertical transport section	314
22.4.5	Misfeed at Manual Bypass feed section	315
22.4.6	Misfeed at LCT feed and LCT vertical transport section (PC-403)	316
22.4.7	Misfeed at Tray 3 Feed and Tray 3 vertical transport section (PC-103/PC203)	317
22.4.8	Misfeed at Tray 4 Feed and Tray 4 vertical transport section (PC203)	318
22.4.9	Misfeed at Duplex transport section (AD-503)	319
22.4.10	Misfeed at Duplex Unit pre-registration section (AD-503)	320
22.4.11	Misfeed at Fusing/Exit section	321
23. Malf	unction code	322
23.1 Ale	ert code	322
23.1.1	Alert list	322
23.2 Sc	lution	323
23.2.1	P-5: IDC Sensor (Front) failure	324
23.2.2	P-28 IDC Sensor (Back) failure	324
23.2.3	P-6: Cyan Imaging Unit failure	325
23.2.4	P-7: Magenta Imaging Unit failure	325
23.2.5	P-8: Yellow Imaging Unit failure	325
23.2.6	P-9: Black Imaging Unit failure	325
23.2.7	P-21: Color Shift Test Pattern failure	325
23.2.8	P-22: Color Shift Adjust failure	325
23.2.9	P-26: 1st image transfer ATVC (Black) failure	326
23.2.10	P-27: 2nd image transfer ATVC failure	326
23.2.11	P-29: 1st image transfer ATVC (Color) failure	326
23.2.12		
23.2.13	P-31: Black PC Drum Sensor malfunction	326
23.3 Ca	ıll Service (Trouble Code)	327
	•	

	23.3	.1	Call Service list	. 327
2	23.4	How	to reset	345
2	23.5	Solu	ıtion	345
	23.5	.1	C0204: Tray 2 Elevator failure	345
	23.5	.2	C0211: Manual Tray Rise Descent Error	345
	23.5	.3	C0301: Suction Fan Motor's failure to turn	346
	23.5	.4	C2151: 2nd Image Transfer Roller Separation	346
	23.5	.5	C2152: Transfer Belt Separation	346
	23.5	.6	C2253: Color PC Drum Motor's failure to turn	346
	23.5	.7	C2254: Color PC Drum Motor's turning at abnormal timing	347
	23.5	.8	C2255: Color Developing Motor's failure to turn	347
	23.5	.9	C2256: Color Developing Motor's turning at abnormal timing	347
	23.5	.10	C2451: Transfer Cleaner Unit New Article Release	347
	23.5	.11	C2551: Abnormally low toner density detected Cyan TCR Sensor	348
	23.5	.12	C2553: Abnormally low toner density detected Magenta TCR Sensor	348
	23.5	.13	C2555: Abnormally low toner density detected Yellow TCR Sensor	348
	23.5	.14	C2552: Abnormally high toner density detected Cyan TCR Sensor	348
	23.5	.15	C2554: Abnormally high toner density detected Magenta TCR Sensor	348
	23.5	.16	C2556: Abnormally high toner density detected Yellow TCR Sensor	348
	23.5	.17	C2557: Abnormally low toner density detected Black TCR Sensor	349
	23.5	.18	C2558: Abnormally high toner density detected Black TCR Sensor	349
	23.5	.19	C2559: Cyan TCR Sensor adjustment failure	349
	23.5	.20	C255A: Magenta TCR Sensor adjustment failure	349
	23.5	.21	C255B: Yellow TCR Sensor adjustment failure	349
	23.5	.22	C255C: Black TCR Sensor adjustment failure	350
	23.5	.23	C2651: Cyan Imaging Unit EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.24	C2652: Magenta Imaging Unit EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.25	C2653: Yellow Imaging Unit EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.26	C2654: Black Imaging Unit EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.27	C2A01: Cyan Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.28	C2A02: Yellow Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.29	C2A03: Magenta Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.30	C2A04: Black Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error	350
	23.5	.31	C3301: Fusing Cooling Fan Motor /1's failure to turn	
	23.5	.32	C3302: Fusing Cooling Fan Motor /2's failure to turn	
	23.5	.33	C3451: Heat. Heater Trouble	351
	23.5	.34	C3452: Press. Heater Trouble	351
	23.5	.35	C3751: Abnormal High Temp. (Heater)	351

23.5.36	C3752: Abnormal High Temp. (Press)	351
23.5.37	C3851: Abnormal Low Temp. (Heater)	351
23.5.38	C3852: Abnormal Low Temp. (Press)	351
23.5.39	C3461: Fusing Unit New Article Release	352
23.5.40	C3A01: Paper Stuck to Fuser Heater Roller	352
23.5.41	C3A02: Paper Stuck to Fuser Pressure Roller	352
23.5.42	C4151: Polygon Motor/C failure to turn	352
23.5.43	C4152: Polygon Motor/M failure to turn	352
23.5.44	C4153: Polygon Motor/Y failure to turn	352
23.5.45	C4154: Polygon Motor/K failure to turn	352
23.5.46	C4551: Laser malfunction (Cyan)	353
23.5.47	C4552: Laser malfunction (Magenta)	353
23.5.48	C4553: Laser malfunction (Yellow)	353
23.5.49	C4554: Laser malfunction (Black)	353
23.5.50	C4705: Image Output Time Out	353
23.5.51	C4761: Compression hardware timeout	354
23.5.52	C4765: Extraction hardware timeout	354
23.5.53	C4770: JBIG0 Error	354
23.5.54	C4771: JBIG1 Error	354
23.5.55	C4772: JBIG2 Error	354
23.5.56	C4773: JBIG3 Error	354
23.5.57	C4780: Compressor 0 command buffer stop failure	354
23.5.58	C4781: Compressor 1 command buffer stop failure	354
23.5.59	C4782: Compressor 2 command buffer stop failure	354
23.5.60	C4783: Compressor 3 command buffer stop failure	354
23.5.61	C5102: Main Motor's failure to turn	354
23.5.62	C5103: Main Motor Turning at abnormal timing	354
23.5.63	C5351: Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/1's failure to turn	355
23.5.64	C5353: Cooling Fan Motor 2's failure to turn	355
23.5.65	C5354: Ozone Ventilation Fan Motor's failure to turn	355
23.5.66	C5357: Cooling Fan Motor/1's failure to turn	355
23.5.67	C5358: Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/2's failure to turn	356
23.5.68	CA051: Standard Controller configuration failure	356
23.5.69	CA052:Controller hardware error	356
23.5.70	CA053: Controller start failure	356
23.5.71	CC151: ROM contents error upon startup (MSC)	356
23.5.72	CC153: ROM contents error upon startup (PRT)	356

	23.5.73	CC154: ROM contents error upon startup (PH)	356
	23.5.74	CC163: ROM contents error (PRT)	356
	23.5.75	CD001: Hard disk initialization abnormality	357
	23.5.76	CD002: JOB RAM save error	357
	23.5.77	CD004: Hard disk access error	357
	23.5.78	CD005: Hard Disk Error 1	357
	23.5.79	CD006: Hard Disk Error 2	357
	23.5.80	CD007: Hard Disk Error 3	357
	23.5.81	CD008: Hard Disk Error 4	357
	23.5.82	CD009: Hard Disk Error 5	357
	23.5.83	CD00A: Hard Disk Error 6	357
	23.5.84	CD00B: Hard Disk Error 7	357
	23.5.85	CD00C: Hard Disk Error 8	357
	23.5.86	CD00D: Hard Disk Error 9	357
	23.5.87	CD00E: Hard Disk Error A	357
	23.5.88	CD00F: Hard disk data transfer error	357
	23.5.89	CD020: Hard disk verify error	357
	23.5.90	CD010: Hard disk unformat	358
	23.5.91	CD011: Hard disk specifications error	358
	23.5.92	CD201: File memory mounting error	358
	23.5.93	CD202: Memory capacity discrepancy	358
	23.5.94	CD203: Memory capacity discrepancy 2	358
	23.5.95	CD211: PCI-SDRAM DMA operation failure	358
	23.5.96	CD212: Compression/extraction timeout detection	358
	23.5.97	CD241: Encryption board setting error	359
	23.5.98	CD242: Encryption board mounting error	359
	23.5.99	CD3##: NVRAM Data error	359
	23.5.100	CE001: Abnormal message queue	360
	23.5.101	CE003: Task error	360
	23.5.102	CE004: Event error	360
	23.5.103	CE005: Memory access error	360
	23.5.104	CE006: Header access error	360
	23.5.105	CE007: DIMM initialize error	360
	23.5.106	CE002: Message and Method parameter failure	360
	23.5.107	CEEE1: MSC undefined malfunction occurring	360
	23.5.108	CEEE3: Engine Section undefined malfunction	360
24	. Power	supply trouble	361

	24.1 Mad	chine is not Energized at All (PU1 Operation Check)	361
	24.2 Cor	strol panel indicators do not light	361
	24.3 Fus	ing Heaters do not Operate	362
	24.4 Pow	ver is not Supplied to Option	
	24.4.1	Optional Paper Feed Cabinet	362
	24.4.2	Power is not Supplied to Automatic Duplex Unit	362
	24.4.3	Finisher	363
2	5. Imag	e quality problem	364
	25.1 Hov	v to read Element date	364
	25.1.1	Table Number	364
	25.1.2	Level History 1	365
	25.1.3	Level History 2	366
	25.2 Hov	v to identify problematic part	367
	25.2.1	Initial Check Items	367
	25.3 Solu	ution	368
	25.3.1	Printer Monocolor: white lines in Sub Scan Direction, white bands in Sub Scan Direction, colored lines colored bands in Sub Scan Direction	368
	25.3.2	Printer Monocolor: white lines in Main Scan Direction, white bands in Main Scan Direction, colored lines in Main Scan Direction, colored bands in Main Scan Direction	260
	25.3.3	Printer Monocolor: uneven density in sub scan direction	
	25.3.4		
		Printer Monocolor: uneven density in main scan direction	
	25.3.5	Printer Monocolor: low image density	
	25.3.6	Printer Monocolor: gradation reproduction failure	
	25.3.7	Printer Monocolor: foggy background	
	25.3.8	Printer Monocolor: void areas, white spots	
	25.3.9	Printer Monocolor: colored spots	
	25.3.10	Printer Monocolor: blurred image	
	25.3.11	Printer Monocolor: blank print, black print	380
	25.3.12	Printer Monocolor: uneven image	381
	25.3.13	Printer 4-Color: white lines in sub scan direction, white bands in sub scan direction, colored lines in sub scan direction, and colored bands in sub scan direction	382
	25.3.14	Printer 4-Color: white lines in main scan direction, white bands in main scan direction, colored lines in main scan direction, and colored bands in main scan direction	383
	25.3.15	Printer 4-Color: uneven density in sub scan direction	
	25.3.16	Printer 4-Color: uneven density in main scan direction	
	25.3.17	Printer 4-Color: low image density	

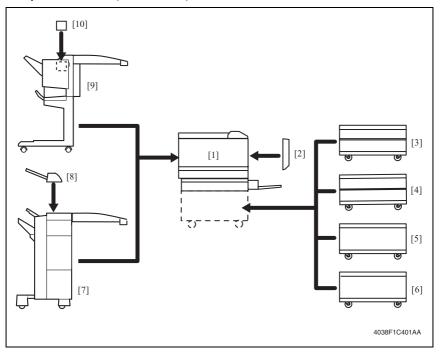
25.3.18	Printer 4-Color: poor color reproduction	387
25.3.19	Printer 4-Color: incorrect color image registration	388
25.3.20	Printer 4-Color: void areas, white spots	389
25.3.21	Printer 4-Color: colored spots	390
25.3.22	Printer 4-Color: poor fusing performance, offset	391
25.3.23	Printer 4-Color: brush effect, blurred image	392
25.3.24	Printer 4-Color: back marking	393
25.3.25	Printer 4-Color: uneven image	394
26. Contr	roller trouble	395
26.1 Una	able to print over the network	395
26.1.1	The "RIP" is displayed on the machine control panel	395
26.1.2	The "RIP" is not displayed on the machine control panel	395
Appendix	(
27. Parts	layout drawing	397
27.1 Mai	n unit	397
27.1.1	Engine section	397
27.1.2	Tray 1	401
27.1.3	Tray 2/Multiple bypass tray	402

Blank Page

General

1. System configuration

1/2 System Front View (bizhub C250P)



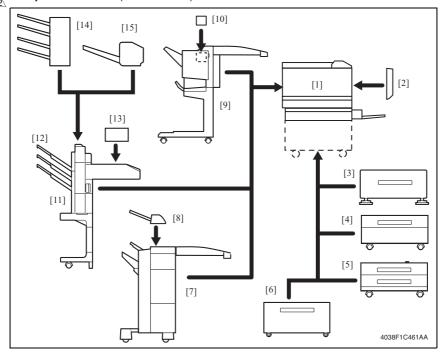
- [1] Machine
- [2] Auto Duplex Unit AD-503
- [3] Paper Feed Cabinet PC-103
- [4] Paper Feed Cabinet PC-203
- [5] Paper Feed Cabinet PC-403

- [6] Desk DK-502
- [7] Finisher FS-501
 - [8] Job Separator JS-601
 - [9] Finisher FS-603
- [10] Punch Kit (for FS-603) PK-501

NOTE

• Use the Desk or the paper feed cabinet without fail when installing on the floor in order to keep the function and quality of the unit.

1/2 System Front View (bizhub C252P)



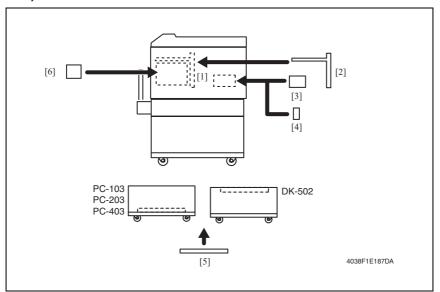
- [1] Machine
- [2] Auto Duplex Unit AD-503
- [3] Desk DK-502
- [4] Paper Feed Cabinet PC-103
- [5] Paper Feed Cabinet PC-203
- [6] Paper Feed Cabinet PC-403
- [7] Finisher FS-501
- [8] Job Separator JS-601

- [9] Finisher FS-603
- [10] Punch Kit (for FS-603) PK-501
 - [11] Finisher FS-514
 - [12] Output Tray OT-601
- [13] Punch Kit PK-510
- [14] Mailbin Kit MT-501
- [15] Saddle Stitcher SD-503

NOTE

 Use the Desk or the paper feed cabinet without fail when installing on the floor in order to keep the function and quality of the unit.

2/2 System Rear View



- [1] Machine
- [2] Mount Kit MK-706
- [3] Hard Disk HD-501

- [4] Security Kit SC-503
- [5] Dehumidifier Heater 1C
- [6] Local Interface Kit EK-702

2. Product specifications

A. Type



Type	Desktop/Console *1 printer		
Printing System	Electrostatic dry-powdered image transfer to plain paper		
Printing Process	Tandem-type indirect electrostatic recording system		
PC Drum Type	OPC (organic photo conductor)		
Paper Feeding System (Standard) Three-way system	Multiple Bypass: 100 sheets Tray1: 250 sheets Tray2: 500 sheets		
Exposure System	Four-multi array PH unit system Two-beam LD + polygon mirror exposure system for Y, M, C, and K (8 beams in total)		
Exposure Density	Equivalent to 1800 dpi in main scanning direction \times 600 dpi in sub scanning direction		
Developing System	HMT developing system		
Charging System	DC comb electrode Scorotron system with electrode cleaning function (manual) *Electrode cleaning function is mounted only on the K imaging unit.		
Image Transfer System	Intermediate transfer belt system		
Paper Separating System	Selection either application of nonwoven fabric bias or resistor grounding + lower-pressure paper separate claws		
Fusing System	Roller fusing		

^{*1:} Only when the optional Paper Feed Cabinet/Desk is installed.

B. Functions

Warm-up Time	110 sec. or less (at ambient temperature of 23° C/73.4° F and rated source voltage)				
Image Loss	Leading edge: 4.2 mm, Rear edge: 4.2 mm, Fro	0 0	,		
First Print Time	(Tray1, A4, full size)				
	Monochrome print	8.4 sec. or less			
	Color print	11.7 sec. or le	11.7 sec. or less		
System Speed	Plain Paper Monochrome/Full color	111 mm/sec			
	Thick Paper (90 to 256 g/m²), OHP, Post card, Envelope, Label sheet	55.5 mm/sec			
Print Speed	Monochrome print	1-sided: 25 prints/min.; 2-sided: 23 prints/min.			
$(A4, 8^{-1}/_2 \times 11)$	× 11) Color print		nts/min.; 2-sided: 23 prints/min.		
Print Paper Size	Tray1, Bypass	Metric Area:	A3 to A5, B6S, A3 Wide (12.25×18), A6S, Thick Paper		
		Inch Area:	11×17 to 5.5×8.5, A3 Wide (12.25×18), 4×6S, Thick Paper		
	Tray2	Metric Area:	A3 to B5, A5S		
	11ay2	Inch Area:	11×17 to 8.5×11, 8.5×11S		
Print Exit Tray Capacity	Plain Paper	350 sheets			
	Thick Paper	20 sheets			
	OHP transparencies	1 sheet			

 Λ

 Λ

C. Types of Paper

Туре		Paper Source			
		Tray1	Tray2	Multiple Bypass	
	Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m²)	0	0	0	
	Translucent paper	-	-	-	
	OHP transparencies (crosswise feeding only)		-		
	Thick paper 1 (91 to 150 g/m²)	(20 sheets or less)	_]	
Print paper type	Thick paper 2 (151 to 209 g/m²)		_	O (10 sheets or less)	
	Thick paper 3 (210 to 256 g/m²) *1			_	1
	Postcards		_]	
	Envelopes			_]
	Labels		-]	
	Long Size Paper (127 to 160 g/m²)	-	_	0	
	Width	90 to 311.1 mm	139.7 to 297 mm	90 to 311.1 mm	
Print paper	Length	139.7 to 457.2 mm	182 to 431.8 mm	139.7 to 457.2 mm	
dimensions	Long Size Paper (Width x Length)	-	-	210 to 297 mm x 1200 mm or less	

^{*1:} Image is not guaranteed when thick paper 3 is used.

Optional Paper Feed Cabinet: Only the Plain paper (weighing 64 to 90 g/m²) is reliably fed.

Automatic Duplex Unit : Only the Plain paper weighing 64 to 90 g/m² or Thick paper weighing 91 to 256 g/m² are reliably fed.

D. Maintenance

Machine Durability	600,000 prints or 5 years, whichever is earlier		
No. of pages printed per	Color print	1,600 prints	
month (Average)	Monochrome print	2,400 prints	
Standard print mode	Color print	3 pages/job	
Standard print mode	Monochrome print	3 pages/job	
Standard Original	Color print	C, M, Y, K 5%	
Density	Monochrome print	K 5%	



E. Machine Specifications

Power Requirements	Voltage:	AC 110 V, 120 V, 127 V, 220-240 V
	Frequency:	50/60 Hz ± 3.0 Hz
Max Power Consumpt	ion	Less than 1500 W (120 V, 12 A / 220 - 240 V, 8 A)
Dimensions	bizhub C250P	653 (W) × 712 (D) × 601 (H) mm *2 25.7 (W) × 28.0 (D) × 23.7 (H) inch *2
Dimensions	bizhub C252P	650 (W) × 712 (D) × 601 (H) mm *2 25.6 (W) × 28.0 (D) × 23.7 (H) inch *2
Space Requirements	bizhub C250P	1822 (W) × 975 (D) mm *3 71.7 (W) × 38.4 (D) inch *3
Space nequirements	bizhub C252P	1743 (W) × 1149 (D) mm *4 68.6 (W) × 45.2 (D) inch *4
	bizhub C250P	Approx. 76 kg / 167.5 lb (without IU and TC)
Mass	bizhub C252P	Approx. 77 kg / 169.8 lb (without IU and TC)
	IU and TC	8.9 kg

^{*2:} width when the bypass tray is closed

F. Operating Environment

Temperature	10 to 30 °C / 50 to 86° F (with a fluctuation of 10° C / 18° F or less per hour)
Humidity	15 to 85% (Relative humidity with a fluctuation of 20%/h)
Levelness	Difference between front and back, right and left should be 1 degree or under.

^{*3:} Space Requirements are the values when the Finisher is slid to the maximum, the bypass tray is opened to the maximum, and the front door is open.

^{*4:} Space Requirements are the values when the Finisher is slid to the maximum, the bypass tray is opened to the maximum, and the paper feed tray is slid to the maximum.

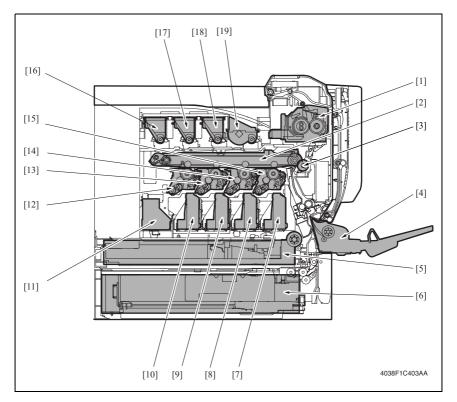
G. Print Functions

	Туре	Built-in printer cont	troller					
	CPU	PPC750 FX 466 M	lHz					
2	RAM	1 GB (Shared with	the C250P/C252P.)					
	HDD	40 GB (Shared wit	h the Option and C250P/C252P.)					
l I	Interface		Standard: Ethernet (10 Base-T or 100 Base-TX) Option: USB 1.1, USB 2.0, or IEEE 1284					
	Supported Protocols	TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, NetBEUI, AppleTalk (EtherTalk)						
	Printer Language	PCL5e/c Emulation PCL6 (XL Ver. 2.1) PostScript 3 Emula	Emulation					
	Printer Fonts	PCL Latin 80 Fonts	s Postscript 3 Emulation Latin 136 Fonts					
	Cumported Operating	Server	Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, or Windows Server 2003					
	Supported Operating Systems	Client	Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows NT 4.0 (SP6a) Mac OS 9.2 or later or Mac OS X 10.2 or 10.3					

NOTE

• These specifications are subject to change without notice.

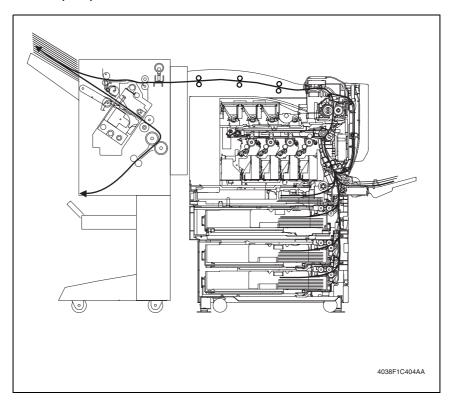
3. Center cross section



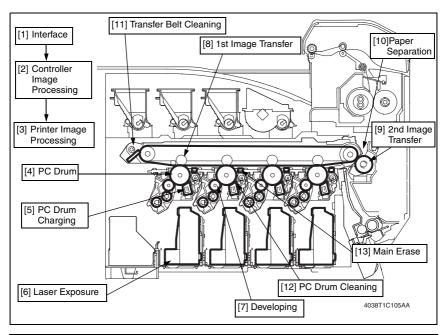
- [1] Fusing Unit
- [2] Transfer Belt Unit
- [3] Image Transfer Roller
- [4] Bypass tray
- [5] Tray1
- [6] Tray2
- [7] Print Head Unit (PH Unit) /K
- [8] Print Head Unit (PH Unit) /C
- [9] Print Head Unit (PH Unit) /M
- [10] Print Head Unit (PH Unit) /Y

- [11] Waste Toner Box
- [12] Imaging Unit/Y
- [13] Imaging Unit/M
- [14] Imaging Unit/C
- [15] Imaging Unit/K
- [15] Illiaging Officia
- [16] Toner Cartridge/Y
- [17] Toner Cartridge/M
- [18] Toner Cartridge/C
- [19] Toner Cartridge/K

4. Paper path



5. Image creation process



[1]	Interface	It is the access system to scan the printed data from the PC to the printer. This model supports the Ethernet as standard.
[2]	Controller Image Processing	Printed data in page description language are converted to VIDEO signals (C, M, Y, and Bk) to output to the printer's image processing section.
[3]	Printer Image Processing	 D/A conversion will be performed after the VIDEO signals (Y, M, C, Bk) are corrected. This data will control the emission of the Laser diode.
[4]	PC Drum	 The image of the original projected onto the surface of the PC Drum is changed to a corresponding electrostatic latent image.
[5]	PC Drum Charging	Supply DC (-) charge on the PC Drum.
[6]	Laser Exposure	Expose photo conductor to a laser beam to develop electrostatic latent image.
[7]	Developing	 The toner, agitated and negatively charged in the Developer Mixing Chamber, is attracted onto the electrostatic latent image formed on the surface of the PC Drum. It is thereby changed to a visible, developed image. AC and DC negative bias voltages are applied to the Developing Roller, thereby preventing toner from sticking to the background image portion.
[8]	1st Image Transfer	 A DC positive voltage is applied to the backside of the Transfer Belt, thereby allowing the visible, developed image on the surface of each of the PC Drums (Y, M, C, and K) to be transferred onto the Transfer Belt.
[9]	2nd Image Transfer	 A DC positive voltage is applied to the backside of the paper, thereby allowing the visible, developed image on the surface of the Transfer Belt to be transferred onto the paper.
[10]	Paper Separation	 The paper, which has undergone the 2nd image transfer process, is neu- tralized so that it can be properly separated from the Transfer Belt by the Paper Separator Claws.

[11]	Transfer Belt Cleaning	 A charge is applied to the Transfer Belt. By potential difference, residual toner on the surface of the Transfer Belt is collected for cleaning.
[12]	PC Drum Cleaning	The residual toner left on the surface of the PC Drum is scraped off.
[13]	Main Erase	The surface of the PC Drum is irradiated with light, which neutralizes any surface potential remaining on the surface of the PC Drum.

Maintenance

6. Periodical check

6.1 Service schedule

Guarantee period (5-year or 600,000 prints)

	Per cycle		× 10,000-print						
	× print number	12	20	24	30	36	40	48	of times
	120,000	•		•		•		•	4
Main Unit	200,000		•				•		2
	300,000				•				1
PC-103 PC-203 PC-403	300,000				•				1
FS-501 FS-603 FS-514 *1	300,000				•				1

^{*1:} bizhub C252P only

2

6.2 Maintenance items

6.2.1 Parts to be replaced by users (CRU)

No.	Class	Parts to be replaced	Cycle	Clean	Replace	Descriptions
1		Imaging Unit C/M/Y	45 K		•	*3
2		Imaging Unit K	70 K		•	*3
3		Dust filter/Cooling Fan	30 K		•	*1
4	Processing 	Comb electrode	When TC K is replaced	•		
5	sections	Toner cartridge: TC (TC Y/TC M/TC C)	12 K		•	*3
6		Toner cartridge: TC (TC K)	20 K		•	*2, 3
7	Fusing section	Deodorant filter	20 K		•	*2
8	Image Trans- fer section	Waste Toner Box	(25 K)		•	*1, 3, 4

^{*1:} Also replace the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan packed in the Waste Toner Box at the same time when the Waste Toner Box is replaced.

See P.202

^{*2:} Also replace the Deodorant Filter packed in the Toner Cartridge K at the same time when 20 K is reached.

^{*3:} The parts can be replaced either by User or Customer Engineer.

^{*4:} A waste toner full condition is detected with detecting the actual waste toner emissions.

6.2.2 Periodical parts replacement 1 (per 120,000-print)

	No.	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubrica- tion	Descrip- tions
	1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions		•				
	2		Appearance		•	•			
-	3	Conveyance	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit5	1			•		
-	4	section	Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance	1			•		*1
	5	Image Trans- fer section	Image Transfer Belt Unit	1			•		•
	6	Processing section	Ozone Filter	1			•		
	7	Image Transfer	Image Transfer Entrance Guide			•			
7	8	section	IDC/Registration Sensor 1, 2			•			
	9	Fusing section	Fusing Unit	1			•		

^{*1:} Replace those four parts at the same time.

6.2.3 Periodical parts replacement 2 (per 200,000-print)

No.	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubrica- tion	Descrip- tions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions		•				
2		Appearance		•	•			
3	Tray 1	Feed Roller	1			•		
4	Bypass	Separation Roller Assy	1			•		

6.2.4 Periodical parts replacement 3 (per 300,000-print)

No.	Class	Parts to be replaced	Number of personnel	Check	Clean	Replace	Lubri- cation	Descriptions
1	Overall	Paper feed and image conditions		•				
2		Appearance		•	•			
3		Pick-up Roller	1			•		
4	Tray 2	Feed Roller	1			•		
5		Separation Roller Assy	1			•		
6	PC-103	Pick-up Roller	1			•		Replace
7	PC-203	Feed Roller	1			•		those three parts at the same time.
8	PC-403	Separation Roller Assy	1			•		
9	FS-501	Paper Feed Roller, Roll			•			
10	FS-603	Transport route, Guide			•			
11		Sensor			•			
12	-FS-514 *1	Paper feed roller, roll			•			
13		Transport route, guide			•			



^{*1:} bizhub C252P only

6.3 Maintenance parts

- To ensure that the machine produces good prints and to extend its service life, it is recommended that the maintenance jobs described in this schedule be carried out as instructed
- Replace with reference to the numeric values displayed on the Life counter.
- Maintenance conditions are based on the case of A4 or 8 $1/2 \times 11$, Standard mode and Low Power Mode OFF.

6.3.1 Replacement parts

A. Main unit

No.	Classification	Parts name	Qua ntity	Actual durable cycle *1	Parts No.	Descrip- tions	Ref.Page in this manual
1	Tray 1	Feed Roller	1	200 K	4034 3012 ##		P.20
2	ilay i	Separation Roller Assy	1	200 K	4034 0151 ##		P.20
3	Bypass	Feed Roller	1	200 K	4131 3001 ##		P.21
4	Буразз	Separation Roller Assy	1	200 K	4034 0151 ##		P.23
5		Feed Roller	1	300 K	4030 3005 ##		P.25
6	Tray 2	Separation Roller Assy	1	300 K	4030 0151 ##		P.24
7		Pick-up Roller	1	300 K	4030 3005 ##		P.28
8	Conveyance	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	1	120 K	4038 0776 00	*2	P.34
9	section	Dust Filter/ Vertical Conveyance	1	120 K	_	*2	P.33
10	Fusing section	Fusing Unit	1	120 K	4038 0755 00 *5 4038 0754 00 *6		P.42
11		Deodorant Filter	1	20 K	_	*3	P.32
12		Imaging Unit Y/M/C	1	45 K	_		P.39
13		Imaging Unit K	1	70 K	_		P.39
14	Processing	Ozone Filter	1	120 K	_	*2	P.32
15	section	Toner Cartridge Y/M/C	1	12 K	_		P.37
16		Toner Cartridge K	1	20 K	_	*3	P.37
17		Dust Filter/Cooling Fan	1	25 K	_	*4	P.33
18	Image transfer	Image Transfer Belt Unit	1	120 K	4038 0777 00	*2	P.34
19	section	Waste Toner Box	1	(25 K)	4065 611	*4, 7	P.31

^{*1:} Actual durable cycle is the Life counter value.

Λ

^{*2:} Also replace the 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit, Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance and Ozone Filter packed in the Image Transfer Belt Unit at the same time when 120 K is reached.

⁽Part No. of the Transfer Kit: 4038 0777 00)

^{*3:} Also replace the Deodorant Filter packed in the Toner Cartridge K at the same time when 20 K is reached.

^{*4:} Also replace the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan packed in the Waste Toner Box at the same time when the Waste Toner Box is replaced.

^{*5: 220-240} V areas only.

^{*6: 110} V to 120 V areas only.

^{*7:} A waste toner full condition is detected with detecting the actual waste toner emissions.

B. Option

No.	Classification	Parts name	Qua ntity	Actual durable cycle *1	Parts No.	Descrip- tions	Ref.Page in this manual
1		Pick-up Roller	1	300 K	4030 3005 ##	Replace	
2	PC-103	Feed Roller	1	300 K	4030 3005 ##	those three	
3	PC-203 PC-403 *2	Separation Roller Assy	1	300 K	4030 0151 ##	parts at the same time.	*2

^{*1:} Actual durable cycle is the Life counter value.

Cleaning parts 6.3.2

	No.	Classification	Parts name	Actual cleaning cycle	Descrip- tions	Ref.Page in this manual
	1	Processing section	Comb Electrode	When TC/K is replaced (20 K)		P.38
	2	Conveyance section	Registration Roller	Upon each call (60 K)		P.30
	3		Area around the Waste Toner Collecting Port	Upon each call		P.32
<u> </u>	4	Image transfer section	Image Transfer Entrance Guide	When Image Transfer Belt is		P.36
	5		IDC/Registration Sensor 1, 2	replaced (120 K)		P.37
	6	AD-503 *1	Conveyance Roller	Upon each call (60 K)		*1
^	7	FS-514 *2 Paper feed roller, roll		300 K		*3
2 8	100172	Paddle	555 K		1	



- *1: See AD-503 Service Manual.
- *2: bizhub C252P only
- *3: See FS-514 Service Manual.

^{*2:} See each Option Service Manual.

6.4 Concept of parts life

	Description	Life value (Specification value)	Max. number of printed pages
Waste Toner Bottle	A waste toner full condition is detected when about 2,500 printed pages have been produced after a waste toner near full condition has been detected.	-	25,000 *1,2
Fusing unit	The number of prints made is counted. (The counter counts up 2 for paper whose sub scan direction exceeds 216 mm.) The number of prints made is compared with the value of the number of hours through which the Fusing Drive Motor has turned translated to a corresponding value of the number of prints made and the value, whichever reaches the life specification value, is detected. When the maximum number of printed pages is reached, the print is inhibited.	120,000	150,000 *3
Transfer Belt Unit	The number of prints made is counted. (The counter counts up 2 for paper whose sub scan direction exceeds 216 mm.) The number of prints made is compared with the value of the number of hours through which the belt has turned translated to a corresponding value of the number of prints made and the value, whichever reaches the life specifications value, is detected. (However the maximum number of prints is detected by counting hours through which the belt has turned.) When the maximum number of printed pages is reached, the print is inhibited.	120,000	151,037 *3
Imaging Unit C/M/Y	The hours which the PC drum has turned is compared with the value of the number of hours through	6,366 M *4	6,649 M *4
Imaging Unit	which the Imaging roller has turned translated to a corresponding value of hours and the value, whichever reaches the life specification value, is detected. * The hours which the PC drum has turned is the value of the number of distance through which the PC drum has run translated to a corresponding value of the number of hours and the value.	6,637 M *4	6,827 M *4

^{*1:} A waste toner full condition is detected with detecting the actual waste toner emissions.

^{*2:} Once the Toner-Full is detected, it has to be replaced with the new Waste Toner Box in order to reset.

^{*3:} The initiation of any new print cycle is inhibited when the maximum number of printed pages is reached.

^{*4:} The mark "M" is indicated the value of the number of distance through which the PC drum has run translated to a corresponding value of the number of hours and the value.

A. Conditions for Life Specifications Values

• The life specification values represent the number of prints made or figures equivalent to it when given conditions (see the Table given below) are met. They can be more or less depending on the machine operating conditions of each individual user.

Item	Description
Job Type	Monochrome: Making 3 prints per job Color: Making 3 prints per job
Paper Size	A4
Color Ratio	Black to Color = 3:2
CV/M	Black: 2,400 / Color: 1,600
Original Density	B/W = 5 % for each color, 5 % for Monochrome
No. of Operating Days per Month	20 days (Main Power Switch turned ON and OFF 20 times per month)

B. Control causing inhibited printing for one part when an inhibited-printing event occurs in another part

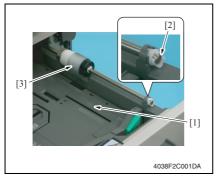
Purpose	In order to reduce the maintenance call times: when printing prohibiting is reached for any of the following parts, make printing prohibited also for other parts whose life value is reached, and replace those parts at the same time.
Target parts	Fusing unit, Image Transfer Belt Unit, Imaging Unit /C, Imaging Unit /M, Imaging Unit /Y, Imaging Unit /K

6.5 Maintenance procedure (Periodical check parts)

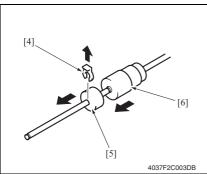
NOTE

 The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure of Maintenance represents the isopropyl alcohol.

6.5.1 Replacing the Tray 1 Feed Roller



- 1. Slide out the Tray 1.
- Lock the Paper Lifting Plate [1] into position.
- 3. Snap off the C-clip [2] from the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [3].
- Remove the shaft for the Tray 1 Feed Roller Assy [3] from the front Bushing.

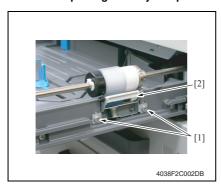


- Snap off the C-clip [4], one collar [5] and remove the Tray 1 Feed Roller [6].
- To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
- Select [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life] of the Jig software and clear the count of [1st.].

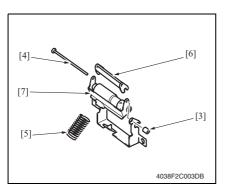
NOTE

 Replace the Tray 1 Feed Roller and Tray 1 Separation Roller at the same time.

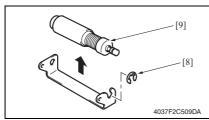
6.5.2 Replacing the Tray 1 Separation Roller Assy



- 1. Slide out the Tray 1.
- Remove two Screws [1] and the Tray 1 Separation Roller mounting bracket Assy [2].



 Take off the rubber stopper [3], shaft [4], spring [5], and guide plate [6] to remove the Paper Separation Roller fixing bracket Assy [7].

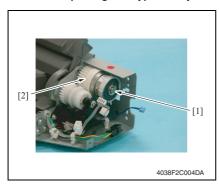


- 4. Snap off the E-ring [8] and the Tray 1 Paper Separation Roller Assy [9].
- To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
- Select [Service Mode] → [Counter]
 → [Life] of the Jig software and clear
 the count of [1st.].

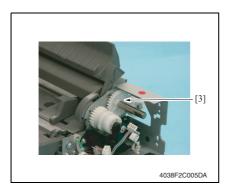
NOTE

 Replace the Tray 1 Feed Roller and Tray 1 Separation Roller at the same time.

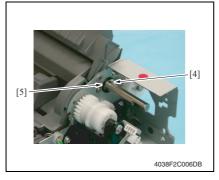
6.5.3 Replacing the Bypass Tray Feed Roller



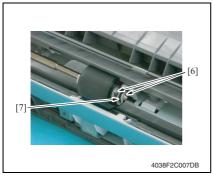
- 1. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit. See P.116
- 2. Snap off the E-ring [1], and remove Bypass Paper Feed Clutch [2].



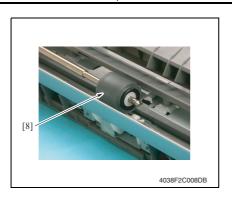
3. Remove the Gear [3].



4. Snap off the E-ring [4] and remove the Bearing [5].



5. Snap off two C-ring [6], and remove the Bearing [7].

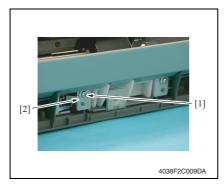


- Remove the Bypass Tray Feed Roller [8].
- 7. To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
- Select [Service Mode] → [Counter]
 → [Life] of the Jig software and clear
 the count of [Manual Tray].

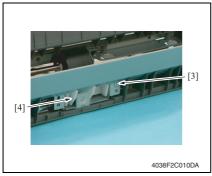
NOTE

 Replace the Bypass Tray Feed Roller and the Bypass Separation Roller Assy at the same time.

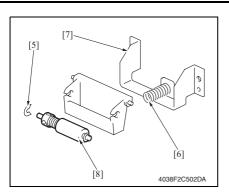
6.5.4 Replacing the Bypass Tray Separation Roller Assy



- 1. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit. See P.116
- 2. Remove the Screw [1], and remove the Ground terminal [2].



 Remove the Screw [3], and remove the Bypass Paper Separation Roller Assy [4].

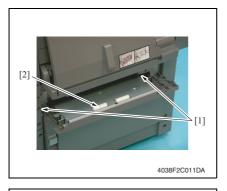


- Snap off the C-clip [5], and remove the spring [6] and the guide plate [7]. Remove the Bypass Paper Separation Roller Assy [8].
- To reinstall, reverse the order of removal.
- Select [Service Mode] → [Counter]
 → [Life] of the Jig software and clear
 the count of [Manual Tray].

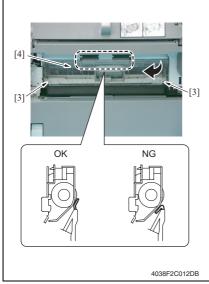
NOTE

 Replace the Bypass Tray Feed Roller and the Bypass Separation Roller Assy at the same time.

6.5.5 Replacing the Tray 2 Separation Roller



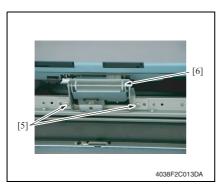
- 1. Slide out the Tray 2.
- 2. Open the Vertical transport door.
- 3. Remove two Claws [1], and remove the Vertical transport door [2].



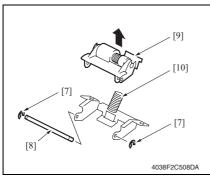
4. Remove two Screws [3], and remove the Jam processing cover [4].

NOTE

 Make sure the position of the Mylar when installing the Jam processing cover.



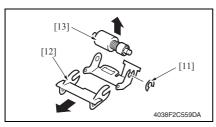
Remove two Screws [5] and the Tray
 Separation Roller installation plate
 Assy [6].



 Remove two C-rings [7] and the Shaft [8], and remove the Separation Roller fixing plate Assy [9].

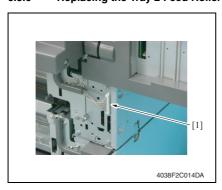
NOTE

• Use care not to miss the Spring [10].



7. Remove the C-ring [11] and Guide [12], and remove the Tray 2 Separation Roller Assy [13].

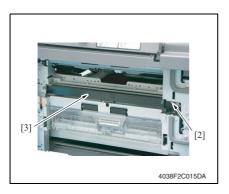
6.5.6 Replacing the Tray 2 Feed Roller



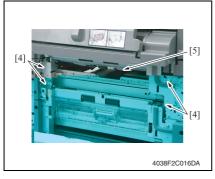
- 1. Remove the Tray 2 Separation Roller installation plate Assy.
- See the procedures 1 to 5 in "Tray 2 Separation Roller."
- Remove the Tray 2 Right Rear Cover.

See P.96

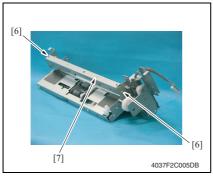
3. Disconnect the Connector [1].



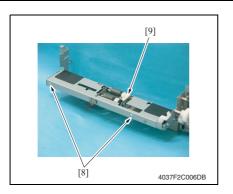
4. Remove the Screws [2] and remove the Reinforcement plate [3].



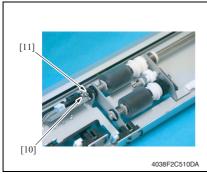
5. Remove four Screws [4] and remove the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [5].



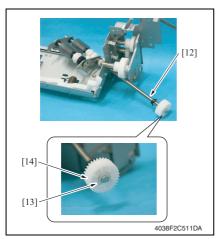
 Remove two Screws [6] and the Installation flame [7] of the Tray 2 Separation Roller installation plate Assy.



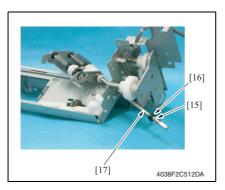
7. Remove two Screws [8] and Tray 2 Feed Roller cover [9].



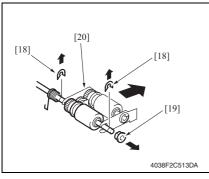
8. Remove the C-ring [10] and Bushing [11].



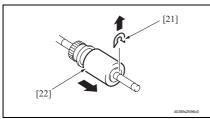
 Remove the C-ring [13] and Gear [14] while sliding out the Shaft Assy [12] in the direction indicated in left figure.



10. Remove the C-ring [15] and Bushing [16], and remove the Shaft Assy [17].

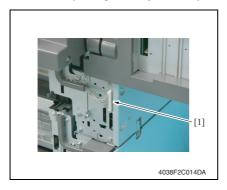


Remove two E-rings [18] and Bushing [19], and remove the Tray 2 Pickup Roller fixing plate Assy [20].



- 12. Remove the C-ring [21] and Tray 2 Feed Roller [22].
- 13. Select [Service Mode] → [Counter] → [Life] of the Jig software and clear the count of [2nd.].

6.5.7 Replacing the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller



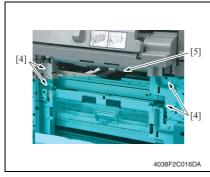
- Remove the Tray 2 Separation Roller installation plate Assy.
- See the procedures 1 to 5 in "Tray 2 Separation Roller."
- Remove the Tray 2 Right Rear Cover.

See P.96

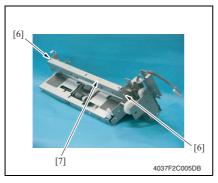
3. Disconnect the Connector [1].



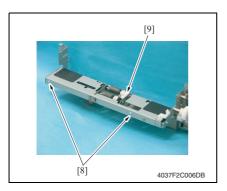
4. Remove the Screws [2] and remove the Reinforcement plate [3].



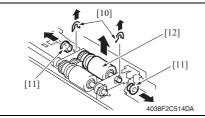
5. Remove four Screws [4] and remove the Tray 2 Feed Roller Assy [5].



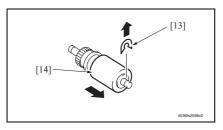
 Remove two Screws [6], and remove the Tray 2 Separation Roller installation plate Assy [7] together with Frame.



7. Remove two Screws [8] and Tray 2 Feed Roller cover [9].



 Remove two C-rings [10] and two Bushings [11], and remove the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller Assy [12].



9. Snap off the C-ring [13], and remove the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller [14].

6.5.8 Cleaning of the Registration Roller

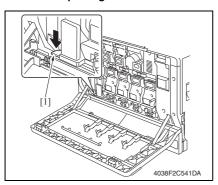


- 1. Open the Right Door.
- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Registration Rollers [1] clean of dirt.

[2]

bizhub C250P/C252P

6.5.9 Replacing the Waste Toner Box



3. Remove the Waste Toner Box [2].

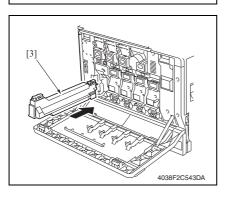
2. Press the Waste Toner Box release

1. Open the Front Door.

lever [1].



- If scattered toner has accumulated in the vicinity of the toner collecting port, do not tilt the Waste Toner Box when removing it.
- Do not leave the Waste Toner Box in a tilted condition after removing it.



4038F2C542DA

4. Clean the surface around the waste toner collecting port.

See P.32

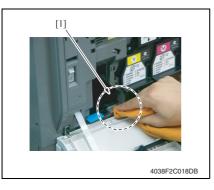
NOTE

- Remove the Waste Toner Box from its box, and remove the packing material.
- 6. Set the Waste Toner Box [3] in place.
- 7. Close the Front Door.

NOTE

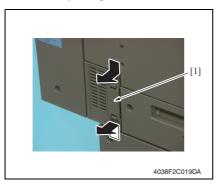
 Replace the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan supplied with the Waste Toner Box at the same time.

6.5.10 Cleaning of the Area around the Waste Toner Collecting Port



- Remove the Waste Toner Box.
 See P.31
- Wipe the areas around the Waste Toner Collecting Port [1] clean of spilled toner and dirt using a soft cloth dampened with water or alcohol.

6.5.11 Replacing the Ozone Filter

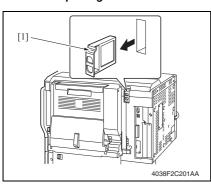


1. Holding onto the hook, remove the Ozone Filter [1].

NOTE

 The Ozone Filter is supplied with the Transfer Belt unit.
 Replace it when replacing the Transfer Belt Unit.

6.5.12 Replacing the Deodorant Filter

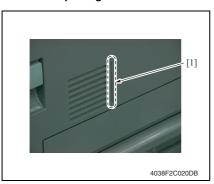


1. Holding onto the hook, take out the Deodorant Filter [1].

NOTE

 The Deodorant Filter is supplied with the Toner Cartridge (Black).
 Replace it when replacing the Toner Cartridge (Black).

6.5.13 Replacing the Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance



1. If the optional Automatic Duplex Unit AD-503 is mounted, remove it.

See AD-503 Service Manual.

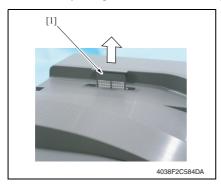
Remove the Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance [1].

NOTE

 The Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance is supplied with the Transfer Belt Unit.

Replace it when replacing the Transfer Belt Unit.

6.5.14 Replacing the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan



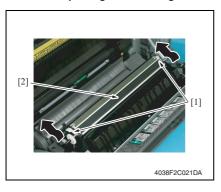
- If the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan is contaminated by dust or foreign matter, clean it up.
- Remove the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan [1].

NOTE

The Dust Filter/Cooling Fan is supplied with the Waste Toner Box.
 Replace it when replacing the Waste Toner Box.

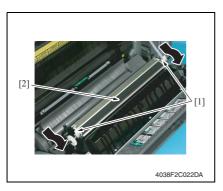
6.6 Replacing the unit

6.6.1 Replacing the 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit



A. Removal Procedure

- 1. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
- 2. Open the Right Door.
- Unlock the Lock levers [1] (at two places).
- Holding onto the Lock levers [1] (at two places), remove the 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit [2].



B. Reinstallation Procedure

- Holding onto the Lock levers [1] (at two places), mount the 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit [2].
- Lock the Lock levers [1](at two places).
- 3. Close the Right Door.

NOTE

- Make sure that the door is locked in position both at front and rear.
- 4. Turn ON the Main Power Switch.

NOTE

 The 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit is supplied with the Transfer Belt Unit.

Replace it when replacing the Transfer Belt Unit.

6.6.2 Replacing the Image Transfer Belt Unit

A. Removal Procedure

- 1. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
- 2. Remove the Waste Toner Box

See P.31

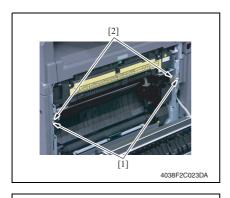
3. Slide out the Imaging Unit (C/M/Y/K).

See P.39

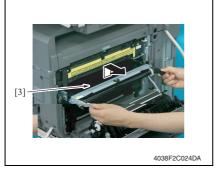
NOTE

 After the Imaging Unit has been removed from the main unit, be sure to place it in the plastic bag (black) or wrap it in a light shielding cloth, and store it in a dark place.

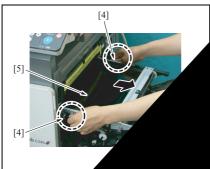
Do not leave the Imaging Unit exposed to light for a extended period of time, as it may become damaged.



- 4. Open the Right Door.
- Remove two Screws [1] and release the Lock of the Image Transfer Belt Unit [2].

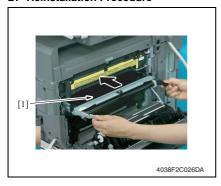


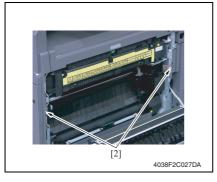
 Hold the both sides and lift it to out the Image Transfer Belt U little.



1

B. Reinstallation Procedure





1. Insert the Transfer Belt Unit [1].

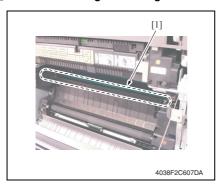
NOTE

- Insert the Transfer Belt Unit with care not to allow its docking gear to be damaged by hitting it against the rail or associated part.
- Do not touch the surface of the Image Transfer Belt Unit.
- Cover the Image Transfer Belt Unit with something such shade cloth to protect its surface from dust or foreign matter.
- 2. Install the Image Transfer Belt Unit with two Screws [2].

NOTE

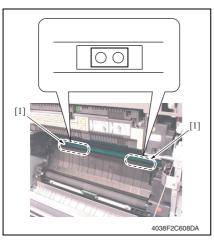
- Replace the 2nd Image Transfer Roller, the Ozone Filter and the Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance, which are supplied with the Image Transfer Belt Unit, at the same time.
- 3. Close the Right Door.
- Reinstall the Imaging Unit and the Waste Toner Box.
- 5. Turn ON the Main Power Switch.
- Select [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)] of the Jig software and carry out Gradation Adjust.

↑ 6.6.3 Cleaning of the Image Transfer Entrance Guide



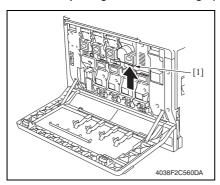
- Remove the Image Transfer Belt.
 See P.34
- Wipe the Image Transfer Entrance Guide [1] clean of spilled toner and dirt using a soft cloth dampened with water or alcohol.

⚠ 6.6.4 Cleaning of the IDC/Registration Sensor 1, 2

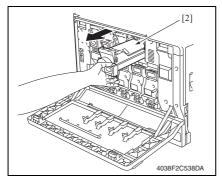


- Remove the Image Transfer Belt.
 See P.34
- Wipe the surface of the IDC/Registration Sensor 1, 2 [1] clean of spilled toner and dirt using a cotton bud.

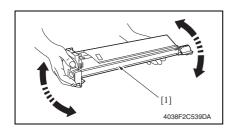
6.6.5 Replacing the Toner Cartridge (C, M, Y, K)

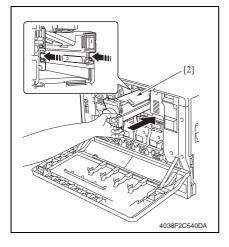


- A. Removal Procedure
- 1. Open the Front Door.
- Pressing the Toner Cartridge Lock Claw [1], pull it toward.



3. Pull the Toner Cartridge [2] toward to remove it.





B. Reinstallation Procedure

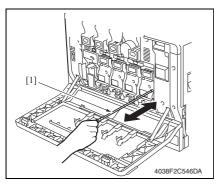
- Take out the new Toner Cartridge [1] from the unitary packing box and shake it well up and down 5 to 10 times.
- 2. Insert the Toner Cartridge [2] by fitting it to the groove on the main unit.

NOTE

- Make sure the colors are matched between the Toner Cartridge and label on the machine.
- Make sure the Toner Cartridge is inserted all the way.
- When replacing the Toner Cartridge (black), replace the Deodorant Filter supplied with it at the same time.
- 3. Clear the Comb Electrode.

See P.38

6.6.6 Cleaning of the Comb Electrode

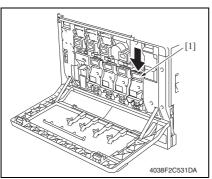


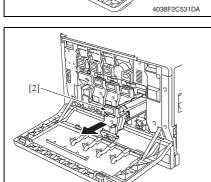
- 1. Open the Front Door.
- Clean the Comb Electrode by moving the Comb Electrode Cleaning Lever [1] In and Out several times. (Only for the Imaging Unit/K)

NOTE

 Move the Comb Electrode Cleaning Lever slowly forward and backward until it stops.

6.6.7 Replacing the Imaging Unit (C, M, Y, K)



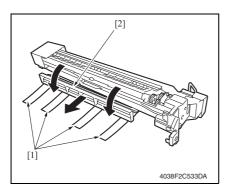


4038F2C532DA

A. Removal Procedure

- 1. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
- 2. Unplug the power cord.
- 3. Open the Front Door.
- Press the unlocking knob [1] of Imaging Unit.

5. Pull out the Imaging Unit [2], and remove it from main body.

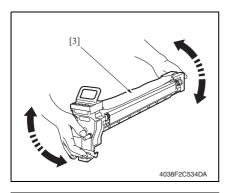


B. Reinstallation Procedure

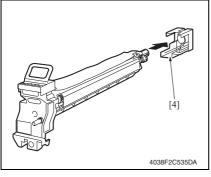
- 1. Remove the Imaging Unit from its plastic bag.
- Peel off the Tape [1] so that the Mounting Bracket [2] can be removed.
 - Then, remove the Mounting Bracket [2].

NOTE

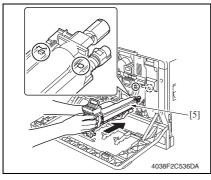
- Since the Imaging Unit is highly susceptible to light, keep it shielded from light up to the time it is installed.
- Carefully unseal the plastic bag (black).
- If the Imaging Unit is packed in the plastic bag (black) again, seal the package using tape or another means.



 Tilt the Imaging Unit [3] to the left and shake it a small stroke in the tilt direction twice. Then, tilt it to the right and shake it a small stroke in the tilt direction twice.



 Remove the Caps [4] on the end of the Imaging Unit and the bottom packing material.



 Keeping the Imaging Unit [5] in a level position, insert the Imaging Unit [5] into the mounting position all the way until it is stopped.

NOTE

- Install them by fitting the blue label position of Imaging Unit and one of the machine.
- Do not allow the Imaging Unit to become tilted while installing them into the Main Unit, as damage to the PC Drum can result.

- Pull out the PC Drum protective sheet [6] while pressing the Imaging Unit.
- 7. Insert the Imaging Unit all the way.

NOTE

- Make sure that the Imaging Unit is inserted all the way.
- 8. Close the Front Door.
- 9. Plug in the power cord.
- 10. Turn ON the Main Power Switch.
- 11. Select [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)] of the Jig software and carry out Gradation Adjust.

NOTE

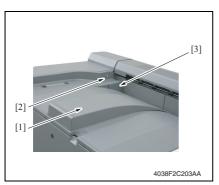
4038F2C537DA

 When removing / installing the Imaging Unit, use care not to touch the surface of the PC Drum [7].

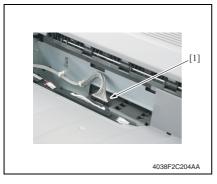
6.6.8 Replacing the Fusing Unit

⚠ CAUTION

Before replacing the Fusing Unit, ensure that it has had time to cool down.



- Turn OFF the Main Power Switch and unplug the power cord from the power outlet, then wait for about 20 minutes.
- 2. Remove the Sub Tray [1]. See P.89
- Remove the Screw [2], and remove the Exit Tray Connector protective cover [3].

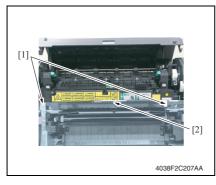


4. Disconnect the Connector [1].



5. Remove the Screw [1], and remove the Connector protective cover [2].





6. Disconnect two Connectors [1].

- 7. Open the Right Cover.
- 8. Open the Fusing Unit Cover.
- Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Fusing unit [2].

À

7. Service tool

7.1 CE Tool list

Tool name	Shape	Personnel	Parts No.	Remarks
PH Window Cleaning Jig	4038F2C557DA	1	4038 2083 ##	
PH Window Cleaning Jig Pad	4038F2C558DA	1	4038 2084 ##	
Compact Flash	4037F2C601DA	1	4038 0764 ##	

7.2 Print materials

7.2.1 Imaging Unit Single Parts (IU)

Also replace the Dust filter packed in the Imaging Unit Black at the same time.

Parts name	Replacing period
IU Black	70,000 prints
IU Yellow	45,000 prints
IU Magenta	45,000 prints
IU Cyan	45,000 prints

See P.19

7.2.2 Toner Cartridge Single Parts (T/C)

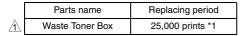
Also replace the Deodorant filter packed in the T/C Black at the same time.

Parts name	Replacing period *1	
T/C Black	20,000 prints	
T/C Yellow	12,000 prints	
T/C Magenta	12,000 prints	
T/C Cyan	12,000 prints	

^{*1:} Life value that can be achieved with a probability of 90% even with product-to-product variations and fluctuating operating environmental conditions taken into consideration, when the T/C is used under the conditions of B/W ratio 5% for each color

7.2.3 Waste Toner Box

• Replace the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan supplied with the Waste Toner Box at the same time.



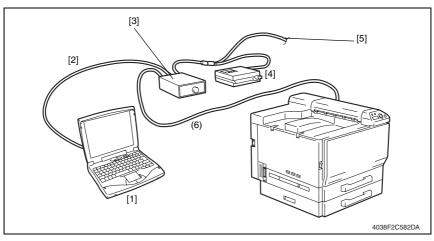
^{*1:} A waste toner full condition is detected with detecting the actual waste toner emissions. See P.19

7.2.4 Maintenance Kit

There is no setting for the Maintenance Kit.

8. Service Jig

8.1 Construction of the Service Jig



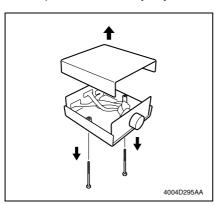
No.	Name	Description	Remark
[1]	Notebook PC	Starts the External Panel Controller for adjustment.	Commercially available product
	Jig Software *1 (External panel Controller)	Allows settings, adjustments, and checks to be made for the printer using a PC.	Supplied from KMBT
[2]	Straight cable (RS-232C D-Sub 9 pin)	Connects between the Notebook PC and the connector C of the selector.	Commercially available product
[3]	Selector	Switches between the Notebook PC and the X-Rite, printer.	Commercially available product
	Aluminum tape	Removes noise that would otherwise occur when the Selector is operated.	Commercially available product
[4]	X-Rite/Cross-cable	Color Tone Tester.	Commercially available product
[5]	Cross-cable (DTP32)	Connects the Selector to X-Rite.	Commercially available product
[6]	Cross-cable (RS-232C D-Sub 9 pin)	Connects port A of the Selector to the printer.	Commercially available product

^{*1:} The recommended OS of the operating environment for the External Panel Control is Windows 98, Windows 2000, or Windows XP. No other OSs are guaranteed for correct operation. Another requirement is that the PC is capable of serial communications at 19,200 bps.

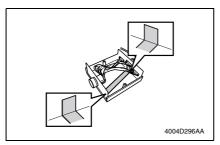
8.2 Setting up the Service Jig

8.2.1 Prepare the unit necessary for the Service jig

• This operation is necessary only when using the selector for the first time.

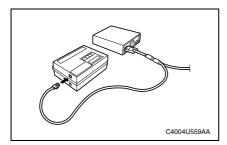


 Remove the two screws from the selector, and then remove the upper cover.

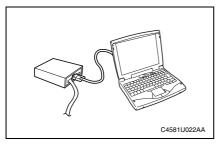


2. Affix the aluminum tape to the Selector as illustrated.

8.2.2 Connecting the Service jig



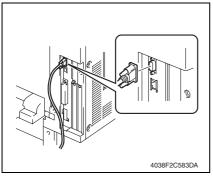
 Using a DTP32 cross-cable, connect the I/O port of the X-Rite to port B of the selector.



Using the RS232 straight cable (2), connect the COM 1 port of the computer to port C on the selector.

NOTE

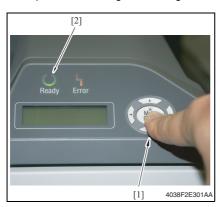
 When connecting to the COM2 port, set the External Panel Controller port setting to COM2.



3. Using a cross-cable, connect port A of the selector to the printer.

8.2.3 Connecting the Jig Software to the Printer

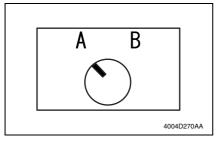
- Turn PC power ON. Turn the Printer power ON. Start the Jig Software (External panel Controller.)
- When the error message is displayed during operation, follow the message for the countermeasure.
- Do not finish the Jig Software while it is running. When the Jig Software is finished, start the printer and the Jig Software again.



- Turn Printer power ON while pressing the Menu/select key [1] on the control panel.
- Keep pressing the Menu/select key until the LED [2] on the control panel turns OFF or "Please wait" is displayed.

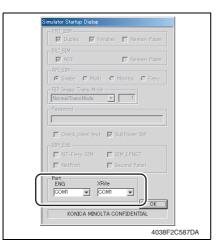


- Make sure that "Trouble Reset" is displayed.
- When "Ready to print" is displayed, turn power OFF and turn it ON again.



3. Make sure that the selector knob is set to "A."

4. Turn on your PC and click the External Panel Controller icon.

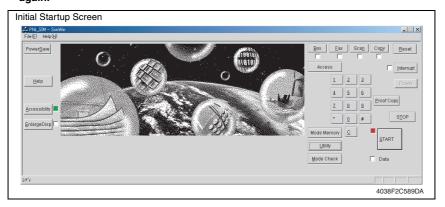


- 5. Make sure that the Startup dialog box has appeared.
- Check that "COM1" is selected for "Port." Then, click the "OK" key.

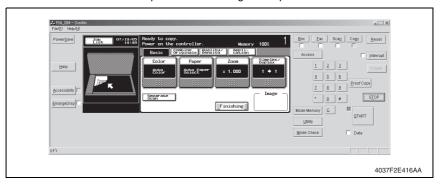
Check that the initial startup screen of the External Panel Controller has appeared on the PC.

NOTE

 If the basic screen does not appear in the External Panel Controller, turn the printer off. Restart the External Panel Controller, and then turn the printer on again.



8. Check that the initial startup screen has changed to a panel screen.



tenance

9. Electrical/Image Adjustment

NOTE

- Given in the following are only those adjustments that are made using the External Panel Controller.
- Ensure appropriate security for Service Mode setting procedures. They should never be known to any unauthorized person not involved with service jobs.

9.1 Calling the Service Mode to Screen

- 1. Connect the crossing cable to the printer and PC.
- 2. Turn the PC Power ON.
- 3. Turn the Printer Power ON while pressing the Menu/Select key on the control Panel.
- 4. Keep pressing the Menu/Select key until the LED turns OFF on the control Panel.
- Check to make sure that the "Trouble Reset" will be displayed on the control Panel after LED turns OFF.
- Start the Jig software and check to make sure that the Start screen will change to the Panel screen.
- 7. Click the Utility key.
- 8. Click Details key.
- 9. Press the following keys in this order: Stop \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow Stop \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 1
- 10. Service mode will be displayed.

9.2 List of Functions

- · Use the Jig Software and adjust or set on the PC screen.
- · For adjustment items except X-Rite calibration, see Adjustment/Setting.

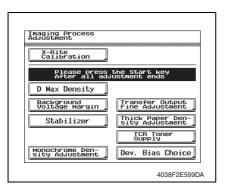
Machine	
Fusing Transport Speed	Fusing Temperature
Printer Resist Loop	Printer Area
Fusing Loop Size	Color Registration Adjustment
Manual Bypass Tray Adjustment	Lead Edge Erase Adjustment
Imaging Process Adjustment	
X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)	Transfer Output Fine Adjustment
D max Density	Thick paper Density Adjustment
Background Voltage Margin	TCR Toner Supply
Stabilizer	Dev. Bias Choice
Monochrome Density Adjustment	

Maintenance

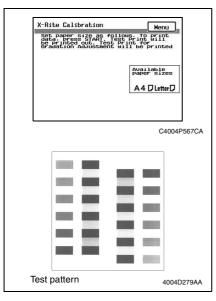
bizhub C250P/C252P

9.2.1 X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)

- 1. Set up the Service Jig.
- 2. Call the Service Mode to the screen.



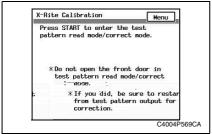
- Click the X-Rite Calibration key in the Imaging Process Adjustment screen.
- 4. Click the Gradation Mode.



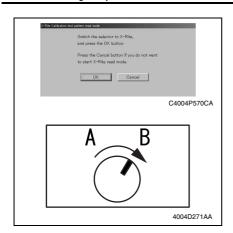
- Check the message that appears, and then click the Start key in the External Panel Controller.
- Test patterns are printed for the four colors. (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Black)

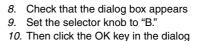
NOTE

- It will take approximately 2 minutes for the test patterns to be printed.
- During printing, do not open the front door.
 - If the front door is opened, restart the procedure from step 1.

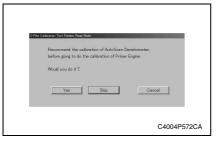


After the test patterns are printed, check that the message appears, and then click the Start key in the External Panel Controller.





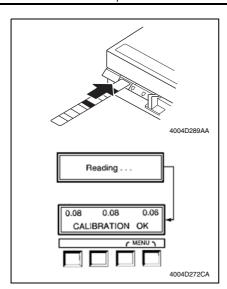
box.



 Check that the dialog box appears, and then click the Yes key in the dialog box.



 When the dialog box appears, the auto-cal strip can be read.
 Prepare the auto-cal strip.



13. Insert the auto-cal strip into the X-Rite.

NOTE

· Insert the auto-cal strip after "INSERT CAL STRIP" appears on the X-Rite display.



- 4004D269AA C4581U025AA

- 14. If the reading was completed correctly, the dialog box shown at the left appears.
- 15. Prepare the cyan test pattern.

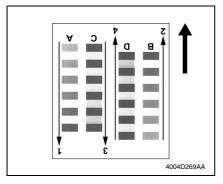
- 16. Set the X-Rite guide to "10."
- 17. Feed the cyan test pattern in direction "1" to read the row represented by "A."

NOTE

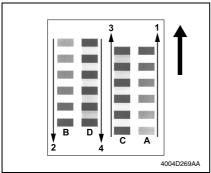
- · Align the test pattern with the guide, and insert the pattern into the X-Rite.
- · The arrows indicate the direction that the pattern should be fed into the X-Rite.
- · The arrows shown in the illustration are not printed on the actual test pattern.



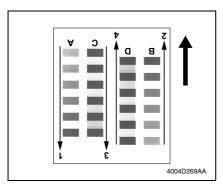
18. If the reading was completed correctly, "OK" is indicated.



- 19. Turn the test pattern around, and then feed it to read the row indicated by "B" in direction "2."
- 20. If the reading was completed correctly, a second "OK" is indicated.

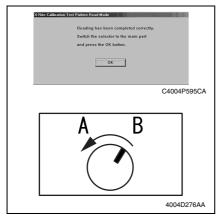


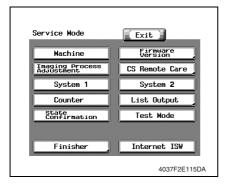
- 21. Set the X-Rite guide to "30."
- 22. Turn the test pattern to its original orientation, and then feed the test pattern in direction "3" to read the row represented by "C."
- 23. If the reading was completed correctly, a third "OK" is indicated.



- 24. Turn the test pattern around, and then feed it to read the row indicated by "D" in direction "4."
- 25. If the reading was completed correctly, a fourth "OK" is indicated.







26. Check that ">>" appears beside "Read the Pattern of Magenta."

NOTE

- From here on, read the test patterns of magenta, yellow, and black, in that order.
- If ">>" appears beside "Read the Pattern of Cyan", perform the procedure for reading the cyan test pattern again.
- 27. Check that the dialog box appears.
- 28. Set the selector knob on the selector from "B" to "A".
- 29. Then click the OK key in the dialog box.

NOTE

- Be sure to click the OK key only after the selector knob has been set.
- Quit X-Rite Calibration.

- 30. Make sure that the Service Mode screen reappears on the screen.
- 31. Click the EXIT key.

Firmware upgrade

↑ 10.1 Outline

 There are two ways to update the Firmware: One is by directly connecting with the Printer using the Compact Flash, and the other is by downloading over a network using the Internet ISW.

NOTE

- When updating the Firmware card with the Ver. 43 or earlier to the Ver. 81 or later, perform the following procedure without fail. (bizhub C250P only)
- When the Serial Number Input screen is displayed after the Firmware was updated with Main power being ON, enter the Serial Number with the following step. [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Serial Number]

See P.201

2. Perform the following setting.

[Tech. Rep. Mode] \rightarrow [Version Upgrade] \rightarrow [HDD Ver. Upgrade]

See P.205

- 3. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch and turn it ON again more than 10 seconds after.
- Perform the following setting.
 [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Data Backup].

See P.210

5. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch and turn it ON again more than 10 seconds after.



<u></u> 10.2 Preparations for firmware rewriting by Cygwin

10.2.1 **Outline**

- · Write the firmware into the compact flash using Cygwin.
- Cygwin consists of two types: Full install version and light version that is comprised only of necessary files.

10.2.2 Service environment

- . OS: Windows 2000/XP
- · Drive which enables writing/reading of Compact flash
- Compact flash (Service Tool: 4038 0764 ##)

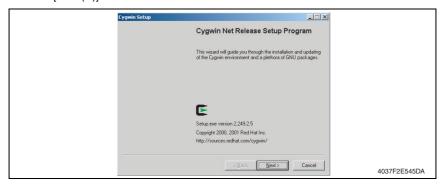
10.2.3 Installing the Cygwin

A. For the full installation version

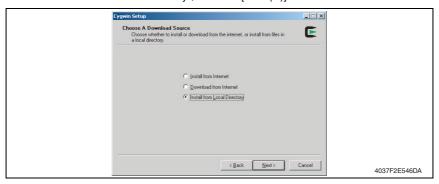
1. Double click the [setup.exe] on CD-ROM in which Cygwin is stored.



Click [Next (N)].



Select "Install from Local Directory", and click [Next (N)].



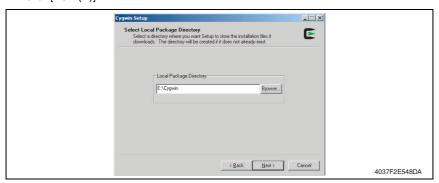
Specify the folder for installation.
 Check to make sure that "Root Directory" is in default setting, [C:\cygwin].

NOTE

- Make sure to check that "Root Directory" is in default setting, [C:\cygwin].
- Do not change the setting value except "Root Directory."
- 5. Click [Next (N)].



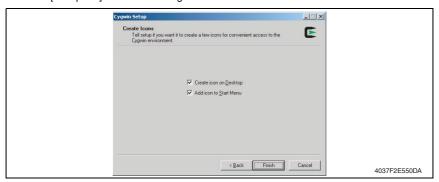
- Specify the place of the data to be installed.
 For installing from CD-ROM, select the [cygwin] folder in CD-ROM drive.
 (Described below is the sample procedure when CD-ROM drive is E-drive.)
- 7. Click [Next (N)].



8. Click [Next (N)].



9. Click [Complete] to start installing.

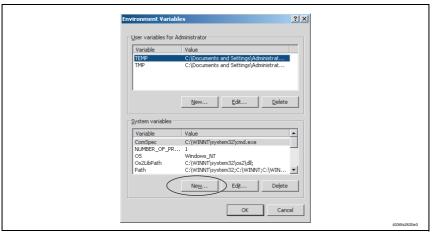


B. For the light version

- Decompress the downloaded compressed file "cygwin_rhein_phase2.zip" directly to the C drive (Windows system drive).
- Confirm that the "Cygwin" folder is created directly in the C drive (Windows system drive).

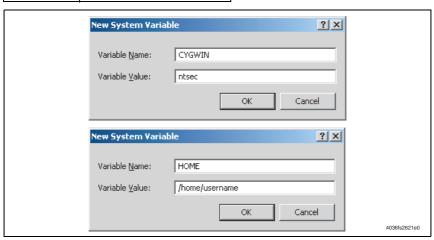
10.2.4 Settings of the Windows Environmental Variable

- After installing, open the Property of "My Computer", and click the "Environmental Variable" of "Advanced" tab.
- 2. Click the "New" in System Variable Setting.



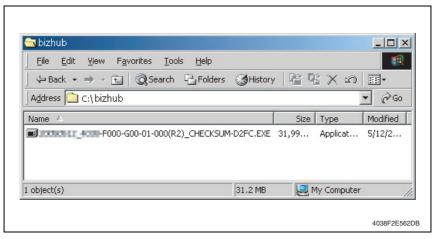
Set the following two values as the Windows Environmental Variable.

Variable name	Variable value
CYGWIN	ntsec
HOME	/home/username



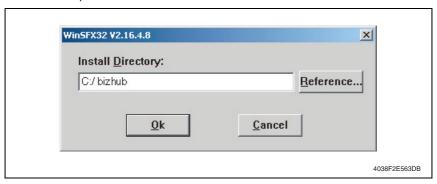
10.2.5 Writing into the Compact flash

1. Put the data of Firmware in the optional directory. (C:\bizhub in the below figure)



NOTE

- The file name of Firmware data consists of the "Release Date Version CHECKSUM-****.exe."
- Double-click the Firmware data, and specify the directory to be uncompressed, and then uncompress it.



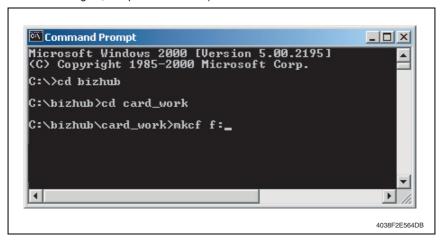
NOTE

- When old Firmware is still left in the specified directory to be uncompressed, delete it before uncompressing.
- When the firmware data is decompressed, "card_work" folder is created in the selected directory and the data is decompressed in this folder.

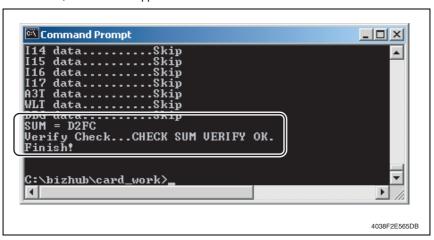
3. Mount the Compact flash on the PC, and check the Drive name, which was recognized in the Windows. (F-drive in the following figure)



- Click "Start" → "Program" → "Accessories" → "Command Prompt" to open the Command Prompt.
- 5. Use the Command prompt to move into the uncompressed directory.
- 6. Specify the Drive of Compact flash, which was recognized through the procedure 3, and execute the "mksf.bat." (Input the C: \bizhub\card_work>mkcf f (Drive number): in the below figure, and push the "Enter".)



- 7. Once the "mkcf.bat" is executed, data writing into the Compact flash is started.
- Upon completion of writing, CHECKSUM is executed. If CHECKSUM value is precisely matched, "VERIFY OK" appears.



9. Remove the Compact flash from PC.

NOTE

 When removing the Compact flash, be sure to check if data is written as normal and then remove it according to the precise removing method.

2

10.3 Preparations for firmware rewriting by Firmware Imaging Toolkit 2006

 This software is designed as the tool to write firmware data of MFP/printer released by KMBT into the compact flash card.

10.3.1 Correspond model

· Correspond models of the software is as follows.

Color machine	 bizhub C250/C252/C300/C350/C351/C352/C450 bizhub C250P/C252P/C352P/C450P
B/W machine	bizhub 200/250/350Di2510/3010/3510/2510f/3010f/3510f

10.3.2 Function outline

• The following functions are available with this software.

Function type	Function name	Description
Basic functions	Write Firmware to a card	Write firmware data into the compact flash card. See P.72
	Compare Firmware with a card	Compare the firmware data written into the compact flash card with the one saved in PC. See P.72
Advanced functions	Create a Firmware Image from a card	Create the firmware image form using the firmware data written into the compact flash card. See P.73
	Format a card	Format the compact flash card by the FAT or vxWorks form. NOTE vxWorks form is not applicable
		See P.73
	Display information about a card	Acquisition the information of firmware data written into the compact flash card. See P.73

10.3.3 System environment

· The following system environments are required or recommended to use the software.

Computer	IBM PC/AT compatible machine
CPU	Pentium III / 500 MHz or higher is recommended.
Correspond OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP or Windows Server 2003
Required memory	 More than 128 MB (Windows 2000), 256MB (Windows XP/2003) is recommended.
Others	Drive that is able to Read/Write compact flash

10.3.4 Installation of software

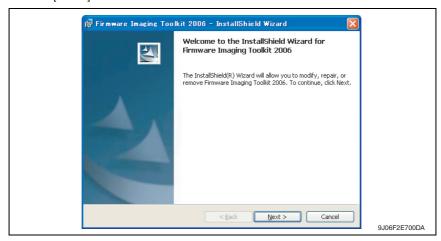
· Follow the procedures shown below to install the software.

NOTE

- Install the software to the PC with the administration authentication.
- When any anti-virus program is activated, quite the program before the installation.
- 1. Double click [setup.exe] to start the installation of the software.



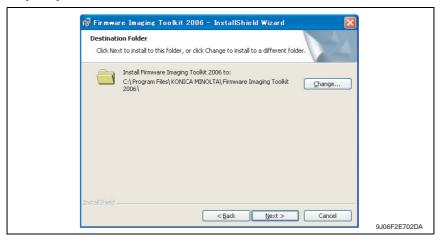
2. Click [Next >].



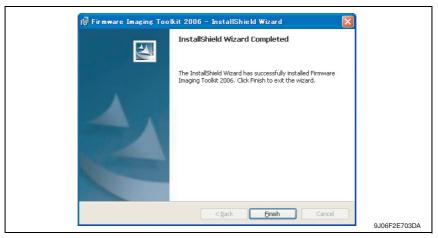
3. After checking the contents of license agreement, select [I accept the terms in the license agreement] and click [Next >].



 Select the installed destination folder of Firmware Imaging Toolkit 2006, and click [Next>].



- 5. Click [Install] to start installation.
- 6. Click [Finish] to complete the installation.



Shortcut file will be created inside Windows Start menu ([Program] → [KONICA MINOLTA] → [Firmware Imaging Toolkit 2006]).



10.3.5 Update of software

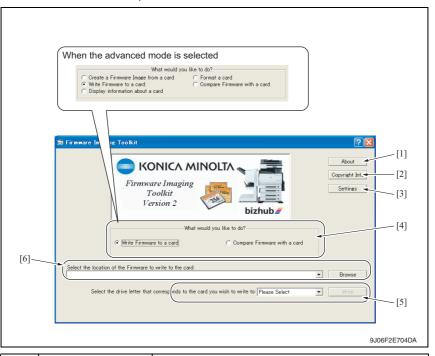
- To update the software version, delete (uninstall) the currently installed program and install the new version.
- Follow the procedures shown below to delete (uninstall) the program.
- 1. Quite the program if the software is activated.
- Select [Firmware Imaging Toolkit 2006] of [Add/Remove Programs] in Windows Control Panel menu to delete the program.



10.3.6 Screen

A. Main window

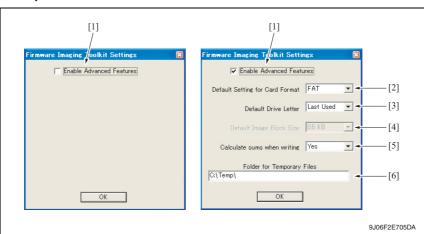
- The main window will be displayed after activating the software.
- Main window consists of 2 patterns: Basic mode, Advanced mode.



[1]	About	To display the outline of the tool.
[2]	Copyright Info	To display the license agreement and version information of the tool.
[3]	Settings	To display the dialog to enable the advanced functions. Select the check box of [Enabled Advanced Features] to enable advanced functions at main window. See P.71
[4]	What would you like to do?	 To select the function to be used. Displayed screen is different between Basic mode and Advanced mode. See P.72
[5]	Select the location of the Firmware to write to the card:	To select the compact flash drive to which the data to write.
[6]	Select the drive letter that corresponds to the card you wish to write to:	To select the location where the firmware is stored in PC.

B. Settings dialog

- It will be displayed by clicking [Settings] at main window.
- Other settings will be enabled by selecting the check box of [Enabled Advanced Features].



[1]	Enable Advanced Features	Enable the setting of advanced functions at the dialog by selecting the check box. Also advanced functions can be selected at the main window.
[2]	Default Setting for Card Format	Select the default card format during software starting. FAT : The format to be used by all models that the software supports. vxWorks: Not available yet.
[3]	Default Drive Letter	Select how to set default of compact flash drive during software starting. LastUsed: The drive used at previous time is selected. None: [Please Select] is displayed on the screen every starting and the drive should be selected every time.
[4]	Default Image Block Size	Not available yet.
[5]	Calculate sums when writing	 Set whether to calculate check sums during data writing. If [YES] is selected, data consistency can be ensured by data verification of check sums during data writing. However, it takes more time for data writing compared to the case without sums calculation (Basically this mode shall be selected.) If [No] is selected, check sums calculation is skipped during data writing. Although it take less time for data writing compared to the case with sums calculation, it fails to ensure the reliability of the written data.
[6]	Folder for Temporary Files	 Set the folder for saving temporary files during the tool is activating. The temporary file is automatically deleted after the operation completes normally.

10.3.7 Details of each function

A. Basic functions

(1) Write Firmware to a card

- To write FW data into the compact flash. The FW data of the models shown below can be written.
- To write FW data into the compact flash. The FW data of the models shown below can be written.

<Corresponding models and firmware file type>

File type Models	Indexed firmware type	Compressed firmware type	Uncompressed firmware type	Di3510/350/250/ 200 firmware type
C450/C450P/C351	rhein1_cf.tar.gz			_
C352/C352P/C300	rhein2_cf.tar.gz			_
C350	tss2_cf.tar.gz	*.img.gz	*.img	_
C250/C252/ C250P/C252P	rhein3_cf.tar.gz			_
Di2510/3010/3510/ 2510f/3010f/3510f	=	_	_	ma001
200/250/350	_	_	_	ma001a

NOTE

- The above-mentioned [Indexed firmware type] and [Di3510/350/250/200 firmware type] shall be comprised of multiple files and one of the files shall be named as above.
- [Compressed firmware type] means the compressed formed image file that is created using the tool's function of the [Create a Firmware Image from a card].
- [Uncompressed firmware type] means the image file that is uncompressed the compressed firmware file.
- To write the image file data (*.img.gz or *.img) into the compact flash, use the compact flash with the same capacity as the one used for the original image file.
 Although the compact flash with larger capacity than the original one can be used, it is not covered under warranty.
- C350 firmware requires the compact flash over 64 MB.
- Firmware of C450/C450P/C351/C352/C352P/C300/C250/C250P/C252P requires the compact flash over 128 MB.

(2) Compare Firmware with a card

- Compare the firmware data written into the compact flash and the one (file) saved in PC.
- After the comparison, display the check sum information (comparison result dialog) of the firmware data of the compact flush and the file.
- The firmware data (file) format saved in PC shall consistent with the one written into the compact flash.

B. Advanced functions

(1) Create a Firmware Image from a card

- Create the image file from the firmware data written into the compact flash.
 Create the image file by dumping directly the data in the card. This function allows us to save the various type of firmware data in the compact flash as the image file and hold as copy data.
- The created FW image file is automatically compressed and created as the Compressed firmware file (*.img.gz).

The image file is written into the compact flash in the uncompressed form, however, the uncompressed data would occupy too much capacity, which makes file control difficult. Therefore this tool doesn't create uncompressed firmware file (*.img).

(2) Format a card

- Make format of the compact flash in FAT or vxWork form.
- To write the firmware data into the compact flash, the card should be formatted in FAT form to clear (initialize) the description of the compact flash.

NOTE

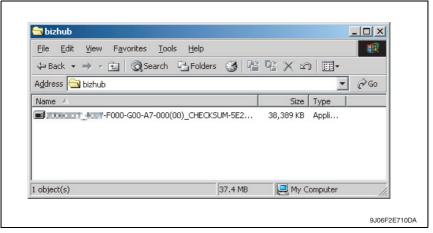
- . In current version, only FAT format is available but not vxWork format.
- After the firmware data is written into the compact flash, it becomes the own file style that is different from the FAT, and the compact flash that the firmware data is written cannot be browsed on the Windows OS.

(3) Display information about a card

- Display the information of the firmware data written into the compact flash.
 The information to be displayed is according to the type of written FW data.
- For the series of Di3510/200/250/350 series, MSC version is displayed.
- For the series of C450/C450P/C351/C352/C352P/C300/C250P/C252P, check sums of each firmware data is displayed.

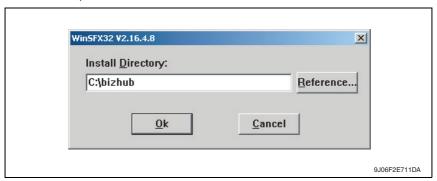
10.3.8 How to write firmware data

- A. In the case of C450/C450P/C351/C352/C352P/C300/C250/C250P/C252P series
- 1. Put the firmware data in the optional directory. (C:\bizhub in the below figure)



NOTE

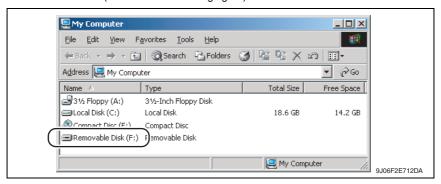
- The file name of firmware data consists of the "Release Date_Version_CHECKSUM-****.exe."
- Double-click the firmware data, and specify the directory to be uncompressed, and then uncompress it.



NOTE

 When old firmware is still left in the specified directory to be uncompressed, delete it before uncompressing.

3. Mount the compact flash on the PC, and check the drive name, which was recognized in the Windows. (F-drive in the following figure)



4. Start Firmware Imaging Toolkit 2006.

NOTE

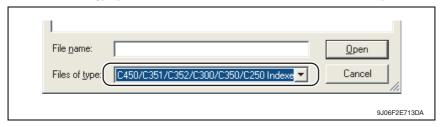
- When using the external compact flash drive such as USB be sure to connect them before starting this tool.
- 5. Select the check box of [Write Firmware to a card].



6. Click [Browse].



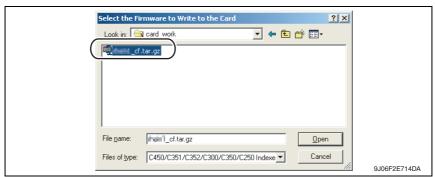
7. Select the file type [C450/ C351/C352/ C300/C350/C250 Indexed Firmware].



Move to the folder decompressed at step 2, confirm that only "###_cf.tar.gz" (### is for model name) is displayed, and select.

NOTE

- If the file extension is set to be not displayed in Windows, the file name ".gz" will not be displayed.
- 9. Click [Open].



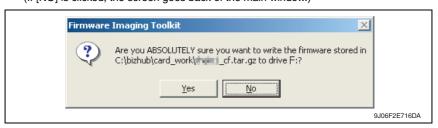
10. Select the drive that the compact flash is inserted, which is confirmed at step 3.

NOTE

The drives other than the compact flash that is recognized as "Removable Disk"
can be selected for the writing destination. If these drives are selected mistakenly
to make the writing, it may give fatal damage on Windows system or delete the
saved data. Therefore pay close attention when selecting the drive.



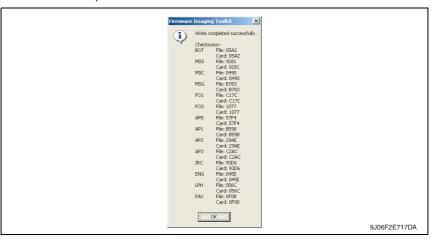
- 11. [Write] button is changed form gray into active status.
 When clicking [Write] button, the following dialog is displayed.
- 12. In the dialog, re-confirm the firmware data and the written destination drive, and click [YES].
 - (If [NO] is clicked, the screen goes back of the main window.)



13. Click [Yes], and data writing starts.

NOTE

- Writing a card is a resource intensive operation for your computer do not attempt to multitask (use the computer for anything else) during the writing procedure.
- 14. When the writing is completed, the following screen appears. In this screen, check sums will be compared between the firmware data and one written into the compact flash.



NOTE

- The contents displayed on the screen may different according to the model type.
 The above is the screen displayed for firmware data writing of bizhub C450.
- 15. Confirm each check sums are identical and quit Firmware Imaging Toolkit 2006.
- 16. Take out the compact flash from the PC.

NOTE

 When removing the compact flash, be sure to check if data is written as normal and then remove it according to the precise removing method.

Maintenance

bizhub C250P/C252P

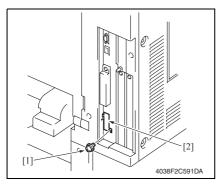
10.4 Firmware rewriting by compact flash

- The F/W is updated using the Compact flash.
- Do not use the Service Jig or Jig Software for rewriting the F/W.

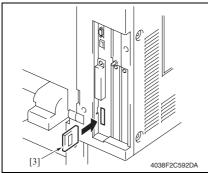
10.4.1 Updating method

NOTE

 NEVER remove or insert the Compact Flash card with the machine power turned ON.

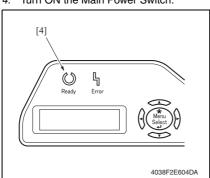


- 1. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
- 2. Remove the screw [1] and the metal Blanking Plate [2].



3. Insert the Compact Flash card into the slot.





- The ready to print LED [4] on the control panel changes its state as follows: steady light → off → blinking, and downloading of FW is started.
- Ready to print LED [4] which is blinking will stay ON when the FW is normally downloaded.
 - *It takes about ten minutes until it stays ON.

- 7. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch.
- 8. Remove the Compact Flash card from the slot.
- 9. Turn ON the Main Power Switch.

NOTE

- Do not turn OFF the Main Power Switch until "Ready to print" or serial number entry screen appears when turning ON the Main Power Switch for the first time after rewriting the firmware.
- If the serial number entry screen appears when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Serial Number] and type the serial number.
- If the malfunction code D3## occurs when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, perform the data recovery procedure.

See P.359

- 10. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- 11. Perform the following setting. [Version Upgrade] \rightarrow [HDD Ver. Upgrade]

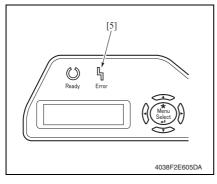
See P.201

- 12. Turn OFF the Main Power Switch and turn it ON again more than 10 seconds after.
- 13. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- 14. Execute [Data Backup]

See P.210

- 15. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- 16. From [List Output], select to print [Machine Manage].
- 17. Make sure if the version of Firmware is updated.

10.4.2 Action When Data Transfer Fails



 When the error LED [5] on the control panel turns ON, follow the procedure below for the countermeasure.

- 1. Perform the data rewriting procedure again.
- If the procedure is abnormally terminated, change the Compact Flash for a new one and try another rewriting sequence.
- 3. When it still does not finish normally, replace the board below and rewrite data.
- · MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)
- · Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

10.5 Updating the Firmware with the Internet ISW

10.5.1 Out line

[Internet ISW] is the system which gives the instruction for updating the Firmware with
the control panel of the Printer, so the Printer will automatically receive the Firmware
from the Program Server over a network for updating. With the Internet ISW, the Firmware can be updated when the operator is at the User's without Firmware data.

10.5.2 Service environment

The following conditions are necessary for using the Internet ISW function.

 The Printer is connected to such a network environment that the Firmware can be downloaded on the internet using the ftp or http Protocol.

The "Internet ISW" will not operate under the following conditions.

- · Main power switch is set to OFF.
- The Printer has the job currently performing.
- When the following setting is set to "ON":
 [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]

10.5.3 Preparations for Firmware rewriting

- This machine uses Jig software to set Internet ISW and executes Internet ISW on the control panel.
- To use Internet ISW, it is necessary that Network Parameter, Program Server Address, Firewall Address, and other functions must be set in advance on the Jig software.
- For details of each setting item, refer to Adjustment/Setting "Internet ISW".
 See P.292

A. Internet ISW Set

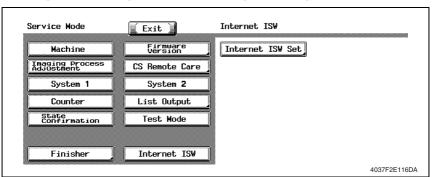
1. Connect a PC, in which the Jig software has been installed.

See P.228

2. Call the Service Mode to the screen.

See P.229

3. Click [Internet ISW Set] which is available from [Internet ISW].



4. Click [ON], and click [END].

NOTE

- Settings such as Server setting, etc. will be available by selecting "ON" on this setting.
- When the following setting is set to "ON", "ON" cannot be selected on this setting. [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]

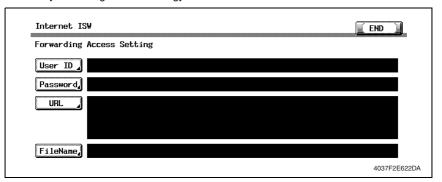
B. Protocol Setting

- It performs the setting concerning the Protocol (ftp or http) for connecting to the Internet ISW.
- When connecting to the Program Server using a proxy server, perform the setting for a Proxy Server.

Step	Connecting by http	Connecting by ftp	
0	Start the Jig software and select [Service Mode] → [Internet ISW].		
1	Data Input Setting Click [HTTP Setting], and select [ON].	Data Input Setting Click [FTP Setting], and select [ON].	
2	Connect Proxy • For connecting via Proxy Server, select [ON].		
3	Proxy Server • For connecting via Proxy Server, set the Proxy Server Address and the Port Number. 1. Select the [Server Address], and set the Proxy Server Address by IP addressing scheme or FQDN scheme. 2. Select [Port Number], and set the Port Number for the Proxy Server from 1 through 65535.		
4	Proxy Authentication Set the Login name and the Password which may be necessary for Authentication when accessing to the Proxy Server. When Authentication is necessary for accessing to the Proxy Server, select [Authentication], and select [ON]. Select [Log-in Name], and enter the Login name on the on-screen keyboard. Select [Password], and enter the Password on the on-screen keyboard.	Connection Setting Perform the setting for accessing FTP server. Select [Port Number], and set the Port Number for FTP server from 1 through 65535. Select [Connection Time Out], and set the time for the Connection Time Out from 1 through 60. When connecting in PASV mode, select [PASV Mode], and select [ON]. PASV Mode: This mode is for transferring the file with FTP under the condition where communication is restricted such as inside the Firewall. Since with PASV mode, the client with restriction sets the Port Number, data transmission port can be secured to enable the file transmission.	
5	Connection Time-Out Select [Connection Time-Out], and set the time for the Connection Time Out between 30 and 300 seconds.	_	

C. Forwarding Access Setting

- To make the access setting for the Program Server which stores the Firmware data.
- Start the Jig software and select [Service Mode] → [Internet ISW].
- 2. Click [Forwarding Access Setting].



- Select [User ID], and enter the user ID which is necessary for connecting to the Program Server on the on-screen keyboard, and click [END].
- Select [Password], and enter the Password which is necessary for connecting to the Program Server on the on-screen keyboard, and click [END].
- 5. Select [URL], and enter the directory which stores the Program Server Address and the Firmware on the on-screen keyboard by URL method, and click [END].

NOTE

- Enter the URL which matches to the Protocol to be used.

 When connecting to http://(host name or IP address)/directory name

 when connecting to ftp

 When connecting to ftp
- Select [File Name], and enter the file name of the Firmware data to be downloaded on the on-screen keyboard, and click [END].
- 7. Click [END] to finish setting.

10.5.4 Firmware rewriting

NOTE

 When performing the Internet ISW, ask the administrator for permission beforehand.

A. Conducting rewriting on the control panel.

- Perform the following setting.
 [Service Mode] → [Version Upgrade] → [Internet ISW] → [ISW Start]
- 2. Press the Menu/Select key to start downloading the firmware.

NOTE

Do not turn OFF the Main Power Switch while the firmware is being downloaded.

B. During Firmware Updating

- The ready to print LED on the control panel is blinking during connection and data transfer. It takes about 10 min. (the period of time varies depending on the network line conditions) for the data to be downloaded.
- After the data has been downloaded, firmware updating is started. It takes about 10 min. for the firmware to be updated.

C. Completed or failed

(1) Firmware updated normally

- The machine is automatically restarted when updating of the firmware is normally terminated.
- The message "Version Upgrade has succeeded." appears on the panel, indicating that upgrading has been completed.

(2) Failing to update the Firmware due to the Network trouble.

- If the message "Version Upgrade failed." appears on the panel:
- Press the Menu/Select key to go back to the ordinary screen and then perform Internet ISW from the control panel again.

(3) Failing to update the Firmware after downloading has started

- · If the error LED lights up steadily
- If firmware updating fails in mid-sequence, the contents of the machine ROM are erased, no panel display is given, and the error LED only lights up steadily.
- Since Internet ISW cannot be used from the control panel, use the compact flash to update the firmware.

D. Confirming the Firmware Version.

- 1. Call the Tech. Rep. Mode to the screen.
- 2. From [List Output], select to print [Machine Manage].
- 3. Make sure if the version of Firmware is updated.

11. Other

11.1 Disassembly/Adjustment prohibited items

A. Paint-locked Screws

NOTE

 Paint-locked screws show that the assembly or unit secured can only be adjusted or set at the factory and should not be adjusted, set, or removed in the field.

B. Red Painted Screws

NOTE

- When the screws are removed, the red paint is coated on the points where readjustment is required.
- Once the red painted screw is removed or loosened, you should make adjustment.
 Accordingly check the adjustment items in this manual and make necessary adjustment. Note that when two or more screws are used on the part in questions, only one representative screw may be marked with red paint.

C. Variable Resistors on Board

NOTE

 Do not turn the variable resistors on boards for which no adjusting instructions are given in Adjustment/Setting.

D. Removal of PWBs

A CAUTION

- When removing a circuit board or other electrical component, refer to "Handling of PWBs" and follow the corresponding removal procedures.
- The removal procedures given in the following omit the removal of connectors and screws securing the circuit board support or circuit board.
- Where it is absolutely necessary to touch the ICs and other electrical components on the board, be sure to ground your body.

11.2 Disassembly/Assembly/Cleaning list (Other parts)

11.2.1 Disassembly/Assembly parts list

	No.	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
	1		Left Cover	P.88
	2	1	Exit Tray	P.89
	3		Lower Rear Cover	P.89
	4		Rear Left Cover	P.88
	5		Upper Rear Cover	P.89
	6		Multi Bypass Tray Left Cover (bizhub C250P)	P.90
	7		Multi Bypass Tray Right Cover (bizhub C250P)	P.90
	8		Multi Bypass Tray Upper Cover (bizhub C250P)	P.90
2	9		Multi Bypass Tray Left Cover (bizhub C252P)	P.90
	10	Exterior parts	Multi Bypass Tray Right Cover (bizhub C252P)	P.90
	11	Exterior parts	Multi Bypass Tray Upper Cover (bizhub C252P)	P.90
	12		Front Door	P.91
	13		Rear Right Cover	P.91
	14		Control Panel	P.93
	15		Tray 1	P.93
	16		Tray 2	P.95
	17		Tray 2 Rear Right Cover	P.95
	18		Tray 2 Rear Left Cover	P.95
	19		Tray 2 Right Rear Cover	P.96
	20		Front Cover	P.97
	21		Mechanical Control Board	P.99
	22		DC Power Supply	P.101
	23		Slide Interface Board	P.103
	24		MFP Control Board	P.104
	25		DIMM0, DIMM1	P.106
	26	Board and etc.	Hard Disk Drive	P.107
	27		High Voltage Unit	P.108
	28		Tray 1 Paper Size Board	P.109
	29		Tray 2 Control Board	P.110
	30		Tray 2 Paper Size Board	P.112
	31		PH Interface Board	P.114
	32		Multi Bypass Unit (bizhub C250P)	P.116
2	33		Multi Bypass Unit (bizhub C252P)	P.117
	34	Unit	PH Unit	P.118
	35	Jilli	Transport Drive Assy	P.122
	36		Hopper Drive Assy	P.124
	37		Right Door Assy	P.125

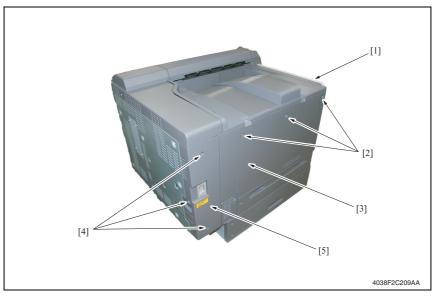
No.	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
38		PWB Box	P.128
39		Color Developing Motor	P.132
40		Color PC Drum Motor	P.132
41		Toner Supply Motor C/K	P.132
42		Toner Supply Motor Y/M	P.133
43	Others	Main Motor	P.133
44		Fusing Drive Motor	P.134
45		Tray 2 Lift-Up Motor	P.136
46		Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor	P.136
47		Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor	P.138
48		IDC/Registration Sensor/1, IDC/Registration Sensor/2	P.139

11.2.2 Cleaning parts list

No.	Section	Part name	Ref.Page
1	PH	PH Window	P.141
2	Processing section	Image Transfer Belt Unit	P.142
3	Tray 1	Feed Roller	P.142
4	ilay i	Separation Roller	P.142
5	Bypass	Feed Roller	P.143
6	Буразз	Separation Roller	P.144
7		Feed Roller	P.145
8	T 0	Pick-up Roller	P.145
9	Tray 2	Separation Roller	P.147
10		Transport Roller	P.148

11.3 Disassembly/Assembly procedure

11.3.1 Left Cover (bizhub C250P)/Rear Left Cover

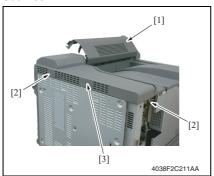


- 1. Open the Front Door [1].
- 2. Remove three Screws [2], and remove the Left Cover [3].
- 3. Remove three Screws [4], and remove the Rear Left Cover [5].

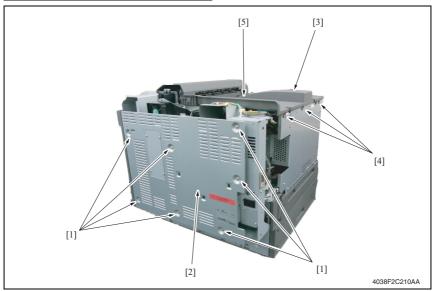
11.3.2 Exit Tray/Upper Rear Cover/Lower Rear Cover

1. Remove the Left Cover and Rear Left Cover.

See P.88



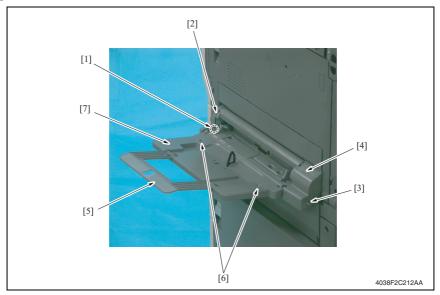
- 2. Open the Right Door and Fusing Unit Cover [1].
- 3. Remove two Screws [2], and remove the Upper Rear Cover.



- 4. Remove seven Screws [1], and remove the Lower Rear Cover [2].
- 5. Remove the Sub Tray [3].
- 6. Remove the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan.
- 7. Remove three Screws [4], and remove the Exit Tray [5].

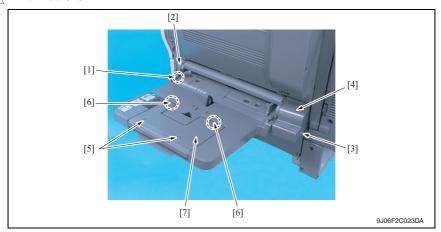
11.3.3 Multi Bypass Tray Left Cover/Multi Bypass Tray Right Cover/Multi Bypass Tray Upper Cover

A. bizhub C250P



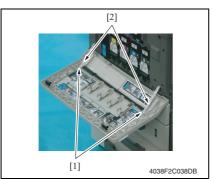
- 1. Unhook the tab [1], and remove the Multi Bypass Tray Left Cover [2].
- 2. Remove the Screws [3], and remove the Multi Bypass Tray Right Cover [4].
- 3. Remove the Tray Extension [5].
- 4. Remove two Screws [6], and remove the Multi Bypass Tray Upper Cover [7].

B. bizhub C252P



- 1. Unhook three tabs [1], and remove the multi bypass tray left cover [2].
- 2. Remove the screws [3], and remove the multi bypass tray right cover [4].
- Remove two screws [5] and two tabs [6], and remove the multi bypass tray upper cover [7].

11.3.4 Front Door



[4] [4] 4038F2C039DA

- 1. Open the Front Door.
- Remove the Screw [1] each to remove the Right and Left Stoppers [2].

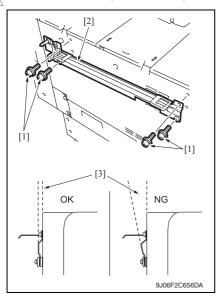
3. Pull out the Right and Left Pins [3] to remove the Front Door [4].

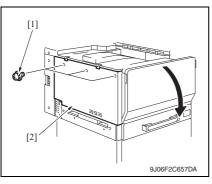
11.3.5 Rear Right Cover



- 1. Open the Right Door.
- 2. Remove three Screws [1], and remove the Rear Right Cover [2].

11.3.6 Left cover (bizhub C252P)





1. If the optional finisher FS-514 is mounted, remove it.

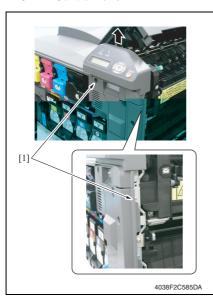
See FS-514 Service Manual.

NOTE

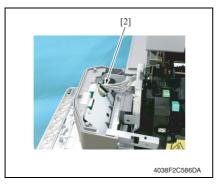
- After removing the finisher FS-514, remove four screws [1] and mounting plate [2].
- When reinstalling the mounting plate, do not secure two lower screws too tight, and make sure that the plate and the main unit will be parallel and the clearance [3] between those two will be even.

- 2. Open the front door.
- 3. Remove the three screws [1], and remove the left cover [2].

11.3.7 Control Panel

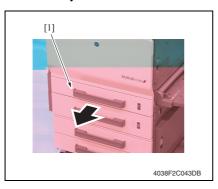


- 1. Open the Front Door.
- 2. Open the Right Door and the Fusing Unit Cover.
- 3. Remove two Screws [1].
- 4. Lift it up to take out the Control Panel.

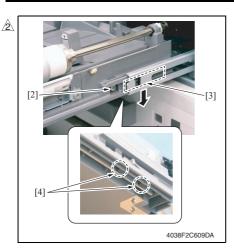


5. Disconnect the Connector [2], and remove the Control Panel.

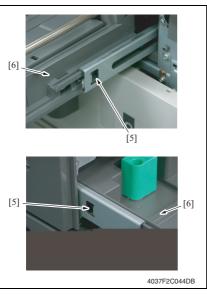




1. Slide out the Tray 1 [1].

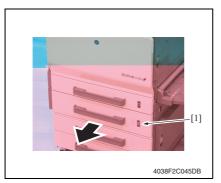


2. Loosen the screw [2], hold two tabs [3] and remove the spacer [4].

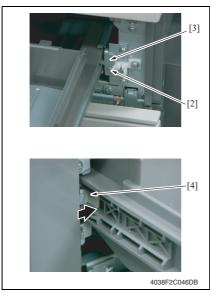


3. Slide out the Tray 1 [6] while pressing the Slide Locks [5] at both ends.

11.3.9 Tray 2

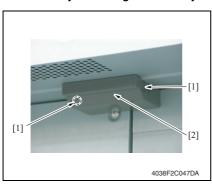


1. Slide out the Tray 2 [1].

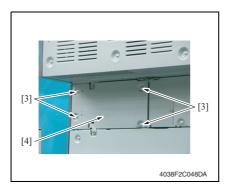


- 2. Remove the Screw [2], and remove the Stopper [3].
- 3. Slide out the Tray 2 while pressing the Slide Locks [4].

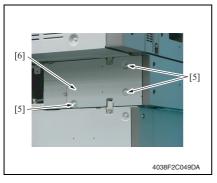
11.3.10 Tray 2 Rear Right Cover/Tray 2 Rear Left Cover



1. Unhook two tabs [1], and remove the Wiring cover [2].



2. Remove four Screws [3], and remove the Tray 2 Rear Right Cover [4].



 Remove three Screws [5], and remove the Tray 2 Rear Left Cover [6].

11.3.11 Tray 2 Right Rear Cover



1. Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Tray 2 Right Rear Cover [2].

11.3.12 Front Cover

1. Remove the Front Door.

See P.91

2. Remove the Left Cover, Control Panel and Exit Tray.

See P.88, 93, 89

3. Remove the Toner Cartridges (C, M, Y, K).

See P.37

4. Remove the Waste Toner Box.

See P.31

5. Remove the imaging Units (C, M, Y, K).

See P.39

NOTE

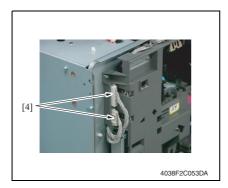
 After the Imaging Unit has been removed from the main unit wrap it in the light shielding cloth and store it in a dark place. DO NOT leave the Imaging Unit exposed to light for a extended period of time as it will become damaged.



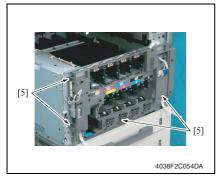
6. Remove the Screw [1], and remove the Connector protective cover [2].



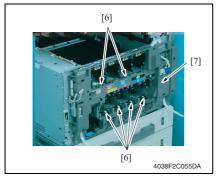
7. Disconnect two Connectors [1].



8. Disconnect two Connectors [4].



9. Remove four Screws [5].

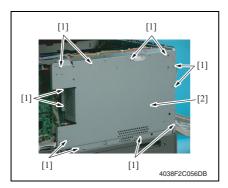


10. Unhook six tabs [6], and remove the Front Cover [7].

11.3.13 Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

NOTE

- If a Finishing Option is installed, remove if from the main unit before trying to remove the Mechanical Control Board.
- When removing the Finishing Option, support the Horizontal Transport Unit with your hand to prevent if from dropping.



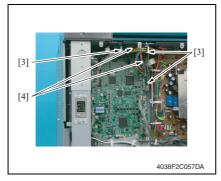
1. Remove the Exit Tray.

See P.89

2. Remove the Rear Left Cover.

See P.88

Remove twelve Screws [1] to remove the protective sheet of DC Power Supply [2].

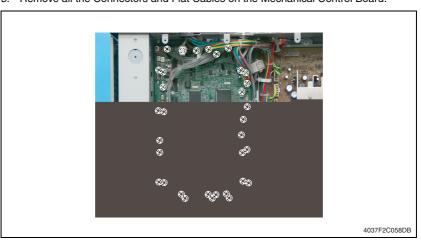


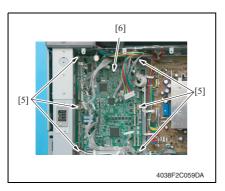
4. Remove the Harness [4] from three Wire saddles [3].

NOTE

 When installing the Mechanical Control Board, make sure to fix the Harness at the original position with the wire saddle.

5. Remove all the Connectors and Flat Cables on the Mechanical Control Board.



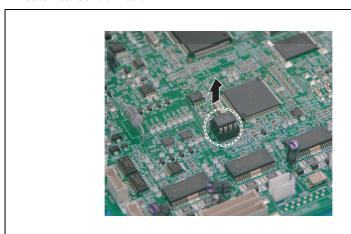


6. Remove six Screws [5], and remove the Mechanical Control Board [6].

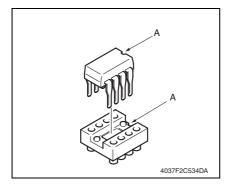
NOTE

 When Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M) is replaced, relocate the Parameter Chip (IC6).

Mount the Parameter Chip (IC6) of old Mechanical Control Board onto the new Mechanical Control Board.



4037F2C061DB



NOTE

 When the Parameter Chip (IC6) is mounted, precisely fit the directions of each "A."

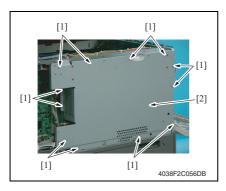
NOTE

 When the Control Board is to be replaced, rewriting the Firmware to the latest one.

11.3.14 DC Power Supply (PU1)

NOTE

- If a Finishing Option is installed, remove if from the main unit before trying to remove the DC Power Supply.
- When removing the Finishing Option, support the Horizontal Transport Unit with your hand to prevent if from dropping.



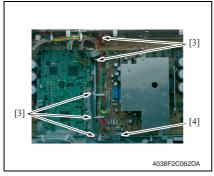
1. Remove the Exit Tray.

See P.89

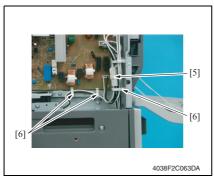
2. Remove the Rear Left Cover.

See P.88

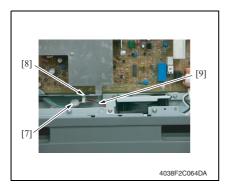
 Remove twelve Screws [1] to remove the protective sheet of DC Power Supply [2].



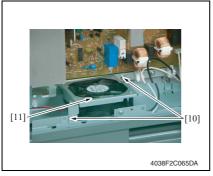
4. Remove five Wire saddles [3] and the Edge cover [4].



 Disconnect the Connector [5], and remove the Harness from three Wire saddles [6].

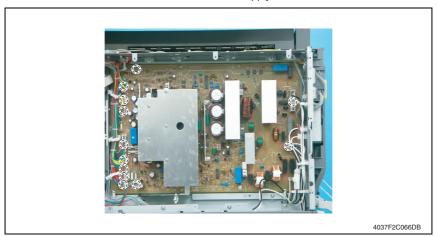


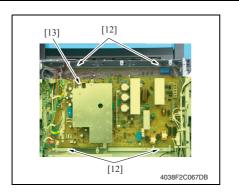
 Disconnect the Connector [7], and remove the Harness [9] from the Wire saddles [8].



 Remove two Screws [10], and remove the Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/1 [11].

8. Remove all the Connectors on the DC Power Supply.



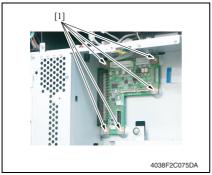


Remove four Screws [12], and remove the DC Power Supply [13].

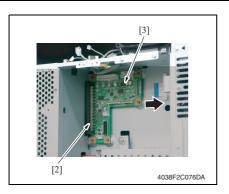
11.3.15 Slide Interface Board (PWB-SIF)



- 1. Remove the Lower Rear Cover. See P.89
- Remove all the Connectors and the Flat Cable on the Slide Interface Board.

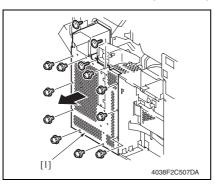


3. Remove five Screws [1].



 Disconnect the Connector [2] connecting to the MFP Control Board and remove the Slide Interface Board [3].

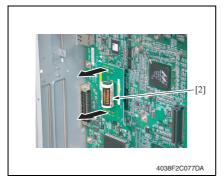
11.3.16 MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)



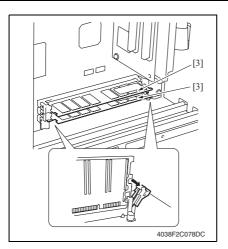
 Remove the Upper Rear Cover, Lower Rear Cover and Rear Right Cover.

See P.89, 91

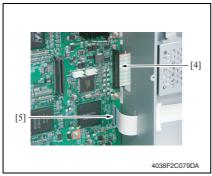
- 2. Remove the Slide Interface Board.
- 3. Remove thirteen Screws, and remove the Shield cover [1].



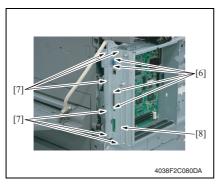
Remove the NVRAM [2] on the MFP Control Board.



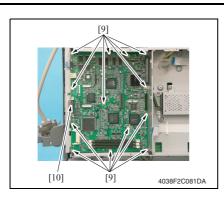
Remove the DIMM0 and DIMM1 [3] on the MFP Control Board.



6. Disconnect the Connector [4] and Flat Cable [5].



 Remove four Bolts [6] and six Screws [7], and remove the Interface cover [8].



8. Remove thirteen Screws [9], and remove the MFP Control Board [10].

NOTE

- When the MFP Control Board is replaced, mount the removed NVRAM to the new MFP Control Board.
- When the MFP Control Board is replaced, make sure to update the firmware.

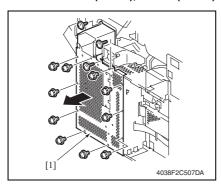
⚠ NOTE

- When the Firmware's card Ver. is Ver 81 or later, the following operation must be performed without fail when replacing the MFP Control Board.
- ① Update the Firmware to the latest version.
- ② Perform the following setting for all the patterns. [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)] of the Jig software

See P.53

③ Perform the following setting. [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Data Backup] of the Control Panel See P.210

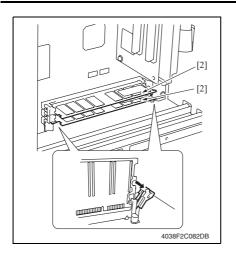
11.3.17 DIMM0 (Work0), DIMM1 (Work1)



 Remove the Upper Rear Cover, Lower Rear Cover and Rear Right Cover

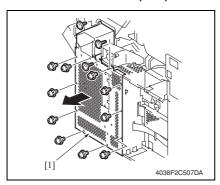
See P.89, 91

2. Remove thirteen Screws, and remove the Shield cover [1].



3. Remove the DIMM0 [2] and DIMM1 [2].

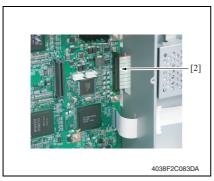
11.3.18 Hard Disk Drive (HDD)



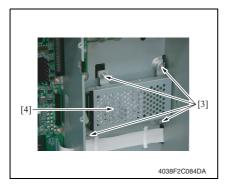
 Remove the Upper Rear Cover, Lower Rear Cover and Rear Right Cover.

See P.89, 91

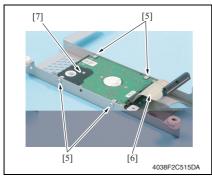
2. Remove thirteen Screws, and remove the Shield cover [1].



3. Disconnect the Connector [2].



4. Remove the four Screws [3], and remove the Hard Disk Drive Assy [4].

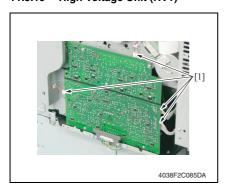


 Remove four screws [5] and the Flat cable [6], and remove the Hard Disk Drive [7].

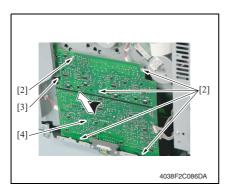
NOTE

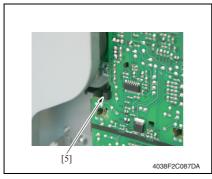
 When the Hard Disk is replaced, select [HDD Format] in Tech. Rep. Mode for Logical format.

11.3.19 High Voltage Unit (HV1)



- 1. Remove the PWB Box. See P.128
- 2. Disconnect four Connectors [1].





 Remove five Screws [2] and the tab [3], and remove the High Voltage Unit [4].

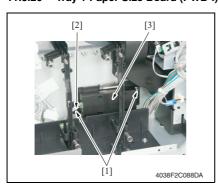
NOTE

 When installing the High Voltage Unit, make sure that the terminal end surely contacts.

NOTE

 When installing the High Voltage Unit, make sure that the claw [5] shown in the left illustration is surely set up.

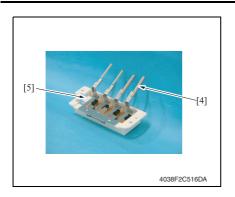




- 1. Slide out the Tray 1.
- 2. Remove the PWB Box.

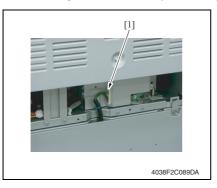
See P.128

 Remove two Screws [1] and Connector [2], and remove the Tray 1 Paper Size Board Assy [3].



- 4. Remove the Lever [4].
- Remove the Tray 1 Paper Size Board [5].

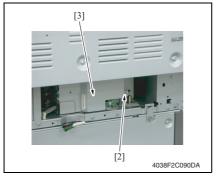
11.3.21 Tray 2 Control Board (PWB-Z-PC)



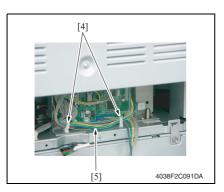
1. Remove the Tray 2 Rear Right Cover and Tray 2 Rear Left Cover.

See P.95

 If the optional paper feed cabinet is mounted, disconnect the Connector [1].



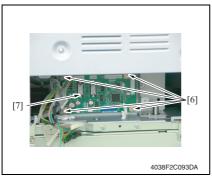
3. Remove the Screw [2], and remove the Metal blanking plate [3].



4. Remove the Harness [5] from the Wire saddle [4].

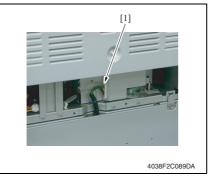


Remove all the Connectors on the Tray 2 Control Board.



6. Remove four Screws [6], and remove the Tray 2 Control Board [7].

11.3.22 Tray 2 Paper Size Board (PWB-I-PC)



- [3]
- [5] 4038F2C090DA 4038F2C090DA

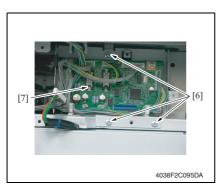
- 1. Slide out the Tray 2.
- 2. Remove the Tray 2 Rear Right Cover and Tray 2 Rear Left Cover.

See P.95

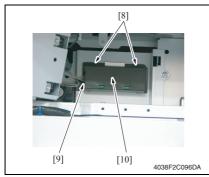
 If the optional paper feed cabinet is mounted, disconnect the Connector [1].

4. Remove the Screw [2], and remove the Metal blanking plate [3].

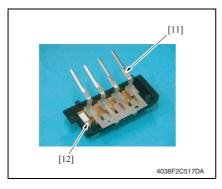
5. Remove the Harness [5] from the Edge cover [4].



Remove three Screws [6], and remove the Tray 2 Control Board Assy [7].

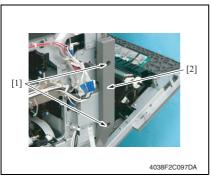


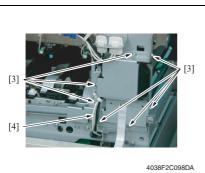
Remove two Claws [8] and the Connector [9], and remove the Tray 2
Paper Size Board Assy [10].

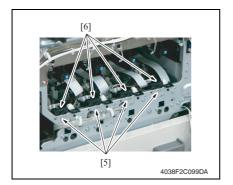


8. Remove the Lever [11], and remove the Tray 2 Paper Size Board [12].

11.3.23 PH Interface Board (PWB-D)







1. Remove the Front Cover.

See P.97

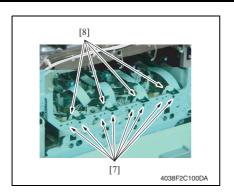
2. Remove the Image Transfer Belt Unit.

See P.34

3. Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Front Right Cover [2].

 Remove seven Screws [3], and remove the Right Door Switch Assy [4].

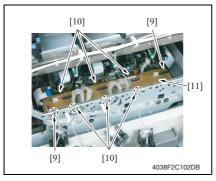
 Remove the Screw [5] each, and remove the Imaging Unit contact Assy [6] of each color.



Remove two Screws [7] each, and remove the Imaging Unit Roll Assy [8] of each color.



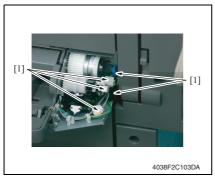
 Remove all the Connectors and the Flat Cables on the PH Interface Board.



 Remove two Screws [9] and six tabs [10], and remove the PH Interface Board [11].

11.3.24 Multi Bypass Unit

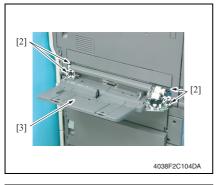
A. bizhub C250P



 Remove the Multi Bypass Tray Right Cover and the Multi Bypass Tray Left Cover.

See P.90

2. Disconnect five Connectors [1].



3. Remove four Screws [2], and remove the Multi Bypass Unit [3].



NOTE

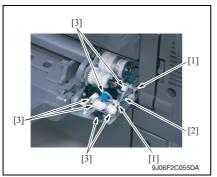
 When installing the Multi Bypass Unit, fit the position of dowel shown in the left illustration.

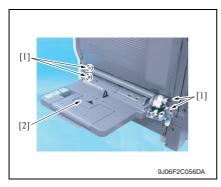
Maintenance

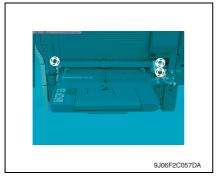
bizhub C250P/C252P



B. bizhub C252P







 Remove the multi bypass tray right cover and the multi bypass tray left cover.

See P.90

- 2. Remove the harness [2] from the wire saddles [1].
- 3. Disconnect six connectors [3].

4. Remove four screws [1], and remove the multi bypass unit [2].

NOTE

 When installing the multi bypass unit, fit the position of dowel shown in the left illustration.

11.3.25 PH Unit

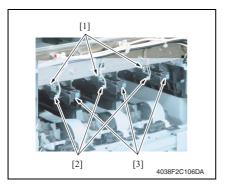
A. Removal Procedure

1. Remove the Front Cover.

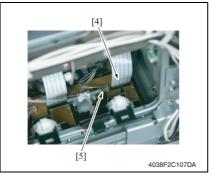
See P.97

2. Remove the Image Transfer Belt Unit.

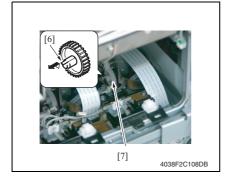
See P.34



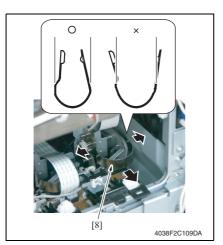
 Remove the Screw [1] and disconnect the Connector [2] respectively, and remove three Imaging Unit Guide rails [3].



4. Disconnect the Flat Cable [4] and the Connector [5] of the PH Unit (Black).



5. Unhook the tab [6], and remove the Gear [7] of the PH Unit (Black).

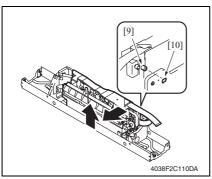


Remove the Stopper [8] of the PH Unit (Black).

NOTE

 When removing the Stopper, use care so that both ends of the Stopper will not open but stay parallel as shown on the left.
 Keep using the Stopper after once

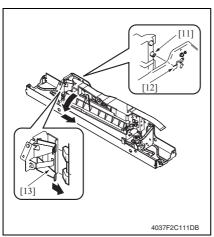
Keep using the Stopper after once stretched out may cause uneven pitch or other image troubles.



7. Remove the PH Unit (Black).

Move the front side of the PH Unit to left a little, and remove the boss [9] from the locating hole [10].

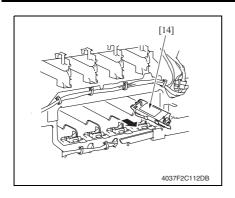
Lift up the front side of the PH Unit a little.



Remove the boss [11] at the rear side of the PH Unit from the locating hole [12].

NOTE

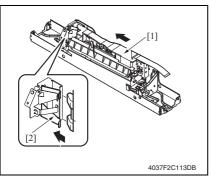
Since the back of the PH Unit is pushed to the right with the two plate springs [13], remove it by tilting the backside of the PH Unit to the left as shown in the left illustration.



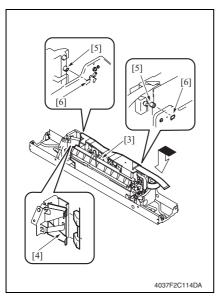
Remove the PH Unit [14].

8. Follow the same procedures to remove all PH Units.

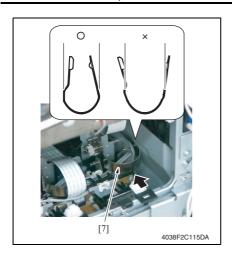
B. Reinstall Procedure



 Fit the back of the PH Unit [1] into the plate spring [2] of installation plate.



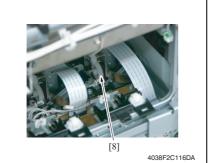
- Push the PH Unit [3] along the right side line of PH Unit installation plate all the way and fit it into the plate spring [4].
- Make sure that the two bosses [5] at front and rear side of the PH Unit fit in the locating hole [6].

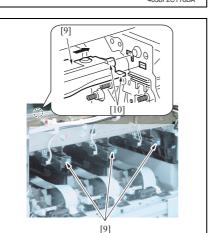


4. Reinstall the Stopper [7].

NOTE

 When reinstalling the Stopper, use care so that both ends of the Stopper will not open but stay parallel as shown on the left.
 Keep using the Stopper after once stretched out may cause uneven pitch or other image troubles.





4038F2C117DA

5. Reinstall the Gear [8].

NOTE

- Make sure that the gear claw is fit in.
- Connect the Connector and the Flat Cable.

NOTE

- Make sure the Harness is installed along with the Harness guide.
- 7. Follow the same procedures to install all the PH Units.
- 8. Install the Imaging Unit Guide Rail [9].

NOTE

- Make sure that the two claws [10] at rear end of the rail are fit in the locating hole on the main unit.
- Reinstall the Image Transfer Belt Unit.
- 10. Reinstall the Front Cover.
- 11. Make skew adjustment of the PH Unit.

NOTE

 When replacing the PH Unit, make sure to conduct PH Unit skew adjustment.

11.3.26 Transport Drive Assy

1. Remove the PWB Box.

See P.128

2. Remove the High Voltage Unit.

See P.108

3. Remove the Color Developing Motor.

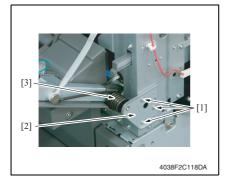
See P.132

4. Remove the Color PC Drum Motor.

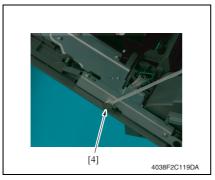
See P.132

5. Remove the Main Motor.

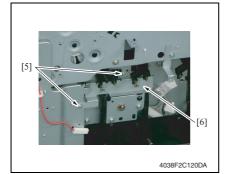
See P.133



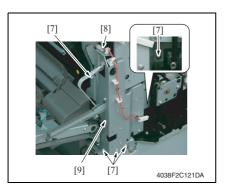
 Remove three Screws [1], and remove the Reinforcement plate [2] of the Right Door and spring [3].



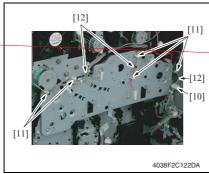
7. Remove the Shoulder Screw [4].



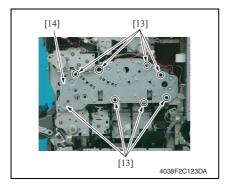
8. Remove two Screws [5], and remove the Metal blanking plate [6].



 Remove five Screws [7] and the Connector [8], and remove the Rear Handle Assy [9].



- 10. Disconnect the Connector [10].
- 11. Remove the Harnesses [12] from five Wire Saddles [11].

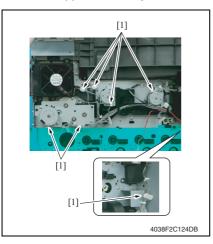


 Remove eight Screws [13], and remove the Transport Drive Assy [14].

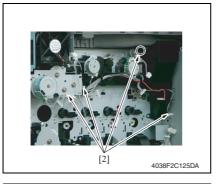
NOTE

• The Screw is fixed at the position with the triangle markers.

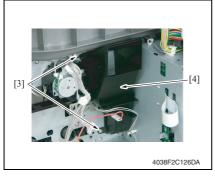
11.3.27 Hopper Drive Assy



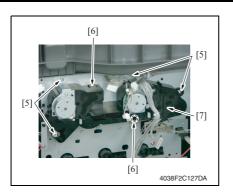
- 1. Remove the Transfer Drive Assy. See P.122
- 2. Disconnect seven Connectors [1].



3. Remove the Harness from four Wire Saddles [2].

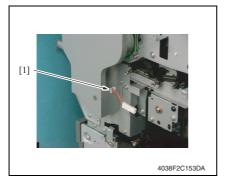


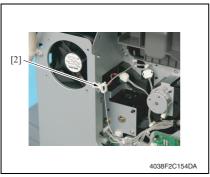
4. Remove two Screws [3], and remove the Duct [4].



 Remove four Screws [5] and two Claws [6], and remove the Hopper Drive Assy [7].

11.3.28 Right Door Assy





1. Remove the PWB Box.

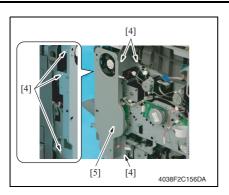
See P.128

2. Remove the High Voltage Unit.

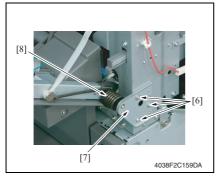
See P.108

- 3. Remove the Upper Rear Cover. See P.89
- 4. Remove the Harness from the Edge Cover [1].

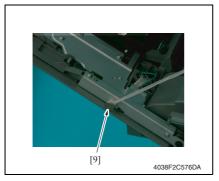
5. Remove the Harness from the Wire Saddle [2].



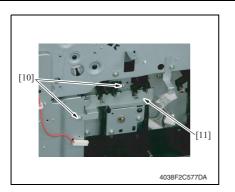
6. Remove six Screws [4], and remove the Motor cover [5].



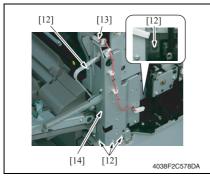
- 7. Open the Right Door.
- Remove three Screws [6], and remove the Reinforcement plate [7] of the right door and spring [8].



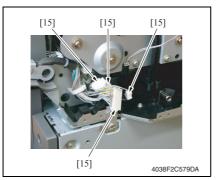
9. Remove the Shoulder Screw [9].



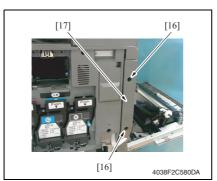
10. Remove two Screws [10], and remove the Metal blanking plate [11].



 Remove five Screws [12] and the Connector [13], and remove the Rear Handle Assy [14].



12. Disconnect four Connectors [15].



[18] [20] 4038F2C581DA

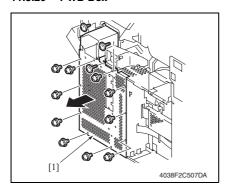
13. Remove the Front Door.

See P.91

- 14. Slide out the Tray 1.
- 15. Remove two Screws [16], and remove the Front Right Cover [17].

- 16. Remove the Screw [18], and remove the Shaft [19].
- 17. Remove the Right Door Assy [20].

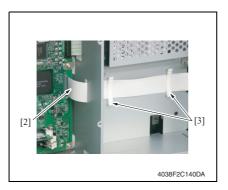
11.3.29 PWB Box



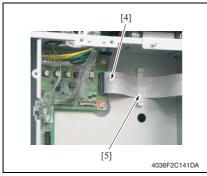
 Remove the Upper Rear Cover, Lower Rear Cover and Rear Right Cover.

See P.89, 91

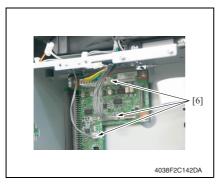
2. Remove thirteen Screws, and remove the Shield cover [1].



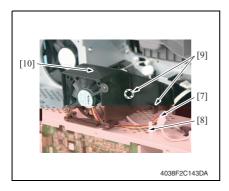
 Disconnect the Flat Cable [2] on the MFP Control Board, and remove two Presser Bars [3] of Flat Cable.



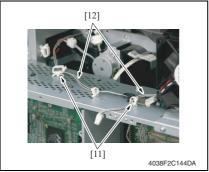
 Disconnect the Flat Cable [4] on the Slide Interface Board, and remove the Presser Bar [5] of Flat Cable.



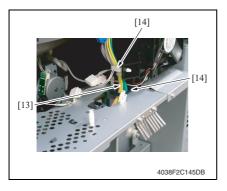
5. Disconnect three Connectors [6] on the Slide Interface Board.



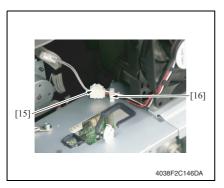
- Disconnect the Connector [7], and remove the Harness from the Wire Saddle [8].
- 7. Remove two tabs [9], and remove the Cooling Fan Motor/2 [10].



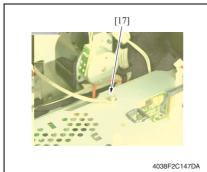
8. Remove the Harness [12] from two Wire Saddles [11].



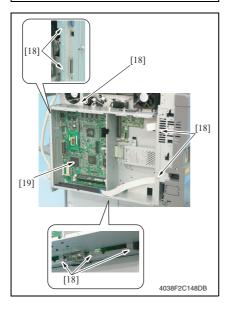
Remove the Harness [13] from two Edge Covers [14].



 Disconnect the Connector [15], and remove the Harness from the Wire Saddle [16].

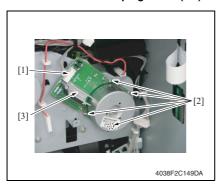


11. Remove the Screw [17] of the Ground terminal.



12. Remove eight Screws [18], and remove the PWB Box [19].

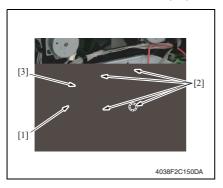
11.3.30 Color Developing Motor (M3)



1. Remove the PWB Box. See P.128

Remove the Connector [1] and four Screws [2], and remove the Color Developing Motor [3].

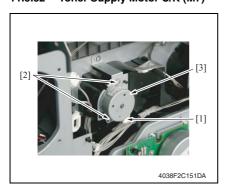
11.3.31 Color PC Drum Motor (M2)



1. Remove the PWB Box. See P.128

Remove the Connector [1] and four Screws [2], and remove the Color PC Drum Motor [3].

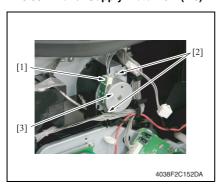
11.3.32 Toner Supply Motor C/K (M7)



1. Remove the PWB Box. See P.128

Remove the Connector [1] and two Screws [2], and remove the Toner Supply Motor C/K [3].

11.3.33 Toner Supply Motor Y/M (M6)

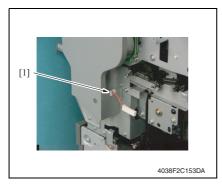


1. Remove the PWB Box.

See P.128

Remove the Connector [1] and two Screws [2], and remove the Toner Supply Motor Y/M [3].

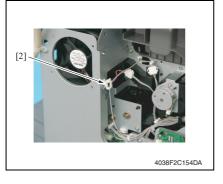
11.3.34 Main Motor (M1)



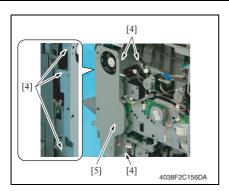
1. Remove the PWB Box.

See P.128

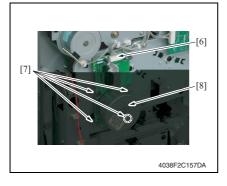
- 2. Remove the Upper Rear Cover. See P.89
- 3. Remove the Harness from the Edge Cover [1].



4. Remove the Harness from the Wire Saddle [2].

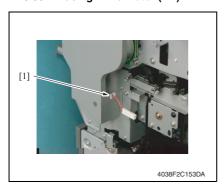


5. Remove six Screws [4], and remove the Motor cover [5].

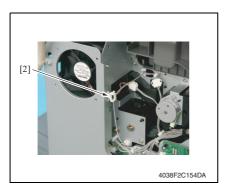


 Remove the Connector [6] and four Screws [7], and remove the Main Motor [8].

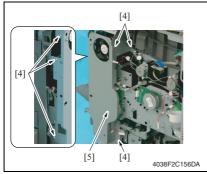
11.3.35 Fusing Drive Motor (M4)



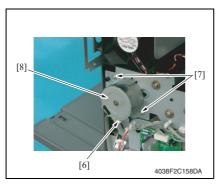
- 1. Remove the PWB Box. See P.128
- 2. Remove the Upper Rear Cover. See P.89
- 3. Remove the Harness from the Edge Cover [1].



4. Remove the Harness from the Wire Saddle [2].

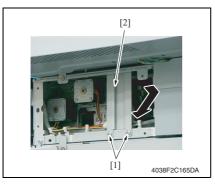


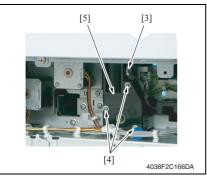
5. Remove six Screws [4], and remove the Motor cover [5].



Remove the Connector [6] and two Screws [7], and remove the Fusing Drive Motor [8].

11.3.36 Tray 2 Lift-Up Motor (M3-PC)



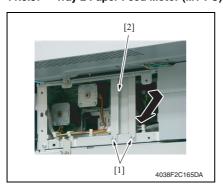


- 1. Pull out the Tray 2.
- Remove the Tray 2 Rear Right Cover.

See P.95

- 3. If the optional paper feed cabinet is mounted, remove it.
- 4. Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Reinforcement plate [2].
- 5. Disconnect the Connector [3].
- 6. Remove three Screws [4], remove and the Tray 2 Lift-Up Motor [5].

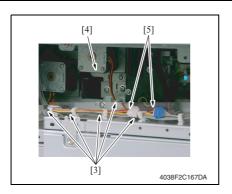
11.3.37 Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor (M1-PC)



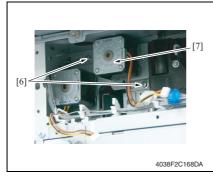
- 1. Pull out the Tray 2.
- 2. Remove the Tray 2 Rear Right Cover and the Tray 2 Rear Left Cover.

See P.95

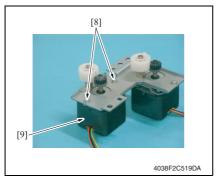
3. Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Reinforcement plate [2].



- Remove the Harness of the Motor Assy [4] from five Wire Saddles [3].
- 5. Disconnect two Connectors [5].

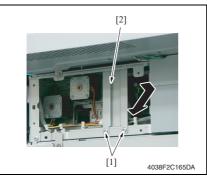


6. Remove two Screws [6], and remove the Motor Assy [7].



7. Remove two Screws [8], and remove the Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor [9].

11.3.38 Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor (M2-PC)



- [4] [5] 4038F2C167DA
- [6] [7] 4038F2C168DA

- 1. Pull out the Tray 2.
- 2. Remove the Tray 2 Rear Right Cover and the Tray 2 Rear Left Cover.

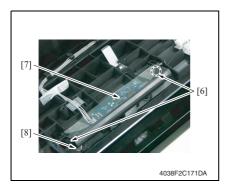
See P.95

3. Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Reinforcement plate [2].

- 4. Remove the Harness of the Motor Assy [4] from five Wire Saddles [3].
- 5. Disconnect two Connectors [5].

6. Remove two Screws [6], and remove the Motor Assy [7].

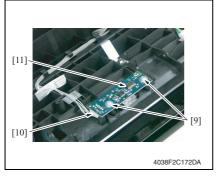




6. Remove the Claws [6] of both sides, and remove the Sensor cover [7].

NOTE

• Use care not to miss the spring [8].



7. Remove two Screws [9] and Connector [10], and remove the IDC/Registration Sensor/1 [11].



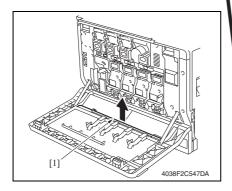
 Repeat the step 6 and 7, and remove the IDC/Registration Sensor/2 (rear side) [12].

11.4 Cleaning procedure

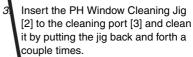
NOTE

• The alcohol described in the cleaning procedure represents the isopropyl alcohol.

11.4.1 PH Window

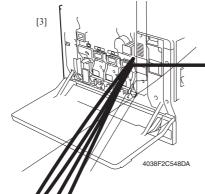


- 1. Open the Front Door.
- Remove the PH Window Cleaning Jig [1].



NOLE

Cean every PH Window of CMYK.



11.4.2 Image Transfer Belt Unit



Remove the Image Transfer Belt Unit.

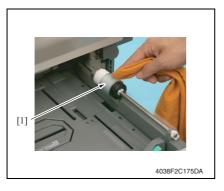
See P.34

Using a dried soft cloth, wipe the Image Transfer Belt [1].

NOTE

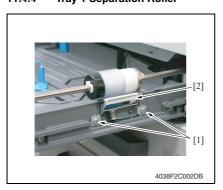
- If it is difficult to clean with dried soft cloth, dampen a soft cloth with a solvent.
- · Do not wipe out with water.
- When solvent is used to dampen a cloth, do not use the ones other than shown below: isopropyl alcohol, ethyl alcohol, PPC Cleaner, Sol mix AP-7.
- After cleaned with the solvent, make printss more than 28-piece of A3 white paper to eliminate the image noise.

11.4.3 Tray 1 Feed Roller

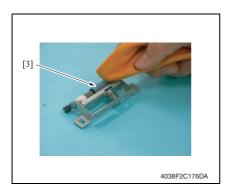


- 1. Slide out the Tray 1.
- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 1 Feed Roller [1] clean of dirt.

11.4.4 Tray 1 Separation Roller

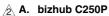


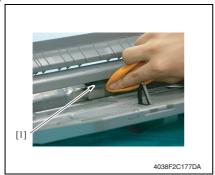
- 1. Slide out the Tray 1.
- Remove two Screws [1], and remove the Tray 1 Paper Separation Roller mounting bracket Assy [2].



 Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 1 Separation Roller [3] clean of dirt.

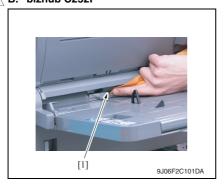
11.4.5 Bypass Tray Feed Roller





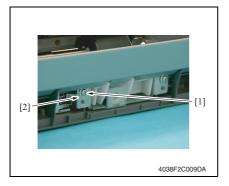
- 1. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit. See P.116
- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Bypass Tray Feed Roller [1].



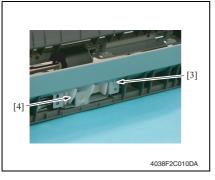


- 1. Remove the multi bypass unit. See P.116
- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the bypass tray feed roller [1].

11.4.6 Bypass Tray Separation Roller



- 1. Remove the Multi Bypass Unit. See P.116
- 2. Remove the Screws [1], and remove the Ground terminal [2].



 Remove the Screw [3], and remove the Bypass Tray Separation Roller Assy [4].

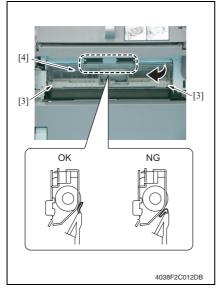


 Using the soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Bypass Paper Separation Roller [5].

11.4.7 Tray 2 Feed Roller/Tray 2 Pick-up Roller



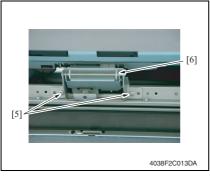
- 1. Slide out the Tray 2.
- 2. Open the Vertical transport door.
- 3. Remove two Claws [1], and remove the Vertical transport door [2].



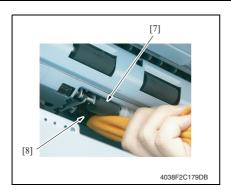
4. Remove two Screws [3], and remove the Jam processing cover [4].

NOTE

 Make sure the position of the Mylar when installing the Jam processing cover.

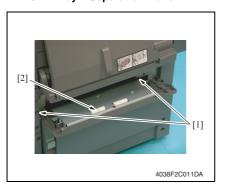


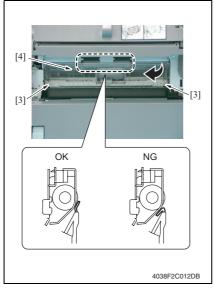
Remove two Screws [5] and the Tray
 Separation Roller installation plate
 Assy [6].

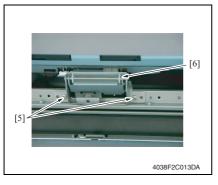


6. Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 2 Feed Roller [7] and the Tray 2 Pick-up Roller [8].

11.4.8 Tray 2 Separation Roller







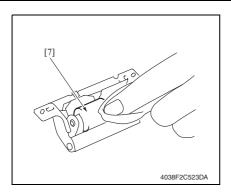
- 1. Slide out the Tray 2.
- 2. Open the Vertical transport door.
- 3. Remove two Claws [1], and remove the Vertical transport door [2].

4. Remove two Screws [3], and remove the Jam processing cover [4].

NOTE

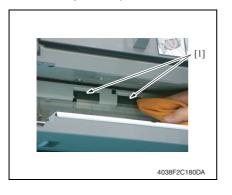
 Make sure the position of the Mylar when installing the Jam processing cover.

Remove two Screws [5] and the Tray
 Separation Roller installation plate
 Assy [6].



 Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 2 Separation Roller [7].

11.4.9 Tray 2 Transport Roller



- 1. Open the Vertical Transport Door.
- Using a soft cloth dampened with alcohol, wipe the Tray 2 Transport Roller [1].

Adjustment/Setting

Field Service Ver. 3.0 Sep. 2006

12. How to use the adjustment section

- "Adjustment/Setting" contains detailed information on the adjustment items and procedures for this machine.
- Throughout this "Adjustment/Setting," the default settings are indicated by " ".

Advance Checks

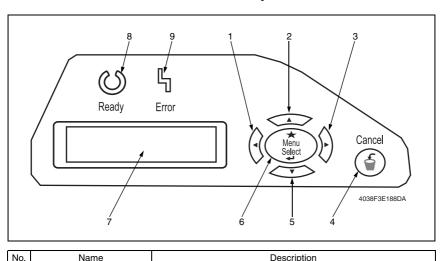
- Before attempting to solve the customer problem, the following advance checks must be made. Check to see if:
- The power supply voltage meets the specifications.
- The power supply is properly grounded.
- The machine shares the power supply with any other machine that draws large current intermittently (e.g., elevator and air conditioner that generate electric noise).
- The installation site is environmentally appropriate: high temperature, high humidity, direct sunlight, ventilation, etc.; levelness of the installation site.
- The density is properly selected.
- · Correct paper is being used for printing.
- The units, parts, and supplies used for printing (developer, PC Drum, etc.) are properly replenished and replaced when they reach the end of their useful service life.
- · Toner is not running out.

A CAUTION

- To unplug the power cord of the machine before starting the service job procedures.
- If it is unavoidably necessary to service the machine with its power turned ON, use utmost care not to be caught in the Scanner Cables or gears of the Exposure Unit.
- Special care should be used when handling the Fusing Unit which can be extremely hot.
- The Developing Unit has a strong magnetic field. Keep watches and measuring instruments away from it.
- · Take care not to damage the PC Drum with a tool or similar device.
- . Do not click IC pins with bare hands.

13. Control Panel

13.1 Identification and Functions of Keys on Control Panel



INO.	Name	Description
[1]	Left Arrow keys (Hereinafter shown as ◀.)	Pressing this key while entering the letters will delete the letters left side of the cursor.
[2]	Up Arrow keys (Hereinafter shown as ▲.)	 Pressing this key while the menu is being displayed will return it to the previous option or the previous setting item. Pressing this key while entering letters will display the previous letter.
[3]	Right Arrow keys (Hereinafter shown as ▶.)	 Pressing this key will display each setting menu. It will move the cursor to the right side for the next input position.
[4]	Cancel key	 Pressing this key will finish changing the settings and return to the "Ready to print" screen. Pressing this key while printing will stop printing or job process- ing.
[5]	Down Arrow keys (Hereinafter shown as ▼.)	 Pressing this key while displaying the menu will display the next option or the next setting item. Pressing this key while entering the letters will display the next letter.
[6]	Menu/Select key	 Pressing this key will display the function menu. The currently selected option will be decided to proceed to the next menu.
[7]	Message window	Displays information about the current status. It turns OFF when the printer controller is OFF or running.
[8]	Ready LED	 It turns ON in green when the printing is available. It blinks in green when the Printer Controller is shifting to RIP, or when it is printing, or when it is transmitting with an outside computer.
[9]	Error LED	It turns ON in red for over thirty seconds when a transmission error occurred between the Printer controller and the Printer. It blinks in red when an error occurred and printing had to stop.

13.2 Utility Mode function tree

- The function tree is shown to comply with the format displayed on the screen.
- To display each item for the Admin. Setting, enter the Password and log in.

NOTE

- · Keys displayed on screens are different depending on the setting.
- *1: It needs to be entered only when using the Account Track.
- *2:The subfunction of a lower hierarchy marked with *3 is selected according to the setting value of *2.

Utility Mode					
Ready to prin	t				
Job	Account Name *1	Password *1	Secure Print		
Operation			User Box		
			Held Jobs		
Paper Tray	Tray 1 Size				
	Tray 1 Type				
	Tray 2 Type				
	Tray 3 Type				
	Tray 4 Type				
	Bypass Size				
	Bypass Type				
User Setting	Print Reports	Meter Count			
		Check Consu	mable		
		Setting Info.			
		Font List			
		Demo Page			
	System Setting	Language Setting			
	Power Save	Low Power			
		Sleep Mode			
	Tray Setting	Auto Tray Select			
		Tray Priority			
		Auto Tray Sel	ect		
		No Match. Pa	per		
	Output	Print Output			
	Setting	Exit Tray Set			
		Offset Setting			
		Bin Setting	Tray 1 → Bin 5		
			Tray 2 → Bin 6		
	Printer	Basic Setting	PDL Setting		
	Setting		Paper Tray		
			2-Sided Print		
			Bind Direction		
	ĺ		Staple		

User Setting	Printer	Basic Setting	Punch			
	Setting		# of Sets			
			Paper Size			
			Org. Direction	n		
			Spool Setting	1		
			Size Change			
			Banner Settir	ng		
			Banner Tray			
		PCL Setting	Font Number	r		
			Symbol Set			
			Line/Page			
			Font Size			
			CR/LF Mappi	ing		
		PS Setting	PS Error Prin	ıt		
Admin.	Network	TCP/IP	TCP/IP Settir	ng		
Setting (Password)	Setting		IP Address	Auto Input	DHCP Setting	
(i assword)			*2	*3	BOOTP Setting	
					ARP/PING Setting	
					AUTO IP Setting	
				Manual Input	IP Address	
				*3	Subnet Mask	
					Default Gateway	
			DNS Server	DNS Auto Obtain		
				Priority DNS		
				Substitute DNS1		
				Substitute DNS2		
			IP Filtering	Permit	Setting Range 1	
				Access	Setting Range 2	
					Setting Range 3	
					Setting Range 4	
					Setting Range 5	
				Deny Access	Setting Range 1	
					Setting Range 2	
					Setting Range 3	
					Setting Range 4	
					Setting Range 5	
			RAW Port	Port1		
			No.	Port2		
				Port3		
				Port4		
				Port5		
		1		Port6		

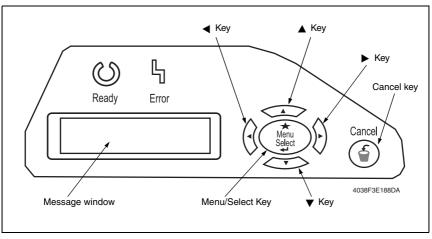
(Password)

Admin.	Network	SNMP	v3 Setting	Read Setting	User Name	
Setting	Setting				Security Level	
Password)					auth-password	
					priv-password	
				Write Setting	User Name	
					Security Level	
					auth-password	
					priv-password	
		TCP Socket	TCP Socket	TCP Socket Set		
			(Binary	Port No.		
			Mode)	SSL Setting		
				Port No. (SSL)	
			TCP Socket	TCP Socket S	Set	
			(ASCII Mode)	Port No.		
		http Server	http Server S	et		
			PSWC Settin	g		
			IPP	IPP Setting		
				IPP Auth.	IPP Auth. Set	
					Auth. System	
					realm	
				Accept IPP Job		
				Support Info.	Print Job	
					Cancel Job	
					Acquire Job	
					Valid Job	
					Job Attributes	
					Printer Attrib.	
				Printer Info.	Printer Name	
					Printer Location	
					Printer Info.	
		Disable Proof				
		Network Spe	ed			
	I/F Setting	Parallel Timeout				
		Network Timeout				
		USB Timeout Parallel I/F				
	Time Adjustment	IEEE 1284/U	SB			
		NTP Setting				
		NTP Server Add.	IP Address			
			DNS Host Na	ıme		

Admin. Setting	System	Daylight Savings Auto Reset					
	Setting						
(Password)		Date/Time	Date	Time	Time Zone	Daylight Savings	
		Set Date (Adjusting)					
	User Box	Delete User Box					
	Oper.	Secure Print	Del. Secui	re Doc.			
			Auto Dele	e			
	List Output Mode List						
	Call Center						
	Security	Admin. Passw	vord				
	Sec Det	Enhanced Se	curity				
		Security	Password Rules				
		Details	Prohibit Func.	Prohibit So	Prohibit Setting		
				No. of Trie	No. of Tries		
			Release Setting				
		HDD Setting	HDD Password				
			HDD Formatting				
			Overwrite All				
			Overwrite Temp.				
			Priority Setting				
			Encryption Key				
	OpenAPI	Access Settin	g				
		Port No.	Port No.				
		Port No. (SSL	Port No. (SSL)				
		SSL	SL				
		Authentica-					
		tion	Login Name				
			Password				
	Data Captur	re					

13.3 Settings in Control panel

13.3.1 Procedure



A. Job Operation

- Make sure that the Default screen (Ready to print) is being displayed, and press the Menu/Select key on the control panel.
- 2. Press ▶ key to open the Account Name screen.
- 3. Select the Account Name using ▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀ keys.
- 4. Press the Menu/Select key to set the Account Name.
- 5. Enter the Password using ▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀ keys.
- 6. Press the Menu/Select key to set the Password.
- 7. Display the item to be changed using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 8. Press the Menu/Select key to set the item to be changed.

B. Paper Tray

- Make sure that the Default screen (Ready to print) is being displayed, and press the Menu/Select key on the control panel.
- 2. Display the Paper Tray using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 3. Press ▶ key to open the Paper Tray screen.
- 4. Display the item to be changed using ▲, ▼, and ◀ keys.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to set the item to be changed.

13.3.2 Cancelling the settings

· Press the Cancel key.

13.3.3 Changing the settings on the Setting menu

- 1. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 2. Press ▶ key to shift to the next digit.
- 3. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 4. Repeat the steps 2 and 3 to enter all the necessary items.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to enter the setting.

13.4 Settings in Job Operation (Account Track)

- Setting items for Job operation can be used only when the optional Hard Disk is mounted.
- When Account Track is being performed, the Account name and the Password need to be entered.
- The Account Track cannot be set on the control panel. Use the PageScope Data Administrator.

A. Secure Print

Purpose/Use	To print the secure document stored in the Machine.
Setting/ Procedure	 Type in the ID for the confidential document. Type in the password for the confidential document.
1 locedule	Type in the password for the confidential document.

B. User Box

Purpose/Use	To print the document stored in the box.
Setting/	Select the name of the box.
Procedure	Type in the password of the box.

C. Held Jobs

Purpose/Use	To print or delete the Held Jobs in the Machine.
_ ~	Enter the "Number of prints" for printing the Held Jobs.Delete the Held Jobs.

13.5 Settings in Paper Tray

· It sets the paper type for each Tray.

A. Tray 1 Size

Purpose/Use	To set the paper size for the 1st Drawer.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "A4" paper.

B. Tray 1 Type

Purpose/Use	To set the paper type for the 1st Drawer.
Setting/	The default setting is "Normal" paper.
Procedure	

C. Tray 2 Type

Purpose/Use	To set the paper type for the 2nd Drawer.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "Normal" paper.

D. Tray 3 Type

Purpose/Use	To set the paper type for the 3rd Drawer.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "Normal" paper.

E. Tray 4 Type

Purpose/Use	To set the paper type for the 4th Drawer.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "Normal" paper.	

F. Bypass Size

Purpose/Use	To set the paper size for the Bypass Tray.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "A4" paper.	

G. Bypass Type

Purpose/Use	To set the paper type for the Bypass Tray.	
Setting/	The default setting is "Normal" paper.	
Procedure		

· Make the setting for banner printing.

NOTE

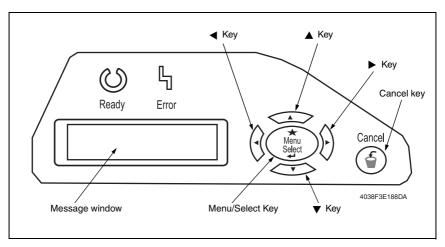
• Normal job cannot be accepted during Banner Printing Mode.

Purpose/Use	To use when printing on the long paper.		
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.		
Procedure	ON	"OFF"	

14. User Setting

14.1 User Setting Function Setting Procedure

14.1.1 Procedure



- Make sure that the Default setting (Ready to print) is displayed, and press the Menu/ Select key on the control panel.
- 2. Display the User setting using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 3. Press ▶ key to open the User setting screen.
- 4. Display the User setting item to be changed using ▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀ keys.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to set the item to be changed.

14.1.2 Cancelling the settings

· Press the Cancel key.

14.1.3 Changing the settings on the Setting menu

- 1. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 2. Press ▶ key to shift to the next digit.
- 3. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 4. Repeat the steps 2 and 3 to enter all the necessary items.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to enter the setting.

14.2 Settings in User setting

14.2.1 Print Reports

Functions	To output the report or Demo Page concerning the print setting.	
Use	To check the setting concerning the printer. The types of report available for output are as follows. Meter Count : Prints the total checklist. Check Consumable : Prints the checklist for consumables. Setting Info. : Prints a list of the machine settings. Font List : Prints the font lists for PCL mode or PS mode. Demo Page : Prints the demo page.	
	Test Page Test Page	
Setting/ Procedure	<selecting report=""> 1. Select Default setting → User setting → Report output. 2. Select the report to be output. 3. Press the Menu/Select key. <simplex duplex=""> • The default setting is 1-Sided.</simplex></selecting>	

14.2.2 System Setting

A. Language Setting

<u>À</u>	Functions	To select the language on the Message Window.		
	Use • To change the language on the control panel to another language.			
	Setting/ Procedure	 The types of languages displayed vary according to the setting made in [Service Mode] → [System 1] → [Marketing Area] of the Jig software. 		

14.2.3 Power Save

A. Low Power

Functions	To set the time until Low Power starts operating after the last key operation has been completed. Low Power: To turn LED and LCD OFF, and lower the power consumption.	
Use	To change the time until Low Power starts.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 10 min. "10 min." (10 to 240)	

B. Sleep Mode

Functions	To set the time until Sleep Mode starts operating after the last key operation has been completed. Turn all lines OFF except 5 V line for Control. "OFF" will only be displayed when "No Sleep" in Service Mode is set.	
Use	To change the time until the Sleep Mode starts.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 15 min. "15 min." (15 to 240) / OFF	

14.2.4 Tray Setting

A. Auto Tray Select

Functions	To set the Tray for the Auto select when the Auto Paper function is set.	
Use	To select the Tray for Auto Paper function.	
Procedure	The default setting is "T1 T2 T3 T4 BP." T1 (Tray1), T2 (Tray2), T3 (Tray3), T4 (Tray4), BP (Bypass Tray)	
	*T3 and T4 will be displayed only when they are mounted as options.	

B. Tray Priority

Functions	To set the priority for switching Trays when the Auto Tray switch function is set.	
Use	To set the priority of the Trays when the Auto Tray switch function is set.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "T1 T2 T3 T4 BP." T1 (Tray1), T2 (Tray2), T3 (Tray3), T4 (Tray4), BP (Bypass Tray)	
	*Outputs the corresponding Tray by Auto select in listed order.	

C. Auto Tray Select

Functions	To set whether to automatically switch to another Tray with same size paper when the Paper Take-up Tray runs out of paper during printing.	
Use	To switch the Paper Take-up Tray automatically.	
Setting/ • The default setting is Prohibit.		
Procedure	Permit	"Prohibit"

D. No Match Paper

Functions Use	To set whether to switch to another Tray automatically when the specified Tray runs out of paper during printing. Stop Printing (Tray Fixed): It stops printing when the specified Tray runs out of paper. Switch Trays (Tray Priority): To switch to another Tray with the specified paper and print when the Tray is out of paper.	
Setting/ Procedure	 The default setting is Stop Printing (Tra "Stop Printing (Tray Fixed)" 	ay Fixed). Switch Trays (Tray Priority)

14.2.5 Output Setting

A. Print Output

Functions	To set the timing for printing for the PC print job or Fax received.
Use	Batch Print: Starts printing when all data are received Page Print: Starts printing every time data for each page are received
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Page Print.

⚠ B. Exit Tray Set

Functions	To set the priority output tray for each application.			
	* This setting is available only	when FS-501 or FS-51	4 is mounted.	
Use	To change the output tray according to the application.			
Setting/	The default setting is Main	Ггау.		
Procedure	"Main Tray"	Sub Tray 1	Sub Tray 2	

2 C. Offset Setting (bizhub C252P only)

• It will be displayed only when the optional finisher FS-514 is mounted.

Functions	To set whether to offset each job when paper is printed using the finisher FS-514.	
Use	Some paper type may fail to be discharged or get deteriorated loading when large volume copies are printed using the finisher FS-514. This function is used to print large volume copies when FS-514 is mounted. (When this function is set to "OFF", the paper is discharged without offsetting the paper to the center of the tray.)	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON.	
roccaure	"ON" OFF	

• It will be displayed only when the optional mailbin kit MT-501 is mounted.

Functions	Assign the first exit tray (tray 1) of the finisher to the mailbin 5, and the second exit tray (tray 2) to the mailbin 6. The second exit tray (tray 2) can be assigned when the optional exit tray OT-601 is mounted.	
Use	Use when assigning the first and the second ex	xit tray of the finisher to the mailbins.
Setting/ Procedure	<tray 1="" 5="" bin="" →=""> The default setting is Enable. "Enable" Disable</tray>	
	<tray 2="" 6="" bin="" →=""> • Display that "Tray 1 → Bin 5" is set "Enable". • The default setting is Disable.</tray>	
	Enable	"Disable"

14.2.6 Printer Setting

A. Basic Setting

(1) PDL Setting

Functions	To set the PDL (Page Description Language) for PC printing.			
Use	To fix the PDL as necessary. It usually switches automatically.			
Setting/ • The default setting is Auto.				
Procedure	"Auto"	PCL	PS	

(2) Paper Tray

Functions	To set the Paper Take-up Tray when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
Use	To use when Paper Take-up Tray cannot be specified by the printer driver when printing from Windows DOS, etc.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Auto.

(3) 2-Sided Print

Functions	To set whether to carry out duplex print during PC printing when not specified by the printer driver.	
Use	To use when 2-sided printing cannot be specified by the printer driver while printing by Windows DOS, etc.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF.	
Tiocedule	ON	"OFF"

1 (4) Bind Direction

Functions	To set the binding direction during duplex printing when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.	
Use	To use when binding direction cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing by Windows DOS, etc.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Left Bind.	
Flocedule	Top Bind "Left Bind"	

(5) Staple

Functions	To set whether to staple or not when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.	
Use	To use hen staple is not specified by the printer driver during printing by the Windows DOS, etc.	
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.	
Procedure	1 Position 2 Positions "OFF"	

(6) Punch

Functions	To select whether to make punch-holes or not when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.	
Use	To use when the printer driver cannot specify punching during printing from Windows DOS, etc.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF.	
li loccadie	ON	"OFF"

(7) # of Sets

Functions	To set the number to be printed when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.	
Use	To use when the number cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 1. "1" (1 to 999)	

(8) Paper Size

Functions	To set the paper size when not specified by the printer diver during printing.
Use	 To use when the paper size cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is A4.

(9) Org. Direction

Functions	To set the default setting for the direction of the original during PC printing.	
Use		
	The default setting is Portrait.	
Procedure	"Portrait" Lands	cape

(10) Spool Setting

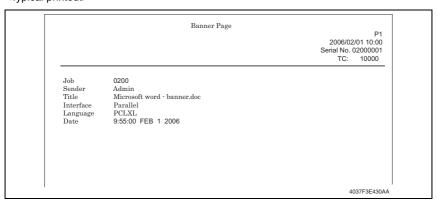
Functions Use	To set whether to store the print data to process of the current job.	HDD when receiving the next job during Rip
Setting/	The default setting is ON.	
Procedure	"ON"	OFF

(11) Size Change

Functions	To set whether to switch between a paper in reading.	A4 and Letter size paper, and A3 and Ledger size
Use	To output A4 size document to Let NOTE	A4 size, and Ledger size document to A3 size. ter size, and A3 size document to Ledger size. lage will be printed in the same magnification. when there is image deficiency.
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.	
Procedure	ON	"OFF"

1 (12) Banner Setting

Banner Page: Page that contains the sender and subject of a print job
 Typical printout>



Functions	To set whether to enable or disable banner printing.		
Use	When banner printing is to be performed.		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF.		
Procedure	ON	"OFF"	

13) Banner Tray

Functions	To set the paper source to be used for banner printing.					
Use	When changing the paper source for banner printing.					
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Auto.					
	Tray 1 *Tray 3 and Tra	Tray2 ay 4 will be dis	Tray3 splayed only w	Tray4 then they are	Bypass mounted as op	"Auto" tions.

B. PCL Setting

1 (1) Font Number

Functions	To set the font when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.	
Use	To use when the printer driver cannot specify the font.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 001.	
	"001" (000 to 999)	

Font List

FOIIL	LIST				
000	Courier	027	Albertus Medium	054	ITC Bookman Demi
001	CG Times	028	Albertus Extra Bold	055	ITC Bookman Light Italic
002	CG Times Bold	029	Arial	056	ITC Bookman Demi Italic
003	CG Times Italic	030	Arial Bold	057	New Century Schoolbook Roman
004	CG Times Bold Italic	031	Arial Italic	058	New Century Schoolbook Bold
005	CG Omega	032	Arial Bold Italic	059	New Century Schoolbook Italic
006	CG Omega Bold	033	Times New Roman	060	New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic
007	CG Omega Italic	034	Times New Roman Bold	061	Times Roman
800	CG Omega Bold Italic	035	Times New Roman Italic	062	Times Bold
009	Coronet	036	Times New Roman Bold Italic	063	Times Italic
010	Clarendon Condensed	037	Helvetica	064	Times Bold Italic
011	Univers Medium	038	Helvetica Bold	065	ITC Zapf Chancery
012	Univers Bold	039	Helvetica Oblique	066	Symbol
013	Univers Medium Italic	040	Helvetica BoldOblique	067	SymbolPS
014	Univers Bold Italic	041	Helvetica Narrow	068	Wingdings
015	Univers Condensed Medium	042	Helvetica Narrow Bold	069	ITC Zapf Dingbats
016	Univers Condensed Bold	043	Helvetica Narrow Oblique	070	Courier Bold
017	Univers Condensed Medium Italic	044	Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique	071	Courier Italic
018	Univers Condensed Bold Italic	045	Palatino Roman	072	Courier Bold Italic
019	Antique Olive	046	Palatino Bold	073	Letter Gothic
020	Antique Olive Bold	047	Palatino Italic	074	Letter Gothic Bold
021	Antique Olive Italic	048	Palatino Bold Italic	075	Letter Gothic Italic
022	Garamond Antiqua	049	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book	076	CourierPS
023	Garamond Halbfett	050	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	077	CourierPS Bold
024	Garamond Kursiv	051	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique	078	CourierPS Oblique
025	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	052	ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique	079	CourierPS Bold Oblique
026	Marigold	053	ITC Bookman Light	080	Line Printer

(2) Symbol Set

Functions	To set the Font Symbol Set when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.
Use	To use when the Font Symbol Set cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Desktop.

(3) Line/Page

Functions	To set the number of lines per page for printing the text data.	
Use	To change the number of lines per page for printing the text data.	
Setting/	The default setting is 60 or 64 lines.	
Procedure	"60 or 64 lines" (5 to 128)	

(4) Font Size

Functions	To set the font size when not specified by the printer driver during PC printing.		
Use	 To set the font size when it cannot be specified by the printer driver during printing from Windows DOS, etc. 		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Scalable Font : 12.00 points Bitmap Font : 10.00 pitch		

(5) CR/LF Mapping

Functions	To set the mode for replacing data when printing the text data.		
Use	To change the mode for replacing data when printing the text data. Mode 1 : Replacing CR with CR-LF Mode 2 : Replacing LF with CR-LF Mode 3 : Replacing with CR-LF OFF : Does not replace		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF.		
Trocedure	Mode 1 Mode 2 Mode 3 "OFF"		

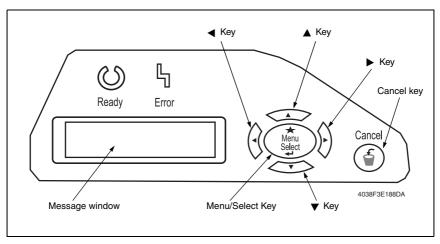
C. PS Setting

(1) PS Error Print

Functions	To set whether to print or not the error information when an error occurred during PS rasterizing.	
Use	To print the information concerning the PostScript error.	
Setting/	The default setting is Disable.	
Procedure	Enable	"Disable"

14.3 Settings in Admin. Setting

14.3.1 Procedure



- Make sure that the Default setting (Ready to print) is displayed, and press the Menu/ Select key on the control panel.
- 2. Display the Admin. Setting using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 3. Press ▶ key to open the Password screen.
- Enter the Password using the ▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀ keys.
- Enter the encrypted number (up to eight digits) which is set on the Service mode. (Default value: 12345678)
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to set the password.
- 6. Display the item to be changed using ▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀ keys.
- 7. Press the Menu/Select key to set the item to be changed.

14.3.2 Canceling the settings

· Press the Cancel key.

14.3.3 Changing the settings on Admin. Setting

- 1. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- Press ► key to shift to the next digit.
- 3. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 4. Repeat the steps 2 and 3 to enter all the necessary items.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to enter the setting.

14.3.4 Network

A. TCP/IP

(1) TCP/IP Setting

Functions	To set whether to enable or disable TCP/IP setting.		
Use	To disable TCP/IP setting.		
Setting/	The default setting is ON.		
Procedure	"ON" OFF		
	NOTE When the setting is changed, turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.		

1 (2) IP Address

Functions	 To set whether to enter the IP address directly or to obtain it automatically. 					
Use	To change the method for setting the IP address.					
Setting/	The default setting	is Auto Input				
Procedure	M	anual Input	"Auto Input"			
	When it is set to [A	Auto Input], se	ect the method to obtain it automatically	/.		
	DHCP Setting	ON	OFF			
	BOOTP Setting	ON	OFF			
	ARP/PING Setting	ON	OFF			
	AUTO IP Setting	ON	OFF			
	When it is set to [Manual Input], enter the setting values manually.					
	IP Address	[0 to 2	55] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]			
	Subnet Mask	[0 to 2	[55] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]			
			[55] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255]			
	neously.	0	IP Setting] cannot be set to "OFF" si			



(3) DNS Server

Functions	To set the DNS Server.			
Use	When changing the DNS server setting method. DNS Auto Obtain: To disable the Auto Obtaining of the DNS Server Address. Priority DNS : To enter Priority DNS Server. Substitute DNS : To enter the Substitute DNS 1 and Substitute DNS 2.			
Setting/ Procedure	<dns auto="" obtain=""> The default setting is Enable. "Enable" Disable </dns>			
	NOTE • "Enable" cannot be set when [IP Address] is set to "Auto Input".			
	<priority 1,="" 2="" dns="" dns,="" substitute=""> IP address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] </priority>			

(4) IP Filtering

Functions	To set the IP Filtering.	
Use	To set whether to receive IP address within the specified range of the value.	
Setting/ Procedure	<permit access=""> 1. Select "Permit Access." 2. Select either "Enable" or "Disable." 3. Select "Setting Range: 1 to 5 (Y)." 4. Set the IP address for "Set Y_Lower." 5. Set the IP address for "Set Y_Upper." <deny access=""> 1. Select "Deny Access." 2. Select either "Enable" or "Disable." 3. Select "Setting Range: 1 to 5 (Y)." 4. Set the IP address for "Set Y_Lower." 5. Set the IP address for "Set Y_Upper."</deny></permit>	

14. User Setting

(5) RAW Port No.

Functions	To set the RAW port No.		
Use	To set the RAW port number for the printer.		
Setting/ Procedure	1. Select the necessary port number 1 to 6. 2. Select to ON or OFF to use. 3. Enter the RAW port number (1 to 65535) to be used by the selected port. 4. Press the Menu/Select key to enter the setting.		

(6) Host Name

Functions • To set the Host name.		
	Use	To enter the Host name.
À	Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Host name. (up to 63 characters)

(7) DNS Domain Set

Functions	To set the DNS Domain name.			
Use	To change the DNS Domain name. DNS Auto Obtain: To disable the Auto Obtaining for the DNS Domain name. Default Name: To enter the Default Name. Search Name: To enter the Search Name.			
Setting/ Procedure	<dns auto="" obtain=""> • The default setting is Enable.</dns>			
	"Enable" Disable			
	NOTE • "Enable" cannot be set when [IP Address] is set to "Auto Input".			
	<default name=""> • Enter the Default name. (up to 255 characters)</default>			
	<search name=""> 1. Search Name: Select any number from 1 to 3. 2. Enter the Default Name. (up to 255 characters)</search>			

(8) DynamicDNS Set

Functions	To set whether or not to enable the Auto Obtaining for the DynamicDNS Set.		
Use	To set the Dynamic DNS.		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Disable.		
Flocedule	Enable	"Disable"	

B. NetWare

(1) IPX Setting

	Functions • To set the NetWare (IXP).					
	Use	To change the NetWare (IPX) setting. IPX Setting: To use NetWare (IPX) setting. Ethernet Frame: To specify the Frame type for transmission.				
_	Setting/ <ipx setting=""></ipx>					
1	Procedure	The default setting is ON.				
		"ON"	ernet Frame>			
		<ethernet frame=""> • The default setting is A</ethernet>				
		"Auto" Ethernet 2		IEEE802.2 IEEE802.2_SNAP	IEEE802.3	

(2) Print Setting 1. Print Mode

Functions	To set the Netware print mode.			
Use	To change the Netware print mode.			
Setting/	The default setting is PSe	rver.		
Procedure	OFF	"PServer"	N/R Printer	

2. PServer

Functions	To set the Print server.			
Use	When changing the print server setting			
	PServer Name: To enter the PServer name.			
	PServer Password: To enter the PServer password.			
	Polling Interval: To set the interval to search the print queue.			
	NDS/Bindery Set: To enable the Bindery service.			
	File Server Name: To set the Full server name for the print server to logon.			
	NDS Context Name: To set the NDS Context name.			
	NDS Tree Name: To set the NDS Tree name.			
Setting/ Procedure	<pserver name=""> Enter the PServer Name. (up to 63 characters)</pserver>			
	<pserver password=""> • Enter the PServer Password. (up to 63 characters)</pserver>			
	<polling interval=""> • Enter the Polling interval between 1 and 65535.</polling>			
	<nds bindery="" set=""> • The default setting is NDS.</nds>			
	"NDS" NDS & Bindery			
	<file name="" server=""> • Enter the File Server Name. (up to 47 characters)</file>			
	<nds context="" name=""> • Enter the NDS Context Name. (up to 191 characters)</nds>			
	<nds name="" tree=""> • Enter the NDS Tree Name. (up to 63 characters)</nds>			

3. N/R Printer

	Functions	To set the N/R Printer.		
	Use	Printer Name: Printer Number:	To enter the name of the N/R p To enter the number of the N/R	
	Setting/	Setting/ <printer name=""></printer>		
Procedure • Enter the Printer Name (up to 63 charact			er Name (up to 63 characters).	
		<printer number=""> The default sett</printer>		
			"Auto"	0 to 254

C. AppleTalk

(1) AppleTalk Set

Functions	To set whether to enable or disable the	AppleTalk setting.
Use	To use AppleTalk setting.	
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.	
Procedure	ON	"OFF"

(2) Printer Name

Functions	To set the Printer name displayed on the AppleTalk network.
Use	To set the Printer name displayed on the AppleTalk network.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Printer name. (up to 31 characters)

(3) Zone Name

Functions	To set the Zone name connected with AppleTalk network.
Use	To set the Zone name connected with AppleTalk network.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Zone name. (up to 31 characters)

D. Bonjour

• "Bonjour" is an alternative Network technology to AppleTalk. It automatically detects and identifies the network only by physically connecting to the network.

The name "Rendezvous" has been changed for Mac OS X 10.4 and later version.

(1) Bonjour Setting

Functions	To set whether or not to use the Bonjou	r setting.
Use	To use when operating under the Bonjo	ur service environment.
	The default setting is ON.	
Procedure	"ON"	OFF

(2) Bonjour Name

Functions	To set the Bonjour name.
Use	To set the name for identifying over the Bonjour network.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Bonjour name (up to 63 characters).

E. SMB (Server Message Block)

(1) WINS (Windows Internet Name Service)

1. WINS Setting

Functions	To set whether or not to enable the WINS setting.
Use	 To use the WINS (Windows Internet Name Service) setting is necessary. By using the WINS, the traffic by broadcast can be reduced, and the communication becomes available with the network where broadcast does not reach.
Setting/	The default setting is ON.
Procedure	"ON" OFF

2. DNS Auto Obtain

Functions	To set whether or not to enable the Auto Obtaining of the WINS Server Address.
Use	 To acquire the WINS Server Address automatically. To obtain the WINS Server Address from DHCP server. If there are more than on address settings, up to two can be acquired.
Setting/	The default setting is Enable.
Procedure	"Enable" Disable
	NOTE • "Enable" cannot be set when [IP Address] is set to "Auto Input".

3. WINS Server IP 1, 2

Functions	To set the WINS Server Address.
Use	 To use when manually entering the WINS Server Address. The Primary Address and the Secondary Address can be set. (The primary Address has the priority during operation.)
Setting/ Procedure	P address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] Select "WINS Server IP 1" or "WINS Server IP 2." Enter the WINS Server Address.

(2) Printer

1. Printer Setting

Functions	To set whether to use SMB port or not in Printer mode.
Use	Not to use SMB port in Printer mode.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON.
Procedure	"ON" OFF

2. NetBIOS Name

Functions	To set NetBIOS name.
Use	To set NetBIOS name.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the NetBIOS name. (up to 15 characters)

3. Print Service

Functions	To set the Print service name.
Use	To set the Print service name.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Print Service name. (up to 13 characters)

4. Workgroup

Functions	To set the Workgroup.
Use	To set the Workgroup.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Workgroup. (up to 15 characters)

F. SNMP

(1) SNMP Setting

Functions	To set whether to use SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) or not. To set the SNMP Version to be used.		
Use	Not to use SNMP. To readout Management Information Base and to enter Community name for writing.		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON. "ON" SNMP v1/v2c (IP), SNMP v3 (IP), a The default setting is ON.	"ON" OFF P v1/v2c (IP), SNMP v3 (IP), and SNMP v1 (IPX)>	
	"ON"	OFF	

(2) UDP Port Number

Functions/ Use	To set the UDP standby Port Number which is used for SNMP (IP).
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Port Number between 1 and 65535.

(3) v1/v2c Setting

Functions	To conduct setting when using SNMP v1/v2c.	
Use	To use when changing Write setting. To use when entering the Community Name for reading the Management Information (MIB) and writing to it.	
Setting/ Procedure	<read community=""> Enter the Read Community Name. (up to 15 characters) <write setting=""> The default setting is Enable. </write></read>	
	"Enable" Disable	
	NOTE • [Enable] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON". [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]	
	<write community=""> • Enter the Write Community Name. (up to 15 characters)</write>	

(4) v3 Setting

1. Context Name

Functions/ Use	To set the Context Name which is used for SNMP v3.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Context Name. (up to 63 characters)

2. Discovery Set

Functions	To set the Disco	To set the Discovery Authority User which is used for SNMP v3.	
Use	Discovery User: User Name:	To set whether or not to enable the Discovery Authority User To set the Discovery Authority User name	
Setting/ Procedure	<discovery user=""> The default set</discovery>	tting is Enable.	
	<user name=""> • Enter the Disco</user>	"Enable" very User Name. (up	Disable to 32 characters)
	NOTE The User name same with the Read User Name or the Write User name cannot be set.		

3. Read Setting

Functions	To set the security level of the read-only User used for SNMP v3.		
Use	User Name: To set the user name Security Level: To set the security level of the user Auth. OFF: No authentication is made upon user access. Auth.: Authentication is made only of the authentication password upon user access. Auth.&Priv.: Authentication is made of the authentication password and privacy password upon user access. Auth-Password: To set the authentication password Priv-Password: To set the privacy password		
Setting/ Procedure	 <user name=""></user> Enter the Read User Name. (up to 32 characters) NOTE The User Name same with the Discovery User Name cannot be used. <security level=""></security> The default setting is Auth. & Priv. 		
	Auth. OFF Auth. "Auth. & Priv." <auth-password> • Enter the Auth-Password. (up to 8 to 32 characters) <pre> <pre< th=""></pre<></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></auth-password>		

4. Write Setting

Functions	To set the name of the Reading/Writing Authority User which is used for SNMP v3.	
Use	User Name: To set the user name	
	Security Level: To set the security level of the user	
	Auth. OFF: No authentication is made upon user access.	
	Auth.: Authentication is made only of the authentication password	
	upon user access.	
	Auth.&Priv.: Authentication is made of the authentication password and privacy password upon user access.	
	Auth-Password: To set the authentication password	
	Priv-Password: To set the privacy password	
Setting/	Iser Name>	
Procedure	Enter the Read User Name. (up to 32 characters)	
	NOTE The User Name same with the Discovery User Name cannot be used.	
	<security level=""> • The default setting is Auth. & Priv.</security>	
	Auth. OFF Auth. "Auth. & Priv."	
7	NOTE • [Auth. OFF] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON". [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]	
	<auth-password> • Enter the Auth-Password. (up to 8 to 32 characters)</auth-password>	
	<pre><priv-password> • Enter the Priv-Password. (up to 8 to 32 characters)</priv-password></pre>	

G. TCP Socket

(1) TCP Socket (Binary Mode)

1. TCP Socket Set

Functions	To set whether or not to use the TCP Socket setting of Binary Mode.	
Use	To use when using the application, etc.	for TCP Socket transmission by Binary Mode.
Setting/ Procedure • The default setting is ON. "ON" OFF		
		OFF

2. Port No.

Functions	To set the port number used for TCP Socket transmission not using the SSL.
Use	 To use when entering the port number used for TCP Socket transmission not using the SSL.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Port Number between 1 and 65535.

3. SSL Setting

	Functions	 To set whether or not to use SSL for TCP Socket tr 	ansmission.	
	Use	To use when SSL is not to be used for TCP Socket	transmission.	
	Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON.		
	riocedule	"ON"	OFF	
<u>^2</u>		NOTE • [OFF] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON". [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]		

4. Port No. (SSL)

Functions	To set the port number used for TCP Socket communications using the SSL.
Use	 To use when entering the port number used for TCP Socket communications using the SSL.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Port Number between 1 and 65535.

(2) TCP Socket (ASCII Mode) 1. TCP Socket Set

Functions	To set whether or not to set the TCP Socket for ASCII Mode.	
Use	To use when using the application, etc. for TCP Socket transmission by ASCII Mode.	
Setting/ • The default setting is ON.		
Procedure	"ON"	OFF

2. Port No. (ASCII Mode)

Functions	To set the Port Number which is used for TCP Socket transmission by ASCII Mode.
Use	To use when entering the Port Number for TCP Socket transmission by ASCII Mode.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Port Number between 1 and 65535.

H. http Server

(1) http Server Set

Functions	To set whether or not to use the http Server setting.		
Use	Not to use the http Server setting.		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON.		
	"ON"	OFF	

(2) PSWC Setting

Functions	To set whether to use the PageScope Web Connection.	
Use	Not to use the PageScope Web Connection.	
Setting/	The default setting is ON.	
Procedure	"ON"	OFF
	NOTE • "OFF" cannot be set when [http	Server Set] is set to "OFF".

(3) IPP

1. IPP Setting

Functions	To set whether to enable or disable IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) setting.	
Use	Not to use the IPP setting.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON.	
	"ON" OFF	
	NOTE • "OFF" cannot be set when [http Server Set] is set to "OFF".	

2. IPP Auth.

Functions	To set the IPP Authentication.
Use	IPP Auth. Set: To set whether or not to use the IPP Authentication setting. Auth. System: To change the Authentication system for IPP Authentication. User Name: To set the user name when basic or digest is selected for the authentication system Password: To set the password when basic or digest is selected for the authentication system realm: To set the realm for identifying the Authentication setting.
Setting/ Procedure	<ipp auth.="" set=""> • The default setting is ON. "ON" OFF</ipp>
	<auth. system=""> • The default setting is req-user-name.</auth.>
	"req-user-name" basic digest
	<user name=""> • Enter the User Name. (up to 20 characters)</user>
	<password> • Enter the Password. (up to 20 characters)</password>
	<realm> • Enter the realm. (up to 127 characters)</realm>

3. Accept IPP Job

Functions	To set whether or not to use the Accept IPP Job.	
Use	To use the Accept IPP Job.	
Setting/	The default setting is ON.	
Procedure	"ON" OFF	

4. Support Info.

Functions	To set the Support Information.
Use	For the response setting to see if IPP transmission supports each function.
Setting/ Procedure	<print job=""> • Set ON or OFF <cancel job=""> • Set ON or OFF</cancel></print>
	<acquire job=""> • Set ON or OFF</acquire>
	<valid job=""> • Set ON or OFF</valid>
	<job attributes=""> • Set ON or OFF</job>
	<printer attrib.=""> • Set ON or OFF</printer>

5. Printer Info.

Functions	To set the Printer information.	
Use	Printer Name: To set the Printer Name. Printer Location: To set the Printer Location. Printer Info.: To set the Printer Info.	
Setting/ Procedure	<pre><printer name=""> • Enter the Printer Name. (up to 127 characters) <printer location=""> • Enter the Printer Location. (up to 127 characters)</printer></printer></pre>	
	<printer info.=""> • Enter the Printer Info. (up to 127 characters)</printer>	

I. Disable Proof

Functions	To set how to process the Job when SSL Certificate becomes invalid.	
Use		
Setting/	The default setting is Permit.	
Procedure	"Permit"	Prohibit

J. Network Speed

Functions	To set the Network speed.	
Use	To set the specific network speed.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Auto. "Auto" 10Mbps Full Duplex 10Mbps Half Duplex 100Mbps Full Duplex 100Mbps Half Duplex NOTE When Network speed setting is changed, turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.	

14.3.5 I/F Setting

A. Parallel Timeout

Functions	To set the timeout period for Parallel transmission.
Use	To make the timeout period longer according to the network condition.
Setting/	The default settings are 60 sec.
Procedure	"60 sec" (10 to 1000)

B. Network Timeout

Functions	To set the timeout period for Network transmission.	
Use	To make the timeout period longer according to the network condition.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default settings are 60 sec.	
Frocedure	"60 sec" (10 to 1000)	

C. USB Timeout

Functions	To set the timeout period for USB transmission.	
Use	To make the timeout period longer according to the network condition.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default settings are 60 sec.	
Frocedure	"60 sec" (10 to 1000)	

D. Parallel I/F

Functions	To set the two-way communication method for Parallel interface.	
Use	To change the two-way communication method for Parallel interface.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ECP.	
Procedure	Compatible Nibble "ECP"	

E. IEEE 1284/USB

Functions	To set the interface to be used when mounting the local I/F kit.	
Use	To be used when using the Parallel interface	
Setting/	The default setting is USB.	
Procedure	IEEE1284	"USB"

14.3.6 Time Adjustment

A. NTP Setting

Functions	To set whether or not to use the NTP setting.	
Use	To synchronize the time between the server and the client.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF.	
Flocedule	ON	"OFF"

B. NTP Server Add.

Functions	To set the NTP server address.
Use	To enter the NTP server address. NTP server address is to be set by the IP address or the Host name.
Setting/ Procedure	<ip address=""> • Enter the IP address. IP Address Version 4 format [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] . [0 to 255] <dns host="" name=""> • Enter the host name. (up to 255 characters)</dns></ip>

C. Port No.

Functions	To set the Port No. for transmitting with NTP server.
Use	To enter the Port No. for transmitting with NTP server.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Port number between 1 and 65535.

<u>2</u> 14.3.7 **System Setting**

A. Daylight Savings

Functions	 To set whether to set the daylight saving time. To set the time difference in setting the daylight saving time. 	
Use	To set the daylight saving time.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF. ON	"OFF"
	When setting to ON, set the time difference to move up. "60 min." (1 to 150)	

B. Auto Reset

Functions	To set the period of time until Auto Reset starts.	
Use	To change the period of time until Auto Reset starts functioning.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 1 min.	
Tocedate	"1 min." (1 to 9, OFF)	

C. Date/Time

Functions	To set the date/time and the time zone to start the clock.
Use	 To change settings concerning the date/time. This setting should be carried out for set up.
	 For time zone, set the time difference with the world standard time. Setting range for the time zone: -12:00 to +12:00 (by 30 minutes)

D. Set Date (Adjusting)

Functions	 Synchronize the time of the Machine and that of the Server. The time is displayed only when the time correction setting (SNTP setting) of the Administrator setting is "ON."
Use	To synchronize the time of the Machine and that of the Server.
Setting/ Procedure	Pressing the Menu/Select key will correct the time.

14.3.8 User Box Oper.

A. Delete User Box

Function/Use	To delete the unnecessary box without data.
Setting/	1. Enter the Box number (up to nine numerical characters) to be deleted.
Procedure	2. Press the Menu/Setting key to display the OK to Delete? screen.
	3. Press the Menu/Setting key to delete the unnecessary box.

B. Secure Print

(1) Delete Secure Doc.

Function/Use	To delete the whole classified documents in the box.
_	Press the Menu/Setting key to display the OK to Delete? screen. Press the Menu/Setting key to delete the documents.

1 (2) Auto Delete

Function/Use	To set whether or not to delete the confidential documents saved in the box after the lapse of a predetermined period of time, and to set that period of time.				
Setting/ Procedure • The default setting is 1 day.					
riocedure	12 Hours 7 days	"1 day" 30 days	2 days Save	3 days	

14.3.9 List Output Mode List

	Function/Use	The set value list can be printed.	
1	ū	Press the Menu/Setting key to display the OK to Print? screen. Press the Menu/Setting key to print.	
		<simplex duplex=""> • The default setting is 1-Sided.</simplex>	

14.3.10 Call Center

Function/Use	 To call the CS Remote Care Center from the Administrator, When the CS Remote Care setup is complete. 	
	For details, see "CS Remote Care." See P.211	

14.3.11 Security Setting

A. Admin. Password

Functions	To set/change the Administrator Password.	
Use	To change the Administrator Password.	
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Administration1. Password2. New Password3. Retype Password	ator password. : Enter the current Administrator password : Enter the new Administrator password to be used : Reenter the new Administrator password



B. Enhanced Security

Use	To set whether or not to enhance security.	
Setting/ Procedure	To use when enhancing the security function at user's option. The following settings are necessary for setting the Security Enhancement "ON". Administrator Password: Change it with the one which meets Password Rules. HDD Lock Password or Encryption word Set the HDD Lock Password or Encryption word with 20 characters. (Encryption word can be set only when SC-503 is mounted.) SSL Certificate: Register Self-Certificate for SSL communication. Image Controller Setting: Set to [Controller 0]. CE (Service) Password: Change it with the one which meets Password Rules. CE Authentication: Set to [ON]. CS Remote Care: Conduct RAM Clear, and cancel the setting.	
Use	The default setting is OFF.	
	ON "OFF"	

NOTE

• Setting the Enhanced Security "ON" will change the setting values for the following functions.

Name of the Function	Default Setting	When Enhanced Security is ON
Password Rules	Disable	Enable (Cannot be changed)
Prohibit Func.	Mode 1	Mode 2 (Cannot be changed) Set to three times *Can change times (from once to three times)
No. of Tries	3	3
Overwrite Temp.	OFF	Mode 1 (Can be changed to Mode 2)
TCP Socket SSL	ON	ON (Cannot be changed)
OpenAPI SSL	ON	ON (Cannot be changed)
SNMPv1/v2c Write Setting	Enable	Disable (Cannot be changed)
SNMPv3 Write Security Level	Auth.&Priv.	Auth. ("Auth. OFF" will not be displayed)
Data Capture	Permit	Prohibit (Cannot be changed)
CS Remote Care	-	Stop (Cannot be changed)
Internet ISW	OFF	OFF (Cannot be changed)



© C. Security Details (1) Password Rules

Functions	To set whether to apply the Password rules.	
Use	To apply the password rule to enhance security. Passwords to be covered: Password for CE (Service), Administrator, Box, Classified document, SNMP. Details of the Password Rules: Password except SNMP password shall be 8 digits of one-bite alphanumeric characters. (Case-sensitive) SNMP password shall be 8 to 32 digits of one-bite alphanumeric characters. Password with only the same letter is prohibited. Password same with the one prior to change is prohibited. When the password rule is set to [Enable], the password cannot be changed or registered unless it follows the above conditions.	
Setting/ Procedure	tered unless it follows the above conditions. • The default setting is Disable. Enable "Disable" NOTE • [Disable] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON". [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security] • [Enable] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "OFF". [Service Mode] → [Enhanced Security] → [CE Authentication] of the Jig Software [CE Authentication] of the Jig Software will not be displayed when [Password Rules] is set to "Enable".	

(2) Prohibit Func.

1. Prohibit Setting

Functions	To set the function for prohibiting operation in order to prevent the unauthorized access.		
Use	To use when setting the system to prohibit Authentication failure when conducting Authentication by Password, etc. Authentications which are subjected to this function: CE Authentication, Administrator Authentication, Account Authentication, SNMP Authentication, Confidential Authentication, Box Authentication. Mode 1. When failed to Authenticate Authentication pagestics (entering the		
	Mode 1: When failed to Authenticate, Authentication operation (entering the Password) will be prohibited for a certain period of time. Mode 2: When failed to Authenticate, Authentication operation (entering the Password) will be prohibited for a certain period of time. The number of times failure occurred will be counted, and when the number reaches to the specified time, Authentication will be prohibited and the access will be locked. When the access is locked, cancel the access locks, or turn Main-power OFF/ON to cancel it. For CE Authentication and Administrator Authentication, only turning Main-power OFF/ON will cancel it.		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Mode 1.		
	"Mode 1" Mode 2 NOTE • [Mode 2] will be set when the following setting is set to "ON". It cannot be changed. Only the number of times for trials up to the access lock can be changed. [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]		
	Set the number of times for trials up to the access lock when selecting [Mode 2].		

2. No. of Tries

Functions	To change the number of times for trials up to the access lock.
Use	To use when changing the number of times for trials up to the access lock.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 3. "3"
	 When [Enhanced Security] is set to "OFF": 1 to 5 When [Enhanced Security] is set to "ON": 1 to 3

3. Release Setting

Functions	To cancel the access locks.
Use	To use when the access locks are activated.
Setting/ Procedure	Select the type of authentication which needs to cancel. Account, Secure Print, User Box, SNMP Press the Menu/Select key to cancel the access lock. For CE Authentication and Administrator Authentication, only turning Main-power OFF/ON will cancel it.

D. HDD Setting

(1) HDD Password

Functions	To set the Lock Password for the hard disk.	
Use	To enter the Lock Password for the hard disk.	
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the password (up to 8 on-byte characters) Reenter the password to confirm, turn main power switch OFF and ON again. NOTE Double-byte and identical characters are not acceptable.	
	Password : Enter the current HDD Lock password New Password : Enter the new HDD Lock password to be used Retype Password : Reenter the new HDD Lock password Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.	

(2) HDD Formatting

Functions	To format the hard disk The function proceeds in the order of Physical Format to Logical Format. If the hard disk is yet to be formatted, the trouble code "C-D010" will appear. Ignore this code and continue with the formatting procedure.
Use	When the hard disk is mounted. When the hard disk is to be initialized. (Physical Format to Logical Format)
Adjustment Procedure	Press the Menu/Setting key to display the Format OK? screen. Press the Menu/Setting key to format the hard disk. Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.



- (3) Overwrite All

 Overwrite All overwrites meaningless data to all areas, in which image data is stored, thereby destroying the structure of the image data.
 - Destroying the data structure prevents any data left in the areas from being leaked out even when the HDD is stolen.

Function/Use	To delete the whole data in the hard disk by overwriting.							
Use	 To use when disposing of the Hard Disk. Select the overwriting method from Mode 1 through 8. 							
	Mode 1 : It overwrites 0x00 once.							
	Mode 2 : Overwrites with random numbers → Overwrites with random numbers → Overwrites with 0x00							
	Mode 3 : Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with random numbers → Verifies							
	Mode 4 : Overwrites with random numbers → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff							
	Mode 5 : Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff							
	Mode 6 : Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with random numbers							
	Mode 7 : Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0xaa							
	Mode 8 : Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0x00 → Overwrites with 0xff → Overwrites with 0xaa → Verifies							
Setting/	Select the mode of overwriting method.							
Procedure	2. Press the Menu/Setting key, and destroy.							
	3. Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.							

1 (4) Overwrite Temp.

- The image data sent from the PC is temporarily written to the HDD and memory areas.
- Overwrite Temp overwrites meaningless data to the HDD and memory areas, to which image data has been temporarily written, thereby destroying the image data after the completion of the print cycle.

Function	To set whether or not to use Temporary Data Overwrite. To set overwriting method to use Temporary Data Overwrite function.						
Use	 To use when making Temporary Data Overwrite function valid. To change overwriting method to use Temporary Data Overwrite function. Mode 1: To overwrite 0x00 one time. Mode 2: Overwrite 0x00 → Overwrite 0xff → Overwrite 0x61 → Validation 						
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.						
Procedure	"OFF" Mode 1 Mode 2						
NOTE • [OFF] cannot be selected when the following setting is set to "ON". [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]							



- (5) Priority Setting

 Use of the optional Security Kit (SC-503) prevents important image data from being leaked out, thus achieving security at high level.
 - If security at high level is required, it is recommended that the HDD lock password function be used in combination with the Security Kit.

Function	 To set the 	encryption method when the	Security Kit (SC-503) is mounted					
Use	When the optional Security Kit (SC-503) is mounted, either Encryption or Overwrite can also be selected.							
	Encryption:	tion: Gives priority to encryption of data to be written by overwrite for the enhanced security						
	Overwrite:	Gives priority to data to be written by overwrite, thereby assuring contents of the data						
	NOTE: • If the sett performe		e has been changed, HDD Format must be					
Setting/	The defau	It setting is Encryption.						
Procedure		"Encryption"	Overwrite					

1 (6) Encryption Key

• It can be set only when the optional Security Kit (SC-503) is mounted.

Functions	To set Encryption key necessary to mount the optional Security Kit SC-503.					
Use	To setup Security Kit SC-503. To re-set encrypting word due to exchange of NVRAM board or etc. NOTE This setting is available only when the optional Security Kit SC-503 is mounted.					
	HDD formatting is required after this setting. Therefore it is necessary to retrieve certain data from HDD in advance. The following data will be lost after HDD formatting. * Authentication data : Authentication mode, Account Track setting * Box setting data : Box and text in the box, Setting information of each box * Job history					
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Encryption key. (consisting of up to 20 characters) NOTE Double-byte and identical characters are not acceptable.					
	 2. Press the Menu/Select key. (Go to step 7 for the initial registration.) 3. If the Encryption Key is changed, enter a new encryption word (consisting of up to 20 characters). 4. Press the Menu/Select key. 5. If the Encryption Key is changed, enter the new encryption word (consisting of up to 20 characters) a second time. 6. Press the Menu/Select key. 7. Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after. 8. Select [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] and perform HDD Format. 9. Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after. 					

2

14.3.12 OpenAPI

A. Access Setting

Functions	To allow or restrict the access from other systems with OpenAPI when using Page Scope Data Administrator.					
Use	To restrict access from other systems with OpenAPI.					
Setting/	The default setting is Permit.					
Procedure	"Permit" Prohibit					

B. Port No.

Functions	To set the access port for other systems with OpenAPI when using Page Scope Data Administrator.
Use	To change the access port number for other systems with OpenAPI.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the port number between 1 and 65535.

C. Port No. (SSL)

Functions	To set the access port (SSL) for other systems with OpenAPI when using Page Scope Data Administrator.
Use	To change the access port number (SSL) for other systems with OpenAPI.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the port number (SSL) between 1 and 65535.

D. SSL

Functions	To set whether to encrypt access from other systems by SSL when using Page Scope Data Administrator.					
Use	To encrypt access by SSL from of	To encrypt access by SSL from other systems using OpenAPI.				
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON. "ON"	OFF				
		n the following setting is set to "ON". Setting] → [Enhanced Security]				

E. Authentication

Functions	 To set whether to authenticate access of other systems which uses OpenAPI when using PageScope Data Administrator. 				
Use	To set authentication of the access from other systems using OpenAPI.				
Setting/ Procedure	<auth. setting=""> • The default setting is ON. "ON" OFF <login name=""> 1. Select [Login Name].</login></auth.>				
	2. Enter the Login name (up to 8 characters). <password> • Enter the Password (up to 8 characters).</password>				

14.3.13 Data Capture

Functions	To set whether to permit or restrict capturing the Print Job Data.					
Use	To be used when carrying out [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Data Capture].					
Setting/	The default setting is Permit.					
Procedure	"Permit"	Prohibit				
2	NOTE • [Permit] cannot be selected wh [Admin. Setting] → [Security Se	en the following setting is set to "ON". ettingl → [Enhanced Security]				

15. Adjustment item list

			Replacement Part/Service Job							
Adjı	ustment/Setting	ı Items		No	Replace Paper Take-Up Roller	Replace Paper Separator Roll Assy	Change Paper (1st Drawer) Kind	Install Paper Feed Unit	Replace IU	Replace Image Transfer Belt Unit
	Machine	Printer Area	Print Positioning: Leading Edge	1			0			
	Machine		Print Positioning: Side Edge	2				0		
	State	Memory/	HDD R/W Check	3						
ge	State Confirmation	HDD Adjust	HDD Format	4						
Σ	Committation	Table Number		5						
Service Mode	Firmware Vers	sion		6						
Ser	System 1, 2	Reentry of Se	etting Values	7						
	System 1, 2	Serial Number	er	8						
	Counter	Life	Counter Clear	9	О	О				
	Image Proces	s Adjustment	Gradation Adjust	10					О	О
Re-	entry of Utility s	settings		11						
Re-	Re-entry of Enhanced Security settings									
РΗ	PH Skew Adjustment									
F/W	F/W upgrading									
Ren	Remounting of Parameter Chip (Control Board)									
Ren	Remounting of NVRAM (MFP Control Board)									
Rep	lace Image Tra	nsfer Belt Unit		17						

* This table shows the adjustment items that are required when a part of the machine has been replaced. Priority order, if applicable, during the adjustment procedures is indicated by the corresponding number in the parentheses.

No	© © Replace PH Unit	Replace Mechanical Control Board	Replace MFP Control Board	Replace IDC/Registration Sensor/1, 2	Replace Hard Disk	Execute Memory Clear	Execute Add. Option	Execute F/W update
	(2)							
1 2 3 4 5	(3)							
3					(2) (1)			
4					(1)			
5						(2)		
6 7							0	0
						(4)		
8 9						(3)		
10								
11						(1) (5)		
12 13 14 15						(5)		
13	(1)							
14		(2) (1)	(2)					
15		(1)						
16			(1)					
17				0				

16. TECH, REP, MODE

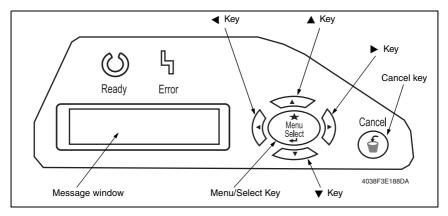
16.1 Calling the Tech. Rep. Mode to Screen

NOTE

oizhub C250P/C252P

· Ensure appropriate security for Tech. Rep. mode function setting procedures.

16.1.1 Procedure



- Make sure that the default screen (Ready to print) is being displayed, and press the Menu/Select key on the control panel.
- Display the Service mode using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 3. Press ▶ key to open the Password screen.
- Enter the Password using ▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀ keys.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to set the Password.

NOTE

- When selecting "CE Authentication" under "Enhanced Security" available from Service Mode, authentication by CE (Service) password is necessary.
 Enter the 8 digits CE (Service) password, and press the Menu/Select key.
 (The initial setting for CE (Service) password is "92729272.")
- When the following setting is set to "ON", CE (Service) password Authentication is necessary.
 - [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]
 - If a wrong CE (Service) password is entered, re-enter the right password. The
 machine will not enter Service Mode unless the CE (Service) password is entered
 correctly. To return to the Basic screen, turn Main Power Switch OFF, and ON
 again.
- When the following setting is set to "Mode 2", operation will be prohibited since it indicates Authentication failure by failing to enter the correct CE (Service) Password within the specified number of times. It needs to be cancelled by turning Main-power OFF/ON.
 - $[Admin. \ Setting] \rightarrow [Security \ Setting] \rightarrow [Security \ Details] \rightarrow [Prohibit \ Func.] \rightarrow [Prohibit \ Setting]$
 - The CE (Service) password entered is displayed as "*."
 - 6. Display the Service mode item to be changed using ▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀ keys.
 - 7. Press the Menu/Select key to set the item to be changed.

16.1.2 **Exiting**

• Press the "Cancel" key.

16.1.3 Changing the Setting Value in Service Mode Functions

- 1. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 2. Press ▶ key to shift to the next digit.
- 3. Enter the target value using ▲, ▼ keys.
- 4. Repeat the steps 2 and 3 to enter all the necessary items.
- 5. Press the Menu/Select key to enter the setting.

16.2 Tech. Rep. Mode function tree

- *1: Available only when Internet ISW is enabled on the Jig software
- *2: Unavailable when Data Capture is prohibited on the utility mode

		·				
Tech. Rep. Mode						
Ready to Print						
Job Operation						
Paper Tray						
User Setting						
Admin. Setting (Pa	ssword)					
Tech. Rep. Mode	Counter Reset					
(Password)	Running Mode					
	Option Board					
	List Output					
	Serial Number					
	Image Controller	Image Controller				
		Peripheral Mode				
	Unit Change	•				
	LCT Paper Size					
	Initialization					
	Foolscap Size					
	No Sleep					
	Security Setting	Admin. Password				
		Service Password				
	HDD Formatting	•				
	Version Upgrade	HDD Ver. Upgrade				
		HD Ver. Downgrade	1			
		Internet ISW *1				
	Data Capture *2	•				
	Data Backup					
	Software SW	Switch No.				
		Bit Assignment				
		HEX Assignment				
	Comm. System	•				
	CS Remote Care	System Selection				
		ID Code				
		Detail Set: Mail	Center/Device ID	Center ID		
				Device ID		
			E-Mail Address	1		
			Data/Time			
			RAM Clear			
	I	I	Log Print			



CS Remote Care	Detail Set: Mail	Software SW	Switch No.
			Bit Assignment
			HEX Assignment
		Response Timeout	
	Detail Set: Modem	Center/Device ID	Center ID
			Device ID
		Center Tel No.	
		Device Tel No.	
		Data/Time	
		Initial Trans.	
		RAM Clear	
		Log Print	
		Software SW	Switch No.
			Bit Assignment
			HEX Assignment
		Reset Command	
	Server Setting	Server for RX	POP3 Server
			POP3 Login Name
			POP3 Password
			POP3 Port Number
		Receive Setting	E-Mail Address
			E-Mail Check
			Connect Timeout
			APOP
		Send Setting	SMTP Server
			SMTP Port Number
			Connect Timeout
			Auth. Setting
		TX/RX Test	-
		Data Initialize	
	CS Remote Care	Detail Set: Modem	Response Timeout Detail Set: Modem Center/Device ID Center Tel No. Device Tel No. Data/Time Initial Trans. RAM Clear Log Print Software SW Reset Command Server Setting Server for RX Receive Setting Send Setting TX/RX Test

16.3 Settings in Tech. Rep. Mode

16.3.1 Counter Reset

Functions	To check the number of hours or times each of the different maintenance parts has been used. To clear the count of each counter.		
Use	When each of the	maintenance parts is replaced.	
Setting/ Procedure	To clear the count If a counter is clear operation. It is not possible to Unit, and IU, which ALL Transfer Roller Ozone Filter Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4 Bypass	of a counter, select the specific part and press the Clear key. The mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing clear the count of the counters for the Fusing Unit, Transfer Belt are provided with a new unit detection function. In a counters In Number of times a sheet of paper is fed through In Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 1 In Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 2 In Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 3 In Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 4 In Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 4 In Number of sheets of paper fed from the Bypass	
	LCT Finisher	: Number of sheets of paper fed from LCT: Number of sheets of paper fed out of the Finisher	

16.3.2 Running Mode

Functions	To test the printing operation in Running Mode.
Use	Use to check the printing operation in Running Mode from each paper source.
Setting/	Display the Running Mode and click the Menu/Select key.
Procedure	2. Select the position for paper feed and click the Menu/Select key.
	3. Select the paper size and paper type.
	4. Press the Men/Select key to start the Running Mode.
	5. Pressing the Cancel key will stop operation.

16.3.3 Option Board

Functions	To set when the Optional HDD Kit, Local Interface Kit is mounted.		
Use	Use when setting up the HDD Kit, Local Interface Kit is mounted.		
Setting/ Procedure	Setting modes are HDD and local I/F. The default setting is "Unset." local I/F : Set "Unset" HDD : Set "Unset"		
	NOTE • When the sett	ing has been chan	ged, turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.

16.3.4 List Output

A. Machine Management List

	Functions	 To produce an output of a list of setting values, adjustment values, Total Counter values, and others.
	Use	At the end of setup or when a malfunction occurs.
À	Setting/ Procedure	<selecting report=""> Load the A4S plain paper to a paper source. </selecting>
		 Select the type of list to be printed. Data printed is in English (alphanumeric characters).
		The time-of-day and date will also be printed. <simplex duplex=""></simplex>
		The default setting is 1-Sided.

B. Adjustment List

Functions	To output the adjustment list for machine adjustment, process adjustment, etc. in Service Mode.
Use	At the end of setup or when a malfunction occurs.
Setting/ Procedure	<selecting report=""> Load the A4S plain paper to a paper source. Press the Menu/Select key, which will let the machine produce the list. Data printed is in English (alphanumeric characters). The time-of-day and date will also be printed. Simplex/Duplex> The default setting is 1-Sided.</selecting>

16.3.5 Serial Number

Functions	 To register the serial numbers of the machine and options. The numbers will be printed on the list output.
Use	Upon setup.
Setting/ Procedure	Type the serial numbers. 9 digits (0 to 9)

16.3.6 Image Controller

Functions	To set the type of the controller. "Peripheral Mode" appears when "Others" is selected.	
Use	When setting up the	controller.
Setting/ Procedure	Image Controller Select the controller "Controller 0" Controller 1 Controller 2 Controller 3 Others Peripheral Mode Select the operating Mode 1: Not use Mode 2: Not use Mode 3: Not use NOTE Do not change the	: The standard controller is used. : Not use : Not use : Not use : Not use

16.3.7 Unit Change

Functions	To select who is to rep When the unit life arriving soing to replace the When "User" is selected when "Service" is selected.	ves, the warn e unit. ected : Pri	nting is inhibite		ne specific person w	rho
Use	Upon setup					
Setting/ Procedure	The following are the default settings:					
		US, Japa	n, Others 4	Europe, 0	Others 1/2/3	
	Toner Cartridge	: "User"	Service	"User"	Service	
	Imaging Unit	: User	"Service"	"User"	Service	
	Waste Toner	: User	"Service"	"User"	Service	
	Punch Dust Box	: User	"Service"	"User"	Service	

16.3.8 LCT Paper Size

Functions	To set the paper size for the LCT	
Use	Use to change the paper size for the LCT.	
Setting/	The default setting depends on the setting made for the applicable marketing area.	
Procedure	"A4" 8 1/2 × 11	

16.3.9 Initialization

A. Data Clear

Functions	To initialize the setting data.	
Use	To clears the setting data.	
	NOTE When removing or installing the hard disk after registering the data below, be sure to clear the data. Referring data: User Authentication/Account Track.	
Setting/ Procedure	Select the Data clear. Press the Menu/Select key. When "OK" is displayed, turn the main power switch OFF, and ON again.	

B. System ERR Clear

Functions	To reset the trouble data.
Use	Use to clear the "Jam", "Trouble", "Error" displays, and other improper displays.
	Select the System ERR Clear. Press the Menu/Select key. When "OK" is displayed, turn the main power switch OFF, and ON again.

16.3.10 Foolscap Size

Functions	To set the size for Foolscap paper.
Use	Upon setup. To change the size for Foolscap paper.
Setting/	Select the size from among the following five.
Procedure	220 × 330 mm 8 1/2 × 13 "8 1/4 × 13" 8 1/8 × 13 1/4 8 × 13

16.3.11 No Sleep

Functions	To display the option of "OFF" for the Sleep Mode Setting screen available from Administrator Setting.
Use	To display the option of "OFF" for the Sleep Mode Setting.
Setting/	The default setting is Prohibit.
Procedure	Permit "Prohibit"



16.3.12 Security Setting

A. Admin. Password

Functions	To set and change the Administrator Password.
Use	Use to change the Administrator Password. Use this function when the administrator forget the Administrator Password because a new password can be set without entering the current Administrator Password with this.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Administrator Password (8 digits) on the on-screen keyboard. The initial setting is "12345678." New Password : Enter the new Administrator Password.
	Retype Password : Enter the new Administrator Password again. NOTE • When the following setting leads to the Password Rules [Enable], the password with the same letters, the password which is same as the previous one and the password of less than eight digits cannot be changed. [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting]

B. Service Password

Functions	To set and change the Service Password.
Use	Use to change the Service Password.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the Service Password (8 digits) on the on-screen keyboard. The initial setting is "92729272."
	Password : Enter the currently using Service Password. New Password : Enter the new Service Password. Retype Password : Enter the new Service Password again.
	NOTE When the following setting leads to the Password Rules [Enable], the password with the same letters as well as the password which is same as the previous one cannot be changed. [Admin. Setting] Seturity Setting] NEVER forget the Service password. When forgetting the Service password, call responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.

16.3.13 HDD Formatting

Functions	To format the hard disk The function proceeds in the order of Physical Format to Logical Format. If the hard disk is yet to be formatted, the trouble code "C-D010" will appear. Ignore this code and continue with the formatting procedure.
Use	When the hard disk is mounted. When the hard disk is to be initialized. (Physical Format to Logical Format)
Adjustment Procedure	Physical Format 1. Select the Physical Format. 2. Press the Menu/Select key to start the formatting sequence. 3. The sequence will be automatically terminated as it is completed. 4. Turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch.
	Logical Format (Only when initial is set up) 1. Select the Logical Format. 2. Press the Menu/Select key to start the formatting sequence. 3. The sequence will be automatically terminated as it is completed. 4. Turn OFF and ON the Main Power Switch. * Formatting the hard disk will erase all data contained in it.

16.3.14 Version Upgrade

A. HDD Ver. Upgrade

Functions	To upgrade Administration data (Document management information, Address information, etc.) other than image data in HDD.
Use	 To use when updating Firmware Card from Ver. 43 or earlier to 81 or later. When the Firmware Card Ver. 43 or earlier is upgraded to the Ver. 81 or later, the Printer cannot be used unless HDD version is upgraded.
	NOTE • When the Firmware version is modified to the version 43 or earlier after HDD version is upgraded, turn Main-power OFF/ON, and conduct HDD ethics format.
Adjustment Procedure	7. Select the HDD Format. 2. Press the Menu/Select key to start upgrading the version. 3. When upgrading the version is complete, the outcome will be displayed on the screen.
	NOTE • Make sure to turn Main-power of the Printer OFF when upgrading is complete, and wait for ten seconds to turn power back ON.

Functions	
Use	Not used.
Adjustment Procedure	1.0.0000

C. Internet ISW

- By using this setting, the Firmware stored in the Server can be downloaded over internet for upgrading.
- For details for upgrading the Firmware, refer to "Firmware upgrade" in the Maintenance section.

NOTE

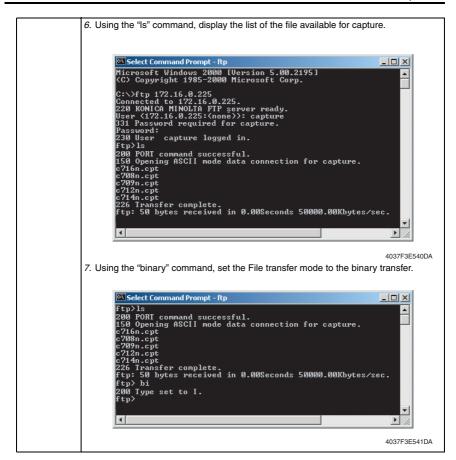
• To start Internet ISW from the control panel, it is first necessary to set the Internet ISW on the Jig software side.

Functions	 To access the program server according to the settings made in Internet ISW, thereby downloading the firmware
Use	When upgrading the firmware over the network
Adjustment Procedure	1. Select the Internet ISW. 2. Press the Menu/Select key to start downloading the firmware. 3. The message "Please wait" appears on the screen during connection and data transfer. 4. When upgrading of the firmware is normally terminated, the machine is restarted to complete Internet ISW. NOTE
	If connection to the program server or downloading of data fails, refer to "Firmware upgrade" of "Maintenance" and take necessary action.

Adjustment / Setting

16.3.15 Data Capture

the error.
When an error occurs, this will be used to analyze the cause of the error according to the print job data.
NOTE The following conditions are necessary for this function. When selecting [Data Capture] in Admin. Setting, "Permit" must be set. The hard disk must be mounted to the machine.
 Select [Admin. Setting] → [Data Capture]. Select "ON." (While the Data Capture setting is "ON", the print job data from the PC will be stored in the hard disk.) Check the IP address of the machine. Connect the PC (Windows) and the machine with Ethernet cable. Start the DOS command prompt of the PC, and specify the IP address of the machine.
Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195] (C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp. C:\\ftp 172.16.0.225 Connected to 172.16.0.225. 220 KONICA MINOLIA FIP server ready.
5. Input the user name and the password. User name: capture Password: sysadm
Microsoft Windows 2000 [Uersion 5.00.2195] (G) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp. C:\>ftp 172.16.0.225 Connected to 172.16.0.225. 220 KONICA MINOLIA FIP server ready. User (172.16.0.225:(none)>: capture 331 Password required for capture. Password: 230 User capture logged in. ftp>



8. Using the "get" command, transfer the data for capture to PC. Select Command Prompt - ftp ftp>1s 200 PORI command successful. 150 Opening ASCII mode data connection for capture. c716n.cpt c708n.cpt c709n.cpt c712n.cpt c714n.cpt c714n.cpt
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 50 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 50000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> bi
200 Type set to I.
ftp: yet c716n.cpt
200 PoRT command successful.
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for capture.
226 Transfer complete.
ftp:858351 bytes received in 0.38Seconds 2288.94Kbytes/sec.
ftp:858351 bytes received in 0.38Seconds 2288.94Kbytes/sec. 4 4037F3E542DA 9. Finish the command prompt.

NOTE

After receiving capture data, select [Admin. Setting] → [Data Capture], and select "Prohibit" for Print Data Capture in order to delete the job data stored in the hard disk.

16.3.16 Data Backup

Functions	To backup nonvolatile data (data stored in NVRAM) in the Printer to the Flash memory.		
Use	 To backup current data in order to prevent data in NVRAM from being erased unexpectedly. To backup data manually. It usually makes backup every hour automatically. Backup data can be restored by following the specified procedure when the trouble (CD3##) occurred. Refer to "Troubleshooting" for details on restoration procedure. See P359 		
Setting/ Procedure	1. Select the Data Backup. 2. Press the Menu/Select key to start making a backup. 3. Check the message [OK], and turn Main power OFF. Wait for ten seconds or more and turn power back ON.		

16.3.17 Software SW

Functions	
Use	Not Used
Setting/	1100 0000
Procedure	

2 16.3.18 Comm. System

Functions	To select communication system used for RS-232C port.					
To switch RS-232C port in order to connect with the CS remote care moder JScribe- enabled-device. Communication requirements for each setting are shown below.						
		CS Remote Care	JScribe1	JScribe2		
	Baud r	ate 9,600 bps	19,200 bps	19,200 bps		
	Data	bit 8 bit	7 bit	8 bit		
	Parity	bit None	Odd	None		
	Stop	bit 1 bit	1 bit	1 bit		
	NOTE When the JScribe function is used, the following functions will be invalid. • Sequential number print, Print Protect					
Setting/	The default setting is CS Remote Care.					
Procedure	"CS Remote Care" JScribe1 JScribe2					

16.4 Settings in CS Remote Care

16.4.1 Outlines

- CS Remote Care is a system of controlling the machine, in which the machine and the CS Remote Care center computer send and receive data of various types for machine control via the telephone line or e-mail.
- CS Remote Care enables the machine to call the computer at the center when trouble occurs. It also enables the computer at the center to contact the machine for the necessary data.
- Data which CS Remote Care handles can be divided into the following groups.
 - a. Data which show the status of use of the machine such as Total count, PM count.
 - Data which show the abnormal situation on the machine such as where and how often errors occur.
 - c. Data on adjustment
 - d. Data on setting

№ NOTE

It cannot be set when the following setting is set to "ON".
 [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]

16.4.2 Setting Up the CS Remote Care

NOTE

 For resetting up the machine which CS Remote Care has already been set up, clear the RAM for CS Remote Care before resetting.

See P.221

When using the telephone line for connection, use the recommended modem.
 (For recommended modem, contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.)

Cton	Procedure				
Step	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail			
0	Register the device ID to the application at CS The initial connection is not available unless the				
1	Connecting the modem Turn the power for the modem OFF. Connect the machine and the modem with a modem cable. Connect the modem and the wall jack with a modular cable. * For connecting the modular cable, see the manual for the modem.	Be sure to remove the telephone line modem when e-mail is used.			
2	Selecting the CS Remote Care function CS Remote Care → System Selection, and select the Modem.	Selecting the CS Remote Care function CS Remote Care → System Selection, and select the E-Mail.			
3	Inputting the ID Code 1. Select the CS Remote Care → System Selection → ID Code 2. Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and press Menu/Select key. See P.220				
4	Clearing the RAM 1. Select CS Remote Care → ID Code → Detail Set: Modem 2. Select the RAM Clear, and press the Menu/Select key. See P.221 NOTE • When the detail setting key is not displayed, proceed to step 5 without clearing the				

Ston	Procedure					
Step	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail				
5	Setting the date and time for CS Remote Care 1. Select the Detail Set: *** → Date/Time. (***: modem or e-mail) 2. Press the Menu/Select key. 3. Input the Date, Time, Time zone, and press Menu/Select key. See P.220					
6	Setting the Center ID 1. Select the Detail Set: *** → Center/Device ID. (***: modem or e-mail) 2. Input the Center ID (5 digits) See P.220					
7	Setting the Device ID 1. Select the Detail Set: *** → Center/Device II 2. Input the Center ID (9 digits) See P.220	D. (***: modem or e-mail)				
8	Setting the E-mail address 1. Select the Detail Set: E-mail → E-Mail Address. 2. Input the e-mail address of the remote destination. See P.220					
9	Inputting the Device telephone number 1. Select the CS Remote Care → Detail Set: Modem → Device Tel No. 2. Input the Device telephone number See P.220	Setting the Response Timeout 1. Select the Detail Set: E-mail → Response Timeout. 2. Input the response timeout period. NOTE Normally, leave it as the default setting. See P.221				
10	Inputting the AT command for initializing the modem 1. Select the CS Remote Care → Detail Set: Modem → Initial Trans. 2. Input AT Command. NOTE Change this Command only when it is necessary. (They do not need to be changed in normal condition.) For details on AT Command, see the manual for the modem. See P.221	Setting the E-mail address 1. Select the Server Setting. See P.222 2. Select the Server for RX, and set POP3 server address, POP3 Login name, POP3 password and POP3 port number. 3. Select the Receive Setting, and set the E-Mail address, Mail Check, Connection Time Out and APOP Authentication. 4. Select the Send Setting, and set the SMTP server address, SMTP port number, Con- nection Time Out, and APOP Authentica- tion. 5. Select the TX/RX Test, and press Start key to carry out a transmission/reception test. If it fails to exchange messages, see the error message to take necessary measure, and try again.				
11	Setting the DIPSW for CS Remote Care NOTE This setting is not normally necessary. To cific connecting condition.	ake this step only when necessary in a spe-				

Setting S	
- 1	
15	
۳.	
O	þ
ci	
v	ľ
_	į
•	
Ğ	
Ö	Ī
יחסר	Ī
mon	Ī
tmon.	1
ctmon	
i ctmon	
inetmoni	
diretment	
Adinetmon	

Δ	Step	Proc	edure
<u>/1\</u>	Step	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail
	12	Executing the initial transmission 1. Select the CS Remote Care → Detail Set: Modem → Initial Trans. 2. Press the Menu/Select key of the screen to start initial transmission. 3. When the machine is properly connected with the Center, CS Remote Care setting screen will be displayed. NOTE • The initial transmission key at the right bottom of the screen will be displayed only when the Center ID, the Device ID, Telephone number of the Center and the Device telephone number have been input. See P.220	Receiving the initial connection E-mail message Sending the initial connection E-mail message from the Center to the address of the Printer. NOTE • When receiving the initial connection E-mail message from the Center while CS Remote Care-related screen is being displayed, the current setting information will be deleted, and CS Remote Care setting will be displayed. • For sending the initial connection E-mail, see the manual for CS Remote Care Center. • Messages can be exchanged only between the Center with initial connection and the Printer. • The initial connection from the Center will be carried out, and the E-mail address of the Center will be stored in the Printer. • The Center e-mail address is displayed under E-Mail Address.

16.4.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care

NOTE

SW bits data are written into the NVRAM every time a change is made. In case you
changed bit data by accident, be sure to restore the previous state.

A. Input procedure

- Select [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting: ***], and select [Software Switch Setting]. (***: modem or e-mail)
- 2. Select [Switch No.], and input the SW number (two digits) using the 10-Key Pad.
- Select [Bit Assignment], and select SW bit number using the arrow keys, and input 0 or 1 using the 10-Key Pad.
 - (For setting by hexadecimal numbers, select [HEX Assignment], and input using the 1-Key Pad or A to F keys.)
- 4. Press the Menu/Select key.

NOTE

 About functions of each switch, see to "B.List of software SW for CS Remote Care."

B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care

NOTE

· Do not change any bit not described on this table.

	SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
1	SW 01	0	Dial Mode	Pulse	Tone	1
ı		1	Reservation	_		0
		2	Reservation	_		0
		3	Reservation	_	_	0
		4	Baud rate	*1	*1	0
		5		*1	*1	0
		6		*1	*1	0
		7		*1	*1	1
\triangle	SW 02	0	Auto call on SC occurrence	Do not call	Call	1
		1	Auto call on date specification	Do not call	Call	1
		2	Reservation	_	_	0
		3	Reservation	_	-	0
		4	Reservation	_	-	0
		5	Auto call on the IC Life	Do not call	Call	1
		6	Auto call on CCD Clamp/Gain Adjustment failure	Do not call	Call	1
		7	Reservation	_	-	0
	SW 03	0	Reservation	_	-	0
		1	Auto call on the toner supply	Do not call	Call	1
		2	Reservation	_	_	0
		3	Auto call on the waste toner bottle full	Do not call	Call	1
		4 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
	SW 04	0 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 05	0	Modem redial interval	*2	*2	1
	1		*2	*2	1
	2		*2	*2	0
	3		*2	*2	0
	4 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 06	0	Modem redial times	*3	*3	0
	1		*3	*3	1
	2		*3	*3	0
	3		*3	*3	1
	4		*3	*3	0
	5		*3	*3	0
	6		*3	*3	0
	7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 07	0	Redial for response time out	Do not redial	Redial	1
	1 to 7	Reserved		_	0
SW 08	0	Retransmission interval on E-Mail deliv-	*4	*4	0
	1	ery error	*4	*4	1
	2		*4	*4	1
	3		*4	*4	0
	4 to 7	Reservation		_	0
SW 09	0	Retransmission times on E-Mail	*5	*5	0
	1	delivery error	*5	*5	1
	2		*5	*5	0
	3		*5	*5	1
	4		*5	*5	0
	5		*5	*5	0
	6		*5	*5	0
	7	Reservation		_	0
SW 10	0 to 7	Reservation		_	0
SW 11	0	Timer 1	*6	*6	0
	1	RING reception → CONNECT reception	*6	*6	0
	2		*6	*6	0
	3		*6	*6	0
	4		*6	*6	0
	5		*6	*6	1
	6		*6	*6	0
	7		*6	*6	0

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 12	0	Timer 2	*7	*7	0
	1	Dial request completed → CONNECT reception	*7	*7	0
	2	reception	*7	*7	0
	3		*7	*7	0
	4		*7	*7	0
	5		*7	*7	0
	6		*7	*7	1
	7		*7	*7	0
SW 13	0 to 7	Reservation	_		0
SW 14	0	Timer 4	*8	*8	0
	1	Line connection → Start request telegram delivery	*8	*8	0
	2	telegram delivery	*8	*8	0
	3		*8	*8	0
	4		*8	*8	0
	5		*8	*8	1
	6		*8	*8	0
	7		*8	*8	0
SW 15	0	Timer 5	*9	*9	0
	1	Wait time for other side's response	*9	*9	1
	2		*9	*9	1
	3		*9	*9	1
	4		*9	*9	1
	5		*9	*9	0
	6		*9	*9	0
	7		*9	*9	0
SW 16	0 to 7	Reservation	_		0
SW 17	0 to 7	Reservation	_		0
SW 18	0	Attention display To set weather to give the alarm display when using the modem but the power for the modem is OFF.	Do not call	Call	1
	1 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 19 to SW 40	0 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0

*1: Baud rate

Mode	01-7	01-6	01-5	01-4
9600 bps	0	1	1	0
19200 bps	0	1	1	1
"38400 bps"	1	0	0	0

*2: Modem redial interval

Mode	05-3	05-2	05-1	05-0
1 minute	0	0	0	1
2 minutes	0	0	1	0
"3 minutes"	0	0	1	1
4 minutes	0	1	0	0
5 minutes	0	1	0	1
6 minutes	0	1	1	0
7 minutes	0	1	1	1
8 minutes	1	0	0	0
9 minutes	1	0	0	1
10 minutes	1	0	1	0

*3: Modem redial times

Mode	06-6 06-5		06-4	06-3	06-2	06-1	06-0
0 to 9 times			000 0	000 to 000	1001		
"10 times"	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
11 to 99 times			000 1	011 to 110	0011		

*4: Retransmission interval on E-Mail delivery error

Mode	08-3	08-2	08-1	08-0
0 minute	0	0	0	0
10 minutes	0	0	0	1
20 minutes	0	0	1	0
30 minutes	0	0	1	1
40 minutes	0	1	0	0
50 minutes	0	1	0	1
"60 minutes"	0	1	1	0
70 minutes	0	1	1	1
80 minutes	1	0	0	0
90 minutes	1	0	0	1
100 minutes	1	0	1	0
110 minutes	1	0	1	1
120 minutes	1	1	0	0

*5: Retransmission times on E-Mail delivery error

Mode	09-6	09-5	09-4	09-3	09-2	09-1	09-0	
0 to 9 times	000 0000 to 000 1001							
"10 times"	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	
11 to 99 times			000 1	011 to 110	0011			

*6: Timer 1 (RING reception \rightarrow CONNECT reception)

Mode	11-7	11-6	11-5	11-4	11-3	11-2	11-1	11-0	
0 to 31 sec	0000 0000 to 0001 1111								
"32 sec"	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	
33 to 255 sec		0010 0001 to 1111 1111							

*7: Timer 2 (Dial request completed → CONNECT reception)

Mode	12-7	12-6	12-5	12-4	12-3	12-2	12-1	12-0
0 to 63 sec	0000 0000 to 0011 1111							
"64 sec"	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
65 to 255 sec			010	00 0001 t	o 1111 1	111		

*8: Timer 4 (Line connection → Start request telegram delivery)

Mode	14-7	14-6	14-5	14-4	14-3	14-2	14-1	14-0	
0 to 31 (x 100 msec)	0000 0000 to 0001 1111								
"32 (x 100 msec)"	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	
33 to 255 (x 100 msec)	0010 0001 to 1111 1111								

*9: Timer 5 (Wait time for other side's response)

Mode	15-7	15-6	15-5	15-4	15-3	15-2	15-1	15-0
0 to 29 sec	0000 0000 to 0001 1101							
"30 sec"	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0
31 to 255 sec	0001 1111 to 1111 1111							

16.4.4 Setup confirmation

- Follow the steps below to make sure that CS Remote Care has been properly set up.
- 1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- 2. Select the CS Remote Care.
- 3. Check to make sure that only selected item is displayed.

16.4.5 Calling the Maintenance

- When CE starts maintenance, inputting the ID code of CE (seven digits: numbers which CE can identify. They are controlled by the distributor.) will transmit the information to the Center side and tells that the maintenance has started.
- When the maintenance is finished, click "Maintenance Complete" key will transmit the information to the Center and tells that it is finished.

A. When starting the Maintenance

- 1. Select the CS Remote Care.
- 2. Select the ID Code, and input ID Code.
- 3. Press the Menu/Select key.
- * The ready to print LED remains blinking until Maintenance is completed.

B. When finishing the Maintenance

- 1. Select the CS Remote Care.
- 2. Select the Mainte. Complete, and press the Menu/Select key.

16.4.6 Calling the Center from the Administrator

- When the CS Remote Care setup is complete, the administrator can call the CS Remote Care center.
- 1. Select the Admin. Setting → Call Center.
- Press the Menu/Select key.
 When the setup is not complete, or other transmission is being performed, pressing the Menu/Select key will not perform transmission.

NOTE

 For transmitting data of the machine by calling the center on the specified date and time, refer to the manual for CS Remote Care Center.

16.4.7 Checking the transmission log

- · The transmission log list will be output to be checked.
- 1. Select the CS Remote Care → Detail Set: Modem → Log Print.
- 2. Load Tray 1 or Bypass Tray with A4S paper.
- 3. Press the Menu/Select key to output transmission log.

16.4.8 Detail on settings

A. System Selection

Functions	To select the system type for remote diagnosis	S.
Use	Use to newly build or change the system.	
Setting/	The default setting is E-Mail.	
Procedure	"E-Mail"	Modem

B. ID Code

Functions	To register the Service ID.
Use	Use when registering and changing Service ID.
Setting/ Procedure	1. Enter a 7-digit code. (0000001 to 9999999) 2. Press the Menu/Select key to register the ID. 3. The "Detail Setting" key will appear when the ID has been registered.

C. Detail Set: E-Mail/Modem

(1) Machine Setting

Functions	Execute the primary setting.					
Use	Use to change the set contents. Use to register the machine to the CS Remote Care Center.					
Setting/ Procedure	 Select the CS Remote Care → ID Code. Input the ID Code, and press the Menu/Select key. Select the Detail Set: Modem or the Detail Set: E-Mail, and press the Menu/Select key. 					
	Primary Setting Set the Center ID, Device ID, and the phone No. When e-mail is selected for system and all setup procedures are completed, E-mail address of the Center is displayed.					
	* When entering the phone No, 10-Keys and keys on the screen have following meanings. [-] Pose : Waits to start transmitting after dialing [W] Wait : Detects the dial tone of the other end [T] Tone dial : Carry out tone dialing [P] Pulse dial : Carry out pulse dialing [*],[#] : To be used as necessary					
	Initial Transmission Clicking the Initial Transmission key will sent the information to the CS Remote Care Center to register the machine. (Only when the Modem or Fax is selected on the system Input.)					

(2) Data/Time

Functions	To set the data and time-of-day
Use	Use to set or change the date and time-of-day.
Setting/ Procedure	 Enter the date (month, day and year). Enter the time-of-day. Enter the time zone.
	4. Press the Menu/Select key to start the clock.

(3) RAM Clear

	Functions	To clear the following data at the Center ID Code, Primary Setting, Date/Time Input, and Common DT.
<u>\$</u>		 To be used for setting CS Remote Care. To be used for reset the every data of the Center to default. NOTE Perform RAM Clear when setting the following setting to "ON". [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]
	Setting/ Procedure	Press the Menu/Select key to start RAM Clear.

(4) Log Print

	Functions • To print out the Communication Log.			
Use • Use to output and use the Communication Log.		Use to output and use the Communication Log.		
Setting/ Procedure Press the Menu/Select key to print out the Communication Log. Load Tray 1 or Bypass Tray with A4S paper. Simplex/Duplex> The default setting is 1-Sided		Load Tray 1 or Bypass Tray with A4S paper.		

(5) Software SW

Functions	To change the CS Remote Care settings.	
Use	To change the settings for CS Remote Care as necessary.	
Setting/ Procedure	See P.214	

⚠ (6) Response Time Out

	It sets the intervals for resending E-Mails when transmission error occurred. It can be set only when [E-Mail] is selected by System Setting.	
Use	To use when changing the intervals for resending E-Mails when transmission error occurred.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 60 minute. "60 minute" (10 to 1440)	

(7) Reset Command

	 To set the command to be issued at the time of Modern Initialization. This setting is available only when "Modern" is selected for the system setting. 	
Use	To set the command to be issued at the time of Modern Initialization.	
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the command and Press the Menu/Select key to register.	

D. Server Setting

• Server Setting can be set only when [E-Mail] is selected by System Setting.

(1) Server for RX

1 <POP3 server>

Functions	To set the POP3 server address used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	To set the address of the POP3 Server.	
	<input address="" ip=""/> IP Address Version 4 format [0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255]. 	

<POP3 login name>

Functions	To set the logon name for the POP3 server used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	To set the logon name for the POP3 server.	
Setting/ Procedure	 The default setting is No. Up to 64 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used. 	

<POP3 password>

Functions	To set the logon password for the POP3 server used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	To set the logon password for the POP3 server.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is No. Up to 15 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.	

<POP3 port number>

Functions	To set the POP3 port number used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	To set the port number for the POP3 server.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 110. "110" (1 to 65535)	

(2) Receive

<E-mail Address>

Functions	To set the e-mail address used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	To set the e-mail address.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is No. Up to 129 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.	

<Mail Check>

Functions	To set whether or not to use Mail Check and the time interval for the POP server used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	To set whether or not to use Mail Check and the time interval for the POP server used for the CS Remote Care. To change the time interval for Mail Check.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is No. "No" (1 to120 min., No)	

<Connection timeout>

Functions	To set the timeout period for connection during reception.	
Use	To change the timeout period for connection during reception.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 60 Sec.	
riocedure	"60 Sec" (30 to 300 Sec)	

<APOP>

Functions	To set whether or not to authenticate the APOP during reception.		
Use	To authenticate the APOP during reception.		
Setting/	The default setting is No.		
Procedure	Yes	"No"	

(3) Send Setting

1 <SMTP server>

Functions	To set the SMTP sever address for transmission used for the CS Remote Care.		
Use	To set the SMTP server address		
Setting/ Procedure	<input address="" ip=""/> IP Address Version 4 format [0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255]. 		

<SMTP port number>

Functions	To set the SMTP port number for transmission used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	To set the Port Number of the SMTP Server.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 25. "25" (1 to 65535)	

<SMTP Connect Timeout>

Functions	To set the timeout period for transmission.	
Use	To change the timeout period for connection during transmission.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 60 Sec.	
Procedure	"60 Sec" (30 to 300 Sec)	

1 <Auth. Setting>

Functions	To set whether or not to authenticate during transmission via SMTP server.		
Use	To use when authenticating during transmission. Available authentication mode: POP Before SMTP, SMTP		
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.		
Procedure	"OFF" POP Before SMTP SMTP		
	* Setting to "POP Before SMTP" will set the time for POP Before SMTP.		
	The default setting is 60 Sec. "60 Sec" (0 to 60 Sec)		

(4) TX/RX Test

Functions	To determine the correct transmission and reception using CS Remote Care.	
Use	Use to determine the correct transmission and reception using CS Remote Care.	
	Press the Start key to let the machine start the transmission and reception test. The test procedure and result will be displayed on the screen.	

(5) Data Initialize

Functions	To initialize the contents for the sever setting.	
Use	Use to initialize the contents for the server setting.	
Setting/	The default setting is No.	
Procedure	Yes	"No"

16.4.9 List of the CS Remote Care error code

NOTE

 Error codes in the shaded region may occur when transmitting from the machine to the center.

A	\

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	The line is busy (Busy detection)	Transmit again manually.
0002	Failure of the Modem default setting at transmitting (When the transmission completes with modem initial setting failed)	Check if the power of the modem is ON. Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main unit.
0003	Timeout of CONNECT at transmitting (No response to ATD)	Transmit again manually Check if the power of the modem is ON. Check the connecting conditi between the modem and the main unit.
0004	Timeout of Incoming request response (No response to incoming (starting) request MSG)	Contact responsible person KONICA MINOLTA.
0005	Timeout of CONNECT at receiving (No response to ATA)	Check if the power of the modem is ON. Check the connecting con0dition between the mode and the main unit.
0006	Shut down of the data modem line (Host) (Carrier OFF is detected)	No solution, because the line shut down at the host side.
0007	Shut down of the data modem line (Main unit) (Line is shut down forcibly due to event)	Contact responsible person KONICA MINOLTA.
8000	Timeout of start request telegram delivery (Start request telegram is not delivered after line connection)	Transmit again manually.
0009	Timeout of finish request telegram delivery (Finish request telegram is not delivered (Start of shut down).)	Transmit again manually.
000A	Receiving rejection (Receiving is made when the main unit is set to reject receiving.)	Check the setting condition of the host side. Check the setting condition of the main unit side.
000B	RS232C Driver Over Run (When the modem detects Over Run.)	If the same error is detected several times, turn the mode power OFF and ON.
000C	If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.	If the same error is detected several times, turn the mode power OFF and ON.
000D	Break Interrupt (BI) Indicator (When the modem detects Break Interrupt (BI) Indicator.)	If the same error is detected several times, turn the mode power OFF and ON.
000E	Receiving RING Buffer Full (When the Receiving RING Buffer is full.)	Contact responsible person KONICA MINOLTA.

Error code	Error	Solution
000F	Transmitting RING Buffer Full (When the Transmitting RING Buffer is full.)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0010	RX FIF0 ERROR (when Read / Write error occurs at RX FIF0)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0011	Baud Rate ERROR (When selected Baud Rate is out of the specifica- tion (9600 bps to 38400 bps).)	Check the Baud rate of the software DipSW.
0012	TX FIF0 Level Error (When the threshold of the selected TX FIF0 is not error value (1, 3, 9, 13).)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0013	RX FIF0 Level Error (When the threshold of the selected RX FIF0 is not error value (0, 4, 8, 14).)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0014	Receiving Data Over Error (When the data whose size exceeds the transmit- ting RING buffer is requested.)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0015	Status Error (During modem operation is being confirmed)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0016	Status Error (During receiving)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0017	Status Error (During line is being shut down)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
0018	Machine ID has already been registered (Request telegram 2 (SET-UP) comes from the main unit that has already registered Machine ID.)	Set the initial registrations again for all including the host side.
0019	Center ID Error (Center ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	 Check Center ID setting of the main unit side. Check Center ID setting of the main unit side.
001A	Device ID inconsistency (Device ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	 Check Device ID setting of the main unit side. Check the setting of the host side.
001B	Device ID Unregistered (Request telegram 2 (Constant data transmitting, Emergency call) comes from the main unit that has not registered Machine ID yet.)	 Check Device ID setting of the main unit side. Check the setting of the host side.
001C	Grammar Error (Received response telegram is unregulated format.)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
001D	Impossible to change (Unchangeable items) (Host requests to change the setting of items which are not allowed to change.)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
001E	Impossible to change (During printing) (Setting cannot be changed because the setting change is made during the machine is printing or starts printing.)	Try again when the machine is not printing.
001F	Impossible to change (Unread items) (The host tries to make writing on the items the current value has not been read.)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.

Λ	Error code	Error	Solution
	0020	Timeout of Telegram Delivery (At waiting mode of telegram delivery the machine fails to receive the telegram in a given time.)	Try communication again.
Ī	0021	Telegram Size Over (The machine receives the telegram whose size exceeds the specification.)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
-	0022 Transmitting Phase Response NG (Transmitting phase response MSG is not appropriate.) 0023 Timeout of Transmitting Phase Response MSG (Transmitting phase response MSG is timeout.)		Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
-			Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
-	0024	Event Data Acquisition Function Error (Although the transmitting phase response MSG is OK, the function for Data acquisition shows "No event,".)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
	0025 Timeout of Driver transmitting check MSG (Transmitting check MSG from the driver task is timeout.)		Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
	0026	Detection of Internal Contradiction (Unknown event is detected. Condition value is not correct or so on.)	Contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.
	0027	Transmission / Receiving collision (Receiving is detecting during transmitting processing)	Try communication again.

16.4.10 Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care

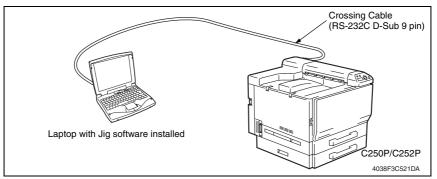
If communication is not done properly during use of the modem, check the condition by following the procedures shown below.

- Is the Modem power ON?
- Is the phone line normally connected?

17. Jig Soft

17.1 Connection when using the Jig Software

- · Connect it as shown below when using only the Jig software.
- · For Gradation adjustment, connect the Service jig including the X-Rite.



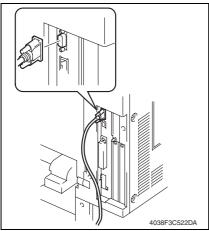
17.1.1 Connecting the Crossing Cable



 Connect the Crossing cable to the COM1 port on the PC.

NOTE

When connecting to the COM2, set the port of the Jig software to COM2.

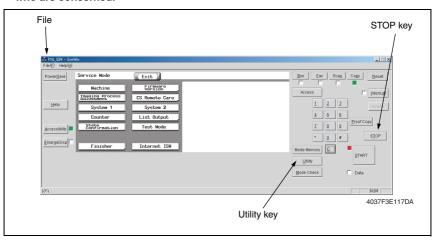


2. Connect the Crossing cable to the printer.

17.2 How to display the Jig Software

NOTE

Do not reveal the displaying method of the Jig software to the people except those
who are concerned.



<Procedure>

- 1. Connect the crossing cable to the printer and PC.
- 2. Turn the PC Power ON.
- 3. Turn the Printer Power ON while pressing the Menu/Select key on the control Panel.
- 4. Keep pressing the Menu/Select key until the LED turns OFF on the control Panel.
- Check to make sure that the "Trouble Reset" will be displayed on the control Panel after LED turns OFF.
- 6. Start the Jig software and check to make sure the Start-up Dialog will be displayed.
- 7. Click the OK key in the dialogue.
- 8. Check to make sure that the Start screen will be displayed on the PC.
- 9. Check to make sure that the Start screen will change to the Panel screen.
- 10. Click the Utility key.
- 11. Click the Details key.
- 12. Click the keys below. STOP \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow STOP \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 1
- 13. Service mode will be displayed.

<How to exit>

· Select Exit which is available from File.

17.3 Jig software function tree (Service Mode)

* The function tree is shown to comply with the format displayed on the screen.

*1: It will be displayed only when the [Internet ISW Set] is set to "ON".



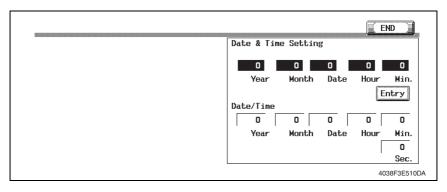
Service Mode			
Machine	Fusing Temperature		
	Fusing Transport Speed		
	Printer Area	Print Positioning: Leading Edge	
		Print Positioning: Side Edge	
		Dup Print Positioning: Side Edge	
	Printer Resist Loop	·	
	Color Registration	Cyan	
	Adjustment	Magenta	
		Yellow	
	Fusing Loop Size	•	
	Manual Bypass Tray Ad	ljustment	
	Lead Edge Erase Adjus	stment	
Firmware Version	1		
Imaging Process	X-Rite Calibration		
Adjustment	D Max Density		
	Background Voltage Ma	argin	
	Transfer Output Fine	2nd Transfer Adjust	
	Adjustment	1st Transfer Adjust	
	Stabilizer	Stabilization Only	
		Initialize+Image Stabilization	
	Thick Paper Density Adjustment		
	TCR Toner Supply		
	Monochrome Density Adjustment		
	Dev. Bias Choice		
CS Remote Care			
System 1	Marketing Area		
	Serial Number		
	No Sleep		
	Foolscap Size Setting		
	Install Date		
	Initialization		
	Communication System Setting		
System 2	HDD		
	Image Controller Setting		
	Option Board Status		
	Unit Change		
	Software Switch Setting		
	LCT Paper Size Setting		
	Data Capture		

Counter	Life		
	Jam		
	Service Call Counter		
	Warning		
	Maintenance		
	Service Total		
	Counter Of Each Mode		
	Service Call History (Da	ata)	
	Paper Jam History	•	
	Counter Reset		
List Output	Machine Management	List	
	Adjustment List		
State Confirmation	Sensor Check		
	Table Number		
	Level History1		
	Level History2		
	Temp. & Humidity		
	Memory/HDD Adj.	Memory Check	
		Compress / Decompression Check	
		Work Memory In/Out Check	
		HDD R/W Check	
		HDD Format	
	Memory/HDD State		
	Color Regist		
	IU Lot No.		
	Adjustment Data List		
Test Mode	Gradation Pattern		
	Halftone Pattern		
	Lattice Pattern		
	Solid Pattern		
	Color Sample		
	8 Color Solid Pattern		
	Running Mode		
Finisher	Center staple position (only when the FS-501/FS-603 is mounted)	
	Fold position (only when the FS-501/FS-603 is mounted)		
	Fold & Staple Pos. Adjustment (bizhub C252P only)		
	Finisher Check (bizhub C252P only)		
	Punch Regist Loop Size (bizhub C252P only)		
	Punch Horizontal Position (bizhub C252P only)		
Internet ISW	Internet ISW Set		
	HTTP Setting *1		
FTP Setting *1			
	Forwarding Access Setting *1		
	1		

17.4 Date/Time Input mode

• This mode is used to set time-of-day and date.

17.4.1 Date & Time Setting mode screen



A. Date & Time Setting mode setting procedure

- 1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- 2. Press the following keys in this order.

Stop
$$\rightarrow$$
 1 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 4 \rightarrow 4 \rightarrow Clear

Enter year, month, day, hour, and minute, in that order, from 10-key Pad.
 (Year 4 digits → Month 2 digits → Day 2 digits → Hour 2 digits → Minute 2 digits)

NOTE

- · When setting the month, day, hour, or minute, enter "0" first if the data one digit.
- Make sure that correct figures have been entered and then click [Entry].
- 5. Click [END] to return to the Service Mode.

17.5 Machine

17.5.1 Fusing Temperature

Functions	To adjust individually the temperature of the Heating Roller and the Fusing Pressure Roller for each type of paper, thereby coping with varying fusing performance under changing environmental conditions.	
Use	 When fusing performance is poor, or wax streak or offset occurs when the type of paper is changed or environmental conditions change. By setting the temperature higher (+), gloss of print or OHP transparencies can be improved. By setting the temperature lower (-), Exit Roller mark or uneven transparencies of OHP can be reduced. 	
Adjustment Range	Heating Roller : 0 °C to +10 °C (step: 5 °C)	
Adjustment Instructions	If fusing performance is poor, increase the setting. If wax streaks occur, decrease the setting. If offset is poor, decrease the setting.	
Setting/ Procedure	If offset is poor, decrease the setting. 1. Call the Service Mode to the screen. 2. Click these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Fusing Temperature]. 3. Select the paper type and Fusing Roller type. 4. Enter the new setting from the [+] / [-] key. 5. The temperature does not change immediately when the setting is change. Wait a while before performing the subsequent steps. NOTE • As a general rule, do not adjust the fusing temperature on the pressure application side. 6. Click [END] to validate the adjustment value. 7. Check the print image for any image problem. 8. Make the adjustment for each type of paper.	

17.5.2 Fusing Transport Speed

Functions	To adjust the speed of the Fusing Drive Motor so as to match the fusing speed with transport speed.		
Use	Brush effect or blurred image is evident as a result of changes in environmental conditions or degraded durability.		
Variable Range	-2 % to +2 % (in 0.1 % increments)		
Adjustment Instructions	If brush effect is evident, vary the setting value and check for image. If a blurred image occurs, decrease the setting.		
Setting/ Procedure			
	Transport speed Paper Setting		
	110 mm/s Plair	paper: monochrome/color	
	55 mm/s	k paper, OHP film, Envelope, Postcard, els: monochrome, color	
	4. Enter the new setting fr 5. Click [END] to validate 6. Check the print image f	he adjustment value.	

17.5.3 Printer Area

A. Print Positioning: Leading Edge

Functions	To vary the print start position in the sub scan direction for each of different paper types in Tray 1.	
Use	The PH Unit has been replaced. The paper type has been changed. The image on the print deviates in the sub scan direction. A faint image occurs on the leading edge of the image.	
Adjustment Specification	Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range. Specifications: 4.2 ± 0.5 mm Setting Range: -3.0 mm to +3.0 mm (in 0.2 mm increments)	
Adjustment Instructions	If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one. If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Print Positioning: Leading Edge]. Select the [Plain Paper]. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern. Check the dimension of width A on the test pattern. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern. Check the dimension of width A on the test pattern. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again. If width A falls within the specified range, click [END]. Following the same procedure, adjust for Thick 1 to 3, OHP Film, and Enve. 	

B. Print Positioning: Side Edge

Functions	To vary the print start position in the main scan direction for each paper source.	
Use	The PH Unit has been replaced. A paper feed unit has been added. The image on the print deviates in the main scan direction.	
Adjustment Specification	Width A Width A on the test pattern produced should fall within the following range. Specifications: 3.0 ± 0.5 mm Setting Range: -3.0 mm to +3.0 mm (in 0.2 mm increments)	
Adjustment Instructions	If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one. If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click [Machine] → [Printer Area] → [Print Positioning: Side Edge]. Select the paper source to be adjusted. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern. Check the dimension of width A on the test pattern. If width A falls outside the specified range, change the setting using the [+] / [-] key. Press the Start key to let the machine produce a test pattern. Check the dimension of width A on the test pattern. Check the dimension of width A on the test pattern. If width A is outside the specified range, change the setting again and make a check again. If width A falls within the specified range, click [END]. Following the same procedure, adjust for all other paper sources. (Use A4 or 8 ¹/₂ × 11 plain paper for the Bypass.) 	

C. Dup Print Positioning: Side Edge

Functions	To vary the print start position in the main scan direction for each paper source in the 2-Sided mode.	
Use	The image on the backside of the 2-sided print devi	iates in the main scan direction.
Adjustment Specification	fall within th For measure on the back Backside Specification	the test pattern produced should be following range. Ement, use the image produced side of the test pattern. See 3.0 \pm 0.5 mm (e: -3.0 mm to +3.0 mm (in 0.2 mm increments)
Adjustment Instructions	 If width A is longer than the specifications, make the setting value smaller than the current one. If width A is shorter than the specifications, make the setting value greater than the current one. 	
Setting/ Procedure	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

17.5.4 Printer Resist Loop

Functions	 To set the correction value of the paper loop length for each process speed of Tray 1 to Tray 4, Bypass, and Duplex. To adjust the length of the loop formed in paper before the Registration Rollers. Use "Paper Passage" for paper passage check. 	
Use	When a paper skew occurs. When a paper misfeed occurs.	
Adjustment Range	Different setting ranges are set for different transport speeds. <tray 1="" 4,="" bypass="" lct,="" to="" tray=""> 110 mm/s : -8 to +8 55 mm/s : -15 to +15 <duplex> 110 mm/s : -8 to +8 55 mm/s : -8 to +8 55 mm/s : -8 to +8</duplex></tray>	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Printer Resist Loop]. Select the transport speed. Enter the new setting from the 10-key pad. 	

17.5.5 Color Registration Adjustment

A. Cyan, Magenta, Yellow

Functions	To adjust color shift.	
Use	To correct any color shift	
Adjustment Range	"0" (-6 to +6 dot)	
Adjustment Instructions	If the cross deviates in the direction of C, increase the setting. If the cross deviates in the direction of D, decrease the setting.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Color Registration Adjustment]. Load Tray 1 with A3/11x17 or A4/8 ¹/₂x11 Plain paper. Press the Start key. On the test pattern produced, check for deviation between the black line and the line of each color at positions X and Y. Select the color to be adjusted. Using the [+] / [-] key, change the setting value as necessary. (At this time, only the line of the selected color moves.) Produce another test pattern and make sure that there is no deviation. 	
	Check Procedure	
	Check point X, Y Adjustment for X direction: Check point X If the cross deviates in the direction of C, increase the setting. If the cross deviates in the direction of D,	
	decrease the setting.	
	Direction of C Direction of D	
	Adjustment for Y direction: Check point Y If the cross deviates in the direction of C, increase the setting. If the cross deviates in the direction of D, decrease the setting.	
	Direction of C Direction of D +	

17.5.6 Fusing Loop Size

Functions	To vary the timing to start fusing loop processing and adjust the fusing loop size at Envelope printing.	
Use	To be used when paper wrinkle or transfer misalignment occur at Envelope printing. Adjustment in +: Delay the timing to start fusing loop processing Adjustment in -: Put ahead the timing to start fusing loop processing	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 0.	
Flocedule	"0" (-2 to +2)	

17.5.7 Manual Bypass Tray Adjustment

Functions	To set the maximum width and the minimum width for the Manual Bypass Paper Size Unit of the Manual Bypass Guide	
Use	 Use when the Manual Bypass Paper Size Unit of the Manual Bypass Guide has been changed. Use when a false paper size is displayed when the manual Bypass is used. 	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Machine] → [Manual Bypass Tray Adjustment]. Click [Max. Width]. Load the Bypass Tray with paper having a width of 301 mm. Press the Start key and check that the results are [OK]. Click [Min. Width.]. Load the Bypass Tray with paper having a width of 89 mm. Press the Start key and check that the results are [OK]. Make the adjustment again if the results are [NG]. 	

17.5.8 Lead Edge Erase Adjustment

Functions	To set the leading edge erase amount of the paper.	
Use	To change the width of the area not printed along the leading edge of the paper	
	The default setting is 4 mm.	
Procedure	"4 mm" 5 mm 7 mm	

17.6 Firmware Version

Functions	To check the Firmware version.	
Use	 Use when the firmware is upgraded. When the firmware is upgraded or PWB is replaced. 	
Setting/ Procedure	Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click [Firmware Version]. Select the appropriate key from 1 to 3 to check the Firmware Version.	

17.7 Imaging Process Adjustment

17.7.1 X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)

Functions	To make an automatic adjustment of gradation based on the test pattern produced and the readings taken by the Scanner	
Use	 Color reproduction performance becomes poor. The IU has been replaced. The Image Transfer Belt Unit has been replaced. 	
	 Gradation Mode Resolution Mode	: It gives the highest priority to gradation performance of the image as it adjusts. : It gives the highest priority to reproduction performance
Setting/ Procedure	See P.53	of letters and lines as it adjusts.

17.7.2 D Max Density

Functions	 To adjust gradation, color, and image density to target reproduction levels by varying the maximum amount of toner sticking to paper through auxiliary manual fine-adjust- ment of gamma of each color after Gradation Adjust. 	
Use	An image quality problem is not corrected even after Gradation Adjust has been run.	
Adjustment Range	"0" (-10 to +10)	
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the maximum amount of toner sticking, increase the setting value. To decrease the maximum amount of toner sticking, decrease the setting value.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [D Max Density]. Select the color to be adjusted. Enter the new setting from the 10-key Pad. Click [END] to return to the [Process] menu screen. Click [Stabilizer]. Click [Stabilizer Mode]. Press the Start key to validate the adjustment value. Check the print image for any image problem. NOTE If the setting value has been changed, be sure to run an image stabilization 	
	 If the setting value has been changed, be sure to run an image stabilization sequence to make valid the new value. 	

17.7.3 Background Voltage Margin

	• To adjust the highlight portion (fog level) to the target reproduction level by making an auxiliary manual fine-adjustment of γ of each color after Gradation Adjust.	
Use	Use when a foggy background occurs due to a printer problem	
Adjustment Range	"0" (-5 to +5)	
Adjustment	To make the background level foggier, increase the setting value.	
Instructions	To make the background level less foggy, decrease the setting value.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Background Voltage Margin]. Select the color to be adjusted. Enter the new setting from the 10-key Pad. Click [END] to return to the [Image Adjust] menu screen. Click [Stabilizer]. Click [Stabilization Only]. Press the Start key to validate the adjustment value. Check the print image for any image problem. NOTE If the setting value has been changed, be sure to run an image stabilization 	

17.7.4 Transfer Output Fine Adjustment

A. 2nd Transfer Adjust

Functions	Adjust the 2nd image transfer output (ATVC) on the 1st page and the 2nd page for each paper type.	
Use	To use when the transfer failure at the trailing edge occurs.	
Adjustment Range	"0" (-5 to +5)	
Adjustment Instructions	To increase the ATVC value (in the direction of a foggier image), decrease the setting value. To decrease the ATVC value (in the direction of a less foggy image), increase the setting value.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Transfer Output Fir Adjustment]. Select the side of the image (First side or Second side), on which the transfer failu at the trailing edge occurs. Select the paper type with the transfer failure at the trailing edge. Enter the new setting from the [+] / [-] keys. Click [END] to validate the adjustment value. Check the print image for any image problem. 	

B. 1st Transfer Adjust

Functions	Adjust the output value for the 1st image transfer voltage.	
Use	To use when white spots appeared.	
Adjustment Range	"0" (-5 to +5)	
Adjustment Instructions	Adjust the output value for the 1st image transfer voltage by; Increasing it: Increase the setting value (white spots will decrease) Decreasing it: Decrease the setting value	
Setting/ Procedure	Decreasing it: Decrease the setting value 1. Call the Service Mode to the screen. 2. Select [Test Mode] → [Halftone Pattern] to output the red or green test pattern. See P.289 3. When the test pattern image has white spots, adjust with the following procedure. 4. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Transfer Output Fir Adjustment]. 5. Select [1st transfer Adjust]. 6. Change the setting value using the [+] / [-] keys. 7. Click [OK] key to set the adjustment value. Gradually increase the adjustment value to the acceptable white spots level while checking the test pattern. NOTE PC Drum memory (94mm pitch) may occur by taking measure to white spots occurred by increasing the 1st image transfer voltage to adjust it.	

17.7.5 Stabilizer

A. Stabilization Only

Functions	The image stabilization sequence is carried out without clearing the historical data of image stabilization control.
Use	Use if an image problem persists even after Gradation Adjustment has been executed. When D Max Density and Background Voltage Margin of Service mode are changed.
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Stabilization Only]. Press the Start key to start Stabilizer. The Start key turns orange and stays lit up orange during the Stabilizer sequence. Stabilizer is completed when the Start key turns green.

B. Initialize+Image Stabilization

Functions	 To carry out an image stabilization sequence after the historical data of image stabilization control has been initialized. 	
Use	 Use if an image problem persists even after Gradation Adjustment has been executed. Use if tone reproduction and maximum density are faulty even after Stabilizer Mode has been executed. Use when adjusting the PH skew. 	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Initialize+Image Stabilization]. Press the Start key to start Stabilizer. The Start key turns orange and stays lit up orange during the Stabilizer sequence. Stabilizer is completed when the Start key turns green. 	

Functions	Setting the period of the cycle for image stabilization	
Use	To use when making the period of the cycle before the image stabilization longer.	
Inage stabilization will be conducted by the normal cycle. Brage stabilization will be conducted by the longer period of the cycle.		
Adjustment	The default setting is 1.	
Procedure	"1" 2	

17.7.6 Thick Paper Density Adjustment

Functions	To fine-adjust density of printed images of each color for thick paper and OHP transparencies.	
Use	To change the density of the printed image for each color with thick paper and OHP transparencies	
Adjustment Range	Lighter (5 steps), "Std", Darker (5 steps)	
Adjustment Instructions	Light color: Click the Darker key. Dark color: Click the Lighter key.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Thick Paper Densi Adjustment]. Click the Lighter or Darker key for the desired color to correct the image density. 	

17.7.7 TCR Toner Supply

Functions	 To adjust the set T/C level by replenishing an auxiliary supply of toner when a low ID occurs due to a lowered T/C after large numbers of prints have been made of originals having a high image density. 	
Use	When there is a drop in T/C.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [TCR Toner Supply]. Select the color, for which supply of toner is to be replenished. Pressing the Start key will let the machine detect the current toner density and; if the density is lower than a reference value, a toner replenishing sequence and then a developer agitation sequence are run. These sequences are repeated up to a maximum of four times until the toner density reaches the reference value. If the toner density is found to be higher than the reference value, only a developer agitation sequence is carried out. 	

17.7.8 Monochrome Density Adjustment

Functions	To fine-adjust the density of the printed image for a black print	
Use	To vary the density of the printed image of a black print	
Adjustment Range	Lighter (2 steps), "Std", Darker (2 steps)	
Adjustment Instructions	If the black is light, click the Darker key. If the black is dark, click the Lighter key.	
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Monochrome Density Adjustment]. Click the Lighter or Darker key as necessary to correct the image density. 	

17.7.9 Dev. Bias Choice

Functions	To change the setting of the developing bias voltage. When this function is turned ON, it decreases the developing bias voltage, thereby preventing voltage leak from occurring.		
Use	pressure, such as in high altitud • If ON is set, the screen doesn't	Use when patches of white occur in the image in an ambience of low atmospheric pressure, such as in high altitudes. If ON is set, the screen doesn't display [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust)] and the Gradation Adjust is not allowed.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF. ON	"OFF"	

17.8 CS Remote Care

17.8.1 **Outlines**



- CS Remote Care enables the machine and the computer at CS Remote Care center to exchange data through telephone line in order to control the machine.
 - CS Remote Care enables the machine to call the computer at the center when trouble occurs. It also enables the computer at the center to contact the machine for the necessary data.
 - Data which CS Remote Care handles can be divided into the following groups.
 - a. Data which show the status of use of the machine such as Total count, PM count.
 - b. Data which show the abnormal situation on the machine such as where and how often errors occur.
 - c. Data on adjustment
 - d. Data on setting

№ NOTE

• It cannot be set when the following setting is set to "ON". [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] → [Enhanced Security]

17.8.2 Setting Up the CS Remote Care

NOTE

 For resetting up the machine which CS Remote Care has already been set up, clear the RAM for CS Remote Care before resetting.

See P.255

 When using the telephone line for connection, use the recommended modem. (For recommended modem, contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.)

Step		Procedure		
	Осор	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail	
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
		Turn the power for the modem OFF. Connect the machine and the modem with a modem cable. Connect the modem and the wall jack with a modular cable. * For connecting the modular cable, see the	Be sure to remove the telephone line modem when e-mail is used.	
	2	Clearing the RAM 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remove Care, and click "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click "RAM Clear" key. 3. Select Set, and Click "OK." See P.255		
3 Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care \rightarrow Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Re		Selecting the CS Remote Care function Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care → System Setting, and Click "E-Mail" key.		
	4	Inputting the ID Code 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care → ID Code, and click "ID Code" key. 2. Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and click "ID Code" key again. See P.254		

	Proc	edure					
Step	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail					
5	Setting the date and time for CS Remote Care 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, and click "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click "Date & Time Setting" key. 3. Input the date, time and the time zone using the 10-Key Pad, and click "Set" key. See P.254						
6	Setting the Center ID 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, and click "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click Machine Setting → Center ID, and input the Center ID (five digits). See P.254						
7	Setting the Device ID 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, at 2. Click Machine Setting → Device ID, and inpu See P.254	9 ,					
8	Setting the telephone number of the Center 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, and click "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click Machine Setting → Center Telephone Number key. 3. Input the telephone number of the Center using the 10-Keys Pad and P, T, W, - keys. See P.254	Setting the Respond Timeout 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, and click "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click "Respond Timeout" key and enter the response timeout using the 10-Key Pad. NOTE Under normal conditions, there is no need to change the default setting.] See P.254					
9	Inputting the Device telephone number 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, and click "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click Machine Setting → Device Telephone Number key. 3. Input the Device telephone number using the 10-Key Pad and P, T, W, - keys. See P.254	Proceed to Step 10.					
10	Inputting the AT command for initializing the modem 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care → and click "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click "AT Command" key. 3. Input AT Command. NOTE • Change this Command only when it is necessary. (They do not need to be changed in normal condition.) • For details on AT Command, see the manual for the modem. See P.256	Setting the E-mail address 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, and click "Server Set" key. See P256 2. Click "Server for RX" key, and set POP3 server address, POP3 Login name, POP3 password and POP3 port number. 3. Click "Receive" key, and set the E-Mail address, Mail Check, Connection Time Out and APOP Authentication. 4. Click "Send" key, and set the SMTP server address, SMTP port number, Connection Time Out, and APOP Authentication. 5. Click "TX/RX Test" key, and click Start key to carry out a transmission/reception test. If it fails to exchange messages, see the error message to take necessary measure, and try again.					
11	Setting the DIPSW for CS Remote Care NOTE This setting is not normally necessary. Take this step only when necessary in a specific connecting condition.	Proceed to Step 12.					

Step	Proce	edure
Step	Using the telephone line modem	Using E-mail
12	 Executing the initial transmission 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remote Care, and select "Detail Setting" key. 2. Click "initial transmission" key on the right bottom of the screen to start initial transmission. 3. When the machine is properly connected with the Center, CS Remote Care setting screen will be displayed. NOTE The initial transmission key at the right bottom of the screen will be displayed only when the Center ID, the Device ID, Telephone number of the Center and the Device telephone number have been input. See P.254 	Receiving the initial connection E-mail message Sending the initial connection E-mail messag from the Center to the address of the Printer. NOTE When receiving the initial connection E mail message from the Center while CS Remote Care-related screen is being displayed, the current setting information will be deleted, and CS Remote Care seting will be displayed. For sending the initial connection E-mail see the manual for CS Remote Care Center. Messages can be exchanged only between the Center with initial connection and the Printer. The initial connection from the Center will be carried out, and the E-mail address of the Center will be stored in the Printer. When the initial registration is complete the E-mail address of the Center will be displayed by selecting Service Mode → CS Remote Care → Detail Setting, Basic Setting → E-Mail address.

17.8.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care

NOTE

bizhub C250P/C252P

SW bits data are written into the NVRAM every time a change is made. In case you
changed bit data by accident, be sure to restore the previous state.

A. Input procedure

- Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care] → [Detail Setting], and click [Software Switch Setting].
- 2. Click [Switch No.], and input the SW number (two digits) using the 10-Key Pad.
- Click [Bit Assignment], and select SW bit number using the arrow keys, and input 0 or 1
 using the 10-Key Pad.
 - (For setting by hexadecimal numbers, click [HEX Assignment] key, and input using the 10-Key Pad or A to F keys.)
- 4. Click [Fix].

NOTE

 About functions of each switch, see to "B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care."

B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care

NOTE

· Do not change any bit not described on this table.

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 01	0	Dial Mode	Pulse	Tone	1
	1	Reservation	_	_	0
	2	Reservation	_		0
	3	Reservation	_	_	0
	4	Baud rate	*1	*1	0
	5		*1	*1	0
	6		*1	*1	0
	7		*1	*1	1
SW 02	0	Emergency transmission	Do not call	Call	1
	1	Auto call on date specification	Do not call	Call	1
	2	Reservation	_	_	0
	3	Reservation	_	_	0
	4	Reservation	_	_	0
	5	Auto call on the IC Life	Do not call	Call	1
	6	Auto call on CCD Clamp/Gain Adjustment failure	Do not call	Call	1
	7	Reservation	_		0
SW 03	0	Reservation	_		0
	1	Auto call on the toner empty	Do not call	Call	1
	2	Reservation	_	_	0
	3	Auto call on the waste toner bottle full	Do not call	Call	1
	4 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 04	0 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 05	0	Modem redial interval	*2	*2	1
	1		*2	*2	1
	2		*2	*2	0
	3		*2	*2	0
	4 to 7	Reservation	_		0
SW 06	0	Modem redial times	*3	*3	0
	1		*3	*3	1
	2		*3	*3	0
	3		*3	*3	1
	4		*3	*3	0
	5		*3	*3	0
	6		*3	*3	0
	7	Reservation		_	0
SW 07	0	Redial for response time out	Do not redial	Redial	1
	1 to 7	Reserved	_	_	0
SW 08	0	Retransmission interval on E-Mail deliv-	*4	*4	0
	1	ery error	*4	*4	1
	2		*4	*4	1
	3		*4	*4	0
	4 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 09	0	Retransmission times on E-Mail	*5	*5	0
	1	delivery error	*5	*5	1
	2		*5	*5	0
	3		*5	*5	1
	4		*5	*5	0
	5		*5	*5	0
	6		*5	*5	0
	7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 10	0 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 11	0	Timer 1	*6	*6	0
	1	RING reception → CONNECT reception	*6	*6	0
	2		*6	*6	0
	3		*6	*6	0
	4		*6	*6	0
	5		*6	*6	1
	6		*6	*6	0
	7		*6	*6	0

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 12	0	Timer 2	*7	*7	0
	1	Dial request completed → CONNECT	*7	*7	0
	2	reception	*7	*7	0
	3		*7	*7	0
	4		*7	*7	0
	5		*7	*7	0
	6		*7	*7	1
	7		*7	*7	0
SW 13	0 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 14	0	Timer 4	*8	*8	0
	1	Line connection → Start request	*8	*8	0
	2	telegram delivery	*8	*8	0
	3		*8	*8	0
	4		*8	*8	0
	5		*8	*8	1
	6		*8	*8	0
	7		*8	*8	0
SW 15	0	Timer 5	*9	*9	0
	1	Wait time for other side's response	*9	*9	1
	2		*9	*9	1
	3		*9	*9	1
	4		*9	*9	1
	5		*9	*9	0
	6		*9	*9	0
	7		*9	*9	0
SW 16	0 to 7	Reservation	ı	ı	0
SW 17	0 to 7	Reservation	ı	ı	0
SW 18	0	Attention display To set weather to give the alarm display when using the modem but the power for the modem is OFF.	Do not call	Call	1
	1 to 7	Reservation	_	_	0
SW 19 to SW 40	0 to 7	Reservation			0

*1: Baud rate

Mode	01-7	01-6	01-5	01-4
9600 bps	0	1	1	0
19200 bps	0	1	1	1
"38400 bps"	1	0	0	0

*2: Modem redial interval

Mode	05-3	05-2	05-1	05-0
1 minute	0	0	0	1
2 minutes	0	0	1	0
"3 minutes"	0	0	1	1
4 minutes	0	1	0	0
5 minutes	0	1	0	1
6 minutes	0	1	1	0
7 minutes	0	1	1	1
8 minutes	1	0	0	0
9 minutes	1	0	0	1
10 minutes	1	0	1	0

*3: Modem redial times

Mode	06-6	06-5	06-4	06-3	06-2	06-1	06-0		
0 to 9 times		000 0000 to 000 1001							
"10 times"	0	0	0	1	0	1	0		
11 to 99 times	000 1011 to 110 0011								

*4: Retransmission interval on E-Mail delivery error

Mode	08-3	08-2	08-1	08-0
0 minute	0	0	0	0
10 minutes	0	0	0	1
20 minutes	0	0	1	0
30 minutes	0	0	1	1
40 minutes	0	1	0	0
50 minutes	0	1	0	1
"60 minutes"	0	1	1	0
70 minutes	0	1	1	1
80 minutes	1	0	0	0
90 minutes	1	0	0	1
100 minutes	1	0	1	0
110 minutes	1	0	1	1
120 minutes	1	1	0	0

*5: Retransmission times on E-Mail delivery error

Mode	09-6	09-5	09-4	09-3	09-2	09-1	09-0			
0 to 9 times		000 0000 to 000 1001								
"10 times"	0	0	0	1	0	1	0			
11 to 99 times	000 1011 to 110 0011									

*6: Timer 1 (RING reception \rightarrow CONNECT reception)

Mode	11-7	11-6	11-5	11-4	11-3	11-2	11-1	11-0	
0 to 31 sec		0000 0000 to 0001 1111							
"32 sec"	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	
33 to 255 sec	0010 0001 to 1111 1111								

*7: Timer 2 (Dial request completed → CONNECT reception)

Mode	12-7	12-6	12-5	12-4	12-3	12-2	12-1	12-0		
0 to 63 sec		0000 0000 to 0011 1111								
"64 sec"	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0		
65 to 255 sec	0100 0001 to 1111 1111									

*8: Timer 4 (Line connection → Start request telegram delivery)

Mode	14-7	14-6	14-5	14-4	14-3	14-2	14-1	14-0
0 to 31 (x 100 msec)	0000 0000 to 0001 1111							
"32 (x 100 msec)"	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
33 to 255 (x 100 msec)	0010 0001 to 1111 1111							

*9: Timer 5 (Wait time for other side's response)

Mode	15-7	15-6	15-5	15-4	15-3	15-2	15-1	15-0
0 to 29 sec		0000 0000 to 0001 1101						
"30 sec"	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0
31 to 255 sec	0001 1111 to 1111 1111							

17.8.4 Setup confirmation

- Follow the steps below to make sure that CS Remote Care has been properly set up.
- 1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- 2. Click [CS Remote Care].
- 3. Check to make sure that only selected item is displayed.

17.8.5 Calling the Maintenance

 When CE starts maintenance, inputting the ID code of CE (seven digits: numbers which CE can identify. They are controlled by the distributor.) will transmit the information to the Center side and tells that the maintenance has started. When the maintenance is finished, clicking [Maintenance Complete] key will transmit the information to the Center and tells that it is finished.

A. When starting the Maintenance

- 1. Select Service Mode and click [CS Remote Care].
- 2. Click [ID Code], and input ID Code.
- 3. Click [ID Coke].

B. When finishing the Maintenance

- 1. Select Service Mode and click [CS Remote Care].
- 2. Click [Maintenance Complete].

17.8.6 Calling the Center from the Administrator

- When the CS Remote Care setup is complete, the administrator can call the CS Remote Care center.
- 1. Select [Administrator Setting], and click [System Connection].
- 2. Click [Admin. transmission].
- 3. Press the Start key.

When the setup is not complete or another transmission is being carried out, the Admin. transmission key will not be displayed, and the transmission is not available.

NOTE

 For transmitting data of the machine by calling the center on the specified date and time, refer to the manual for CS Remote Care Center.

17.8.7 Checking the transmission log

- · The transmission log list will be output to be checked.
- 1. Select [Service Mode] → [CS Remote Care], and click [Detail setting].
- 2. Click [Communication Log Print].
- 3. Load Tray 1 or Bypass tray with A4S paper.
- 4. Press the Start key to output transmission log.

^{*} The ready to print LED remains blinking until Maintenance is completed.

17.8.8 Detail on settings

A. System Selection

Functions	To select the system type for remote diagnosis.		
Use	Use to newly build or change the system.		
Setting/ Procedure	Select E-Mail, ModerThe default setting is	*	
	E-Mail	Modem	Fax (Not Used)

B. ID Code

Functions	To register the Service ID.
Use	Use when registering and changing Service ID.
Setting/ Procedure	 Enter a 7-digit code from the 10-Key Pad. (0000001 to 9999999) Registration> Click ID Code and enter the Service ID. Click [ID code] to register the ID. The [Detail Setting] will appear when the ID has been registered.

C. Detail Setting

(1) Basic Setting

Functions	Execute the primary setting.
Use	Use to change the set contents. Use to register the machine to the CS Remote Care Center.
Setting/ Procedure	Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click [CS Remote Care]. Clicking the [Detail Setting] will display the primary setting.
	Primary Setting Set the Center ID, Device ID, and the phone No. When e-mail is selected for system and all setup procedures are completed, E-mail address of the Center is displayed.
	* When entering the phone No, 10-Keys and keys on the screen have following meanings. [-] Pose : Waits to start transmitting after dialing [W] Wait : Detects the dial tone of the other end [T] Tone dial : Carry out tone dialing [P] Pulse dial : Carry out pulse dialing [1],[#] : To be used as necessary
	Initial Transmission Clicking the Initial Transmission key will sent the information to the CS Remote Care Center to register the machine. (Only when the Modem or Fax is selected on the system Input.)

Adjustment / Setting

bizhub C250P/C252P

(2) Date & Time Setting

Functions	To set the data and time-of-day
Use	Use to set or change the date and time-of-day.
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click [CS Remote Care]. Click [Detail Setting] to access Date & Time Setting. Enter the date (month, day and year), time-of-day, and the time zone from the 10-Key Pad.
	5. Click [SET] to start the clock.

(3) RAM Clear

	Functions	 To clear the following data at the ID Code, Primary Setting, Date/Ti Command. 	Center me Input (Time Zone), Software SW Setting and AT	
	Use	To be used for setting CS Remote To be used for reset the every dat NOTE		
<u> </u>		 If RAM Clear is selected during implemented at the time the tra it is done properly or not. 	transmission, RAM clear processing will be insmission is completed regardless of whether ag the following setting to "ON". etting] → [Enhanced Security]	
	Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "Unset." Set	"Unset"	

(4) Communication Log Print

Functions	To print out the Communication Log.
Use	Use to output and use the Communication Log.
	 Call the Service Mode on the screen. Click [CS Remote Care]. Click [Detail Setting] to access Communication Log Print. Load Tray 1 or Bypass Tray with A4S or 8 1/2 x 11 paper. Press Start key to print out the Communication Log.

(5) Software SW

Functions	To change the CS Remote Care settings.
Use	To change the settings for CS Remote Care as necessary.
Setting/ Procedure	See P.248

⚠ (6) Response Time Out

Functions	It sets the intervals for resending E-Mails when transmission error occurred. It can be set only when [E-Mail] is selected by System Setting.
Use	 To use when changing the intervals for resending E-Mails when transmission error occurred.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 60 minute.
	"60 minute" (10 to 1440)

(7) AT Command

	 To set the command to be issued at the time of Modem Initialization. This setting is available only when [Modem] is selected for the system setting.
Use	To set the command to be issued at the time of Modern Initialization.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the command and click [SET] to register.

↑ D. Server Setting

• Server Setting can be set only when [E-Mail] is selected by System Setting.

(1) Server for RX

<POP3 server>

Functions	To set the POP3 server address used for the CS Remote Care.
Use	 To set the address of the POP3 Server. POP3 server address can be set with IP address or the domain name.
Setting/ Procedure	IP Address IP Address Version 4 format [0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255]
	<input fqdn=""/> • Enter the domain name.

<POP3 login name>

Functions	To set the logon name for the POP3 server used for the CS Remote Care.
Use	To set the logon name for the POP3 server.
	The default setting is No. Up to 64 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.

<POP3 password>

Functions	To set the logon password for the POP3 server used for the CS Remote Care.
Use	To set the logon password for the POP3 server.
	The default setting is No. Up to 15 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.

<POP3 port number>

Functions	To set the POP3 port number used for the CS Remote Care.
Use	To set the port number for the POP3 server.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 110. "110" (1 to 65535)

(2) Receive

<E-mail Address>

Functions	To set the e-mail address used for the CS Remote Care.
Use	To set the e-mail address.
Setting/ Procedure	 The default setting is No. Up to 129 characters (alphanumeric characters and symbols) can be used.

<Mail Check>

Functions	To set whether or not to use Mail Check and the time interval for the POP server used for the CS Remote Care.	
Use	 To set whether or not to use Mail Check and the time interval for the POP server used for the CS Remote Care. To change the time interval for Mail Check. 	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is No. "No" (1 to120 min., No)	

<Connection timeout>

Functions	To set the timeout period for connection during reception.
Use	To change the timeout period for connection during reception.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 60 Sec.
	"60 Sec" (30 to 300 Sec)

<APOP Authentication>

Functions	To set whether or not to authenticate the AP	OP during reception.
Use	To authenticate the APOP during reception.	
	The default setting is No.	
Procedure	Yes	"No"

(3) Send

<SMTP server>

Functions	To set the SMTP sever address for transmission used for the CS Remote Care.
Use	To set the SMTP server address SMTP server address can be set by the IP address or the domain name.
Setting/ Procedure	<input address="" ip=""/> • IP Address Version 4 format [0 to 255].[0 to 255].[0 to 255]
	<input fqdn=""/> • Enter the domain name.

<SMTP port number>

Functions	To set the SMTP port number for transmission used for the CS Remote Care.
Use	To set the Port Number of the SMTP Server.
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is 25. #957 (4.1. 05505)
	"25" (1 to 65535)

<SMTP Connection Time-out>

Functions	To set the timeout period for transmission.
Use	To change the timeout period for connection during transmission.
Setting/	The default setting is 60 Sec.
Procedure	"60 Sec" (30 to 300 Sec)

<Authentication Setting>

Functions	To set whether or not to authenticate during transmission via SMTP server.
Use	To use when authenticating during transmission. Available authentication mode: POP Before SMTP, SMTP authentication
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.
Procedure	"OFF" POP Before SMTP SMTP Authentication
	* Setting to "POP Before SMTP" will set the time for POP Before SMTP.
	The default setting is 60 Sec. "60 Sec" (0 to 60 Sec)
	* When setting to SMTP authentication, click the "Setting Check" key for authentication. User ID : Enter the User ID for SMTP authentication. Password : Enter the password for SMTP authentication. Domain name : Enter the domain name for SMTP authentication.

<TX/RX Test>

Functions	To determine the correct transmission and reception using CS Remote Care.
Use	Use to determine the correct transmission and reception using CS Remote Care.
	 Press the Start key to let the machine start the transmission and reception test. The test procedure and result will be displayed on the screen.

<Data Initialization>

Functions	To initialize the contents for the sever setting.		
Use	Use to initialize the contents for the server setting.		
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is No.		
Flocedule	Yes	"No"	

17.8.9 List of the CS Remote Care error code

A. When Connecting by Modem

	۸	
- 7	4	۸.
/	ı	١,

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	The line is busy (Busy detection)	Transmit again manually.
0002	Failure of the Modem default setting at transmitting (When the transmission completes with modem initial setting failed)	Check if the power of the modem is ON. Check the connecting conditi between the modem and the main unit.
0003	Timeout of CONNECT at transmitting (No response to ATD)	Transmit again manually Check if the power of the modem is ON. Check the connecting condition between the modem and the main unit.
0005	Timeout of CONNECT at receiving (No response to ATA)	Check if the power of the modem is ON. Check the connecting condit between the modem and the main unit.
0006	Shut down of the data modem line (Host) (Carrier OFF is detected)	No solution, because the line shut down at the host side.
8000	Timeout of start request telegram delivery (Start request telegram is not delivered after line connection)	Transmit again manually.
0009	Timeout of finish request telegram delivery (Finish request telegram is not delivered (Start of shut down).)	Transmit again manually.
000A	Receiving rejection (Receiving is made when the main unit is set to reject receiving.)	Check the setting condition the host side. Check the setting condition the main unit side.
000B	RS232C Driver Over Run (When the modem detects Over Run.)	If the same error is detected several times, turn the mode power OFF and ON.
000C	If the same error is detected several times, turn the modem power OFF and ON.	If the same error is detected several times, turn the mode power OFF and ON.
000D	Break Interrupt (BI) Indicator (When the modem detects Break Interrupt (BI) Indicator.)	If the same error is detected several times, turn the mode power OFF and ON.
0011	Baud Rate ERROR (When selected Baud Rate is out of the specifica- tion (9600 bps to 38400 bps).)	Check the Baud rate of the software DipSW.
0018	Machine ID has already been registered (Request telegram 2 (SET-UP) comes from the main unit that has already registered Machine ID.)	Set the initial registrations again for all including the ho side.
0019	Center ID Error (Center ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	Check Center ID setting of t main unit side. Check Center ID setting of t main unit side.

/î\	Error code	Error	Solution
	001A	Device ID inconsistency (Device ID of the host is not identical with the one of start request telegram.)	Check Device ID setting of the main unit side. Check the setting of the host side.
	001B	Device ID Unregistered (Request telegram 2 (Constant data transmitting, Emergency call) comes from the main unit that has not registered Machine ID yet.)	Check Device ID setting of the main unit side. Check the setting of the host side.
	001E	Impossible to change (During printing) (Setting cannot be changed because the setting change is made during the machine is printing or starts printing.)	Try again when the machine is not printing.
	0020	Timeout of Telegram Delivery (At waiting mode of telegram delivery the machine fails to receive the telegram in a given time.)	Try communication again.
	0027	Transmission / Receiving collision (Receiving is detecting during transmitting processing)	Try communication again.

⚠ NOTE

 When a code other than the ones listed above is displayed, contact KONICA MINOLTA and inform the error code.

B. When connecting by E-Mails

Error code	Error	Solution
0001	Connection Timeout during transmission	Check the SMTP Server on User side.
0###	Transmission error ***: SMTP responding code (hexadecimal)	Check the SMTP Server on User side.
0003	Connection timeout when receiving	Check the POP3 Server on User side.
0005	Receiving error	Check the POP3 Server on User side.
1030	Machine ID mismatching Received an E-Mail which tells that Machine ID mismatches.	Check the Machine ID setting. Check the Machine ID setting on host side.
1062	Modifying not available due to the copy job currently performing When informing the host that it cannot be modified due to the copy job currently performing.	Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1081	Frame No. error The last frame has not been received. There are missing frame No.	Check the status of the Machine registration on host side.
1084	Date expired Expiration date for data modification command has passed.	Ask the host to send another instruction mail for modifying.
1092	Received an error mail when Center setup is not complete	Check the status of the Machine registration on host side.
2039	Socket is not connected. • LAN cable on the Copier side is detached.	Check the SMTP Server and POP3 Server on User side.
203E	Network is down. • LAN cable on the Copier side is detached.	Check the connection between the Copier on the User's side and the Network connector. Check the Network environment on the User's side.
3000	POP3_AUTHORIZATION_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3001	POP3_TRANSACTION_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3002	POP3_CONNECT_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3003	POP3_TIMEOUT_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3004	POP3_FORMAT_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3005	POP3_MEMORY_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3006	POP3_JOBID_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3007	POP3_NO_DATA_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.

Error code	Error	Solution
3008	POP3_DELETE_FAIL_ERR	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
3009	POP3_MAILBOX_FULL	Check the POP3 Server envi- ronment on User's side.
4103	Not Ready Tried to transmit or receive an E-Mail when the machine was not yet in the E-Mail receiving status after power was turned ON.	Wait for a while and try trans- mitting again.
4104	SMTP Channel Not Ready	Wait for a while and try trans- mitting again.
4105	POP3 Channel Not Ready	Wait for a while and try trans- mitting again.
4106	Not Ready other than the ones listed above.	Wait for a while and try trans- mitting again.

NOTE

 When a code other than the ones listed above is displayed, contact KONICA MINOLTA and inform the error code.

17.8.10 Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care

If communication is not done properly during use of the modem, check the condition by following the procedures shown below.

- Is the Modem power ON?
- Is the phone line normally connected?

17.9 System 1

17.9.1 Marketing Area

Functions	To make the various settings (language, paper size, fixed zoom ratios, etc.) according to the applicable marketing area.		
Use	Upon setup.		
Setting/ Procedure		cable marketing area and click [END] to set the marketing area. JAPAN US Europe Others1 Others2 Others3 Others4 anguages that can be selected on the Utility screen according to	
	Japan	English, Japanese	
	US	English, French, Spanish, Japanese	
	Europe	English, French, Italian, German, Spanish, Japanese	
	Others1	English, French, Spanish, Japanese	
	Others2	English, French, Spanish, Hangul	
	Others3	Simplified Chinese, English	
	Others4	Traditional Chinese, English	

17.9.2 Serial Number

	Functions	 To register the serial numbers of the machine and options. The numbers will be printed on the list output.
À	Use	Upon setup. NOTE When Main-power was turned ON while the Serial No. was not entered (including initial status), the message to require entering the Serial No. will be displayed. Make sure to enter the Serial No. at setup.
	Setting/ Procedure	Type the serial numbers. 9 digits (0 to 9) Printer, LCT, Sorter/FN, Duplex

17.9.3 No Sleep

Functions	To display the option of "OFF" for the Sleep Mode Setting screen available from Administrator Setting.	
Use	To display the option of "OFF" for the Sleep Mode Setting. NOTE The sleep mode will begin in 48 hours even if it sets it to "OFF."	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "Prohibit." Permit	"Prohibit"

17.9.4 Foolscap Size Setting

Functions	To set the size for Foolscap paper.
Use	Upon setup. To change the size for Foolscap paper.
Setting/ Procedure	Select the size from among the following five.
riocedule	220 x 330 mm 8 1/2 x 13 8 1/4 x 13 8 1/8 x 13 1/4 8 x 13

17.9.5 Install Date

Functions	To register the date the main unit was installed.	
Use	Upon setup.	
Setting/	1. Call the Service Mode on the screen.	
Procedure	 Select the key as follows. [System 1] → [Install Date]. Enter the date (Year 4 digit → Month 2 digit → date 2 digit) from the 10-Key Pad. Click [Entry] to set the date of installation. 	

17.9.6 Initialization

A. Data Clear

Functions	To initialize the setting data.
Use	To clears the setting data. For details on items to be cleared, "Contents to be cleared by Reset function." See P.302
	NOTE When removing or installing the hard disk after registering the data below, be sure to clear the data. Referring data: One-Touch Registration, User Authentication/Account Track.
Setting/ Procedure	 Call the Service Mode on the screen. Select the key as follows. [System 1] → [Initialization] → [Data clear]. Press the Start key. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

B. System Error Clear

Functions	To reset the trouble data.
Use	Use to clear the [Jam], [Trouble], [Error] displays, and other improper displays. For details on items to be cleared, "Contents to be cleared by Reset function." See P.302
Setting/Procedure	 Call the Service Mode on the screen. Select the key as follows. [System 1] → [Initialization] → [System Error Clear]. Press the Start key. When [OK] is displayed, turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.



<u>^2</u> 17.9.7 **Communication System Setting**

Functions	To select communication system used for RS-232C port.			
Use	 To switch RS-232C port in order to connect with the CS remote care modem or the JScribe- enabled-device. Communication requirements for each setting are shown below. 			
		CS Remote Care	JScribe1	JScribe2
	Baud rate	9,600 bps	19,200 bps	19,200 bps
	Data bit	8 bit	7 bit	8 bit
	Parity bit	None	Odd	None
	Stop bit	1 bit	1 bit	1 bit
Setting/ Procedure	Sequential numb The default setting	unction is used, the er print, Copy Prote is CS Remote Care.	ct	
	"CS Remote	e Care	JScribe1	JScribe2

17.10 System 2

17.10.1 HDD

Functions	To configure the printer as necessary when a hard disk is mounted.	
Use	Use when the hard disk is mounted	
Setting/Pro-	The default setting is "Unset"	
cedure	Set	"Unset"
	NOTE • After changing setting, make sure to turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.	

17.10.2 Image Controller Setting

Functions	To set the type of the controller. [Peripheral Mode] appears when [Others] is selected.		
Use	When setting up the controller.		
Setting/ Procedure	Image Controller Setting Select the controller to be used. "Controller 0" : The standard controller is used. Controller 1 : An external controller is used. Controller 2 : An external controller is used. Controller 3 : An external controller is used. Others : An external controller is used. Others : An external controller is used. See the Setup Instructions for the Controller. Peripheral Mode Select the operating mode of the Scanner. Mode 1: Not use Mode 2: Not use Mode 3: Not use		

17.10.3 Option Board Status

Functions	To set when the Optional Local Interface Kit is mounted.	
Use	Use when setting up the Optional Local Interface Kit is mounted.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is "Unset."	
	local I/F :Set "Unset"	
	NOTE • After changing setting, make sure to turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.	

17.10.4 Unit Change

Functions	To select who is to replace a unit. When the unit life arrives, the warning display is intended for the specific person who is going to replace the unit. When "User" is selected : Printing is inhibited. When "Service" is selected : Life warning.		
Use	Upon setup		
Setting/ Procedure	The following are the default settings: US, Japan, Others 4		
	Toner Cartridge : "User" Service "User" Service Imaging Unit : User "Service" "User" Service Waste Toner Box : User "Service" "User" Service Punch Dust Box : User "Service" "User" Service		

17.10.5 Software Switch Setting

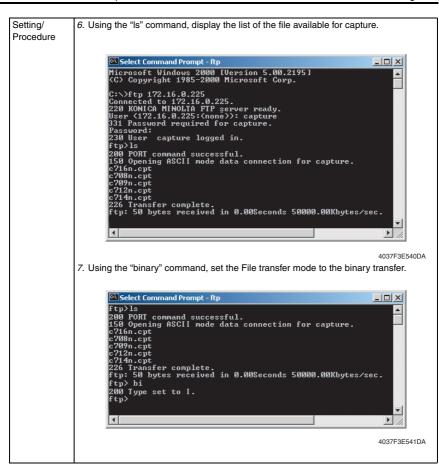
Functions	
Use	Not Used
Setting/ Procedure	1.00.0000

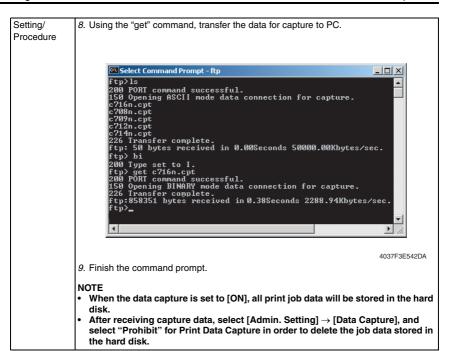
17.10.6 LCT Paper Size Setting

Functions	To set the paper size for the LCT		
Use	Use to change the paper size for the LCT.		
Setting/	The default setting depends on the setting made for the applicable marketing area.		
Procedure	A4 8 1/2 x 11		

17.10.7 Data Capture

Functions	 When an error occurs, it acquires the print job data in order to analyze the cause of the error.
Use	 When an error occurs, this will be used to analyze the cause of the error according to the print job data.
Setting/ Procedure	NOTE • The following conditions are necessary for this function. When selecting [Data Capture] in Admin. Setting, "Permit" must be set. The hard disk must be mounted to the machine.
	 Select [Service Mode] → [System 2] of the Jig software, and click [Data Capture]. Select [ON]. (While the Data Capture setting is [ON], the print job data from the PC will be stored in the hard disk.) Check the IP address of the machine. Connect the PC (Windows) and the machine with Ethernet cable. Start the DOS command prompt of the PC, and specify the IP address of the machine to start FTP.
	Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195] (C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp. C:\ftp 172.16.0.225 Connected to 172.16.0.225. 220 KONICA MINOLIA FTP gerver ready.
	4037F3E538DA
	5. Input the user name and the password. User name: capture Password: sysadm
	Microsoft Windows 2000 [Version 5.00.2195] (C) Copyright 1985-2000 Microsoft Corp. C:\\formalfontarrow\formalfont\formal





17.11 Counter

• The Counter displays the counts of various counters to allow the Technical Representative to check or set as necessary.

17.11.1 Procedure

- 1. Click [Counter] to show the Counter menu.
- 2. Select the specific counter to be displayed.
- 3. To clear the counts of two or more counters within a group or across different groups at once, click [Counter Reset], select the specific counters to be cleared, and click [END]. Two or more counters can be selected.

17.11.2 Life

	T 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
Functions	To check the number of hours or times each of the different maintenance parts has		
	been used.		
	To clear the co	unt of each counte	r.
Use	When each of the maintenance parts is replaced.		arts is replaced.
Setting/	 To clear the co 	unt of a counter, se	elect the specific part and press the Clear key.
Procedure	If a counter is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing		press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing
	operation.		
			t of the counters for the Fusing Unit, Transfer Belt
	Unit, and IU, w	thich are provided w	with a new unit detection function.
	<1>		
	 Fusing Unit 		: Number of times a sheet of paper is fed through
	 Transfer Roller 	Unit	: Number of times a sheet of paper is fed through
	 Image Transfe 	r Belt Unit	: Number of times a sheet of paper is fed through
	 Paper dust ren 	nover/Ozone Filter	: Number of times a sheet of paper is fed through
	• 1st.		: Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 1
	• 2nd.		: Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 2
	• 3rd.		: Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 3
	• 4th.		: Number of sheets of paper fed from Tray 4
	 Manual Tray 		: Number of sheets of paper fed from the Bypass
	<2>		
	 Cyan IU 	: Period of time ov	er which the Cyan Developing Unit has been used.
	 Magenta IU 		er which the Magenta Developing Unit has been
		used.	
	Yellow IU		er which the Yellow Developing Unit has been used.
	Black IU		er which the Black Developing Unit has been used.
	LCT Parts		s of paper fed from the LCT
	ADF Feed	: Not Used.	
	ADF Reverse		
	Sorter/Finisher	r: Number of sheet	s of paper fed out of the Sorter/Finisher

17.11.3 Jam

Functions	 To check the number of misfeeds that have occurred at different locations in the machine. To clear the count of each counter.
Use	To check the number of paper misfeeds that have occurred
	 To clear the count of a counter, select the specific part and press the Clear key. If a counter is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation.

17.11.4 Service Call Counter

Functions	 To check the number of malfunctions that have occurred at different locations in the machine To clear the count of each counter.
Use	To check the number of malfunctions that have occurred
	 To clear the count of a counter, select the specific part and press the Clear key. If a counter is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation.

17.11.5 Warning

Functions	 To check the number of warning conditions detected according to the warming type To clear the count of each counter. 		
Use	To check the number of warning conditions that have been detected		
Setting/ Procedure	 To clear the count of a counter, select the specific part and press the Clear key. If a counter is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation. When a warning condition occurs, an oil mark appears at the lower left corner of the Basic screen. Clicking the oil mark will display the warning code screen. 		

17.11.6 Maintenance

Functions	To set a count value for maintenance of any given part.				
Use	When any given part is replaced.				
Setting/	MaintSet				
Procedure	Enter the maintenance counter value from the 10-Key Pad.				
	MaintCount				
	Counts up when a sheet of paper is fed through the machine.				
	Pressing the Clear key will clear the count.				
	If the count is cleared mistakenly, press the Interrupt key, which will undo the clearing operation.				

17.11.7 Service Total Counter

⚠ A. Total

Functions	To display the count value for the service total counter.				
Use	 Use to check the total No. of printed pages including the ones printed by the Service Mode. 				
Setting/ Procedure	Service Total : No. of pages printed by User mode and Service Mode. Service Total (Duplex) : No. of pages printed by User mode and Service Mode in Duplex.				

⚠ B. Paper Size

Functions	To display the count value for Service Total Counter of each paper size.			
Use	To check the total number of printed pages including the one at Service Mode			
	according to each paper size.			

17.11.8 Counter of Each Mode

Functions	To display the printed pages in the specified mode. It also displays the count value of using the specified mode.		
Use	 Use to check the printed pages in the specified mode, as well as No. of times each mode was used, in order to know the using condition. 		

17.11.9 Service Call History (Data)

Functions	To display the trouble history in chronological order.			
Use	Use to check the trouble history in chronological order.			

17.11.10 Paper Jam History

	Functions	To display the jam history in chronological order.		
Λ	/\ Use			
		NOTE • [Code] displayed on the screen of JAM history indicates JAM code. For details of JAM code, see "Trouble shooting" on page 316.		

17.12 List Output

17.12.1 Machine Management List

Functions	To produce an output of a list of setting values, adjustment values, Total Counter values, and others.			
Use	At the end of setup or when a malfunction occurs.			
Procedure	 Load the A4S plain paper to a paper source. Press the Start key, which will let the machine produce the list. The time-of-day and date will also be printed. 			

17.12.2 Adjustment List

Functions	 To output the adjustment list for machine adjustment, process adjustment, etc. in Service Mode. 			
Use	At the end of setup or when a malfunction occurs.			
ooug,	 Load the A4S plain paper to a paper source. Press the Start key, which will let the machine produce the list. The time-of-day and date will also be printed. 			

17.13 State Confirmation

17.13.1 Sensor Check

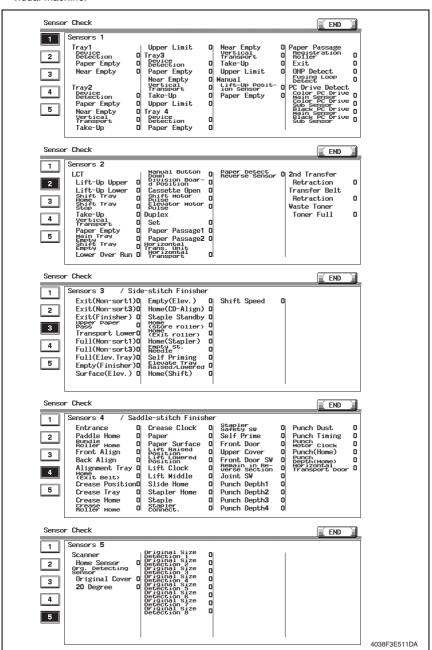
Functions	To display the states of the input ports of sensors and switches when the machine remains stationary.
Use	Used for troubleshooting when a malfunction or a misfeed occurs.
Setting/ Procedure	 The operation of each of the switches and sensors can be checked on a real-time basis. It can be checked as long as the 5-V power line remains intact even when a cover is open.

A. Electrical Components Check Procedure Through Input Data Check

- When a paper misfeed occurs in the paper feed section of the machine, the Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor is considered to be responsible for it.
- 1. Remove the sheet of paper misfed.
- From the Sensor Check List that follows, check the panel display of the Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor. For the Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor, you check the data of "Take-Up" of "Tray 2."
- 3. Call the Service mode to the screen.
- Select [State Confirmation] → [Sensor Check] and then select the screen that contains "Take-Up" under "Tray 2." For "Take-Up" under "Tray 2," select "1" on the left-hand side of the screen.
- 5. Check that the data for "Take-Up" under "Tray 2" is "0" (sensor blocked).
- 6. Move the actuator to unblock the Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor.
- 7. Check that the data for "Take-Up" under "Tray 2" changes from "0" to "1" on the screen.
- 8. If the input data is "0," change the sensor.

B. Sensor Check Screens

 These are only typical screens which may be different from what are shown on each individual machine.



C. Sensor Check List

(1) Sensors 1 (Main Unit, PC-103, PC-203)

Symbol F		anel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
				1	0
PC12	Tray 1	Device Detection	Tray 1 Set Sensor	In position	Out of position
PC10		Paper Empty	Tray 1 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC11		Near Empty	Tray 1 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC2-PC	Tray 2	Device Detection	Tray 2 Set Sensor	In position	Out of position
PC6-PC		Paper Empty	Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC1-PC		Near Empty	Tray 2 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC8-PC		Vertical Transport	Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-PC		Take-Up	Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC7-PC		Upper Limit	Tray 2 Lift-Up Sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
PC112-PC	Tray 3	Device Detection	Tray 3 Set Sensor	In position	Out of position
PC115-PC		Paper Empty	Tray 3 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC113-PC		Near Empty	Tray 3 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC117-PC		Vertical Transport	Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC116-PC		Take-Up	Tray 3 Paper Take-Up Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC114-PC		Upper Limit	Tray 3 Lift-Up Upper Limit Sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
PC121-PC	Tray 4	Device Detection	Tray 4 Set Sensor	In position	Out of position
PC124-PC		Paper Empty	Tray 4 Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present
PC122-PC		Near Empty	Tray 4 Paper Near-Empty Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC126-PC		Vertical Transport	Tray 4 Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC125-PC		Take-Up	Tray 4 Paper Take-Up Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC123-PC		Upper Limit	Tray 4 Lift-Up Sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
PC14	Man- ual	Lift-Up Position Sensor	Bypass Lift-Up Sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position
PC13		Paper Empty	Bypass Paper Empty Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present

Symbol	Panel Display		Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display	
				1	0
PC1	Paper Pas-	Registration Roller	Registration Roller Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC2	sage	Exit	Exit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC4		OHP Detect	OHP Sensor	OHP	Not OHP
PC3		Fusing Loop Detect	Fusing Paper Loop Sensor	Loop present	Loop not present
PC17	PC Drive	Color PC Drive Main Sensor	Color PC Drum Main Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC18	Detect	Color PC Drive Sub Sensor	Color PC Drum Sub Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC15		Black PC Drive Main Sensor	K PC Drum Main Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC16		Black PC Drive Sub Sensor	K PC Drum Sub Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked

(2) Sensors 2 (Main Unit, PC-403)

Symbol	Pa	anel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteristics/ Panel Display		
				1	0	
PC4-LCT	LCT	Lift-Up Upper	Lift-Up Upper Sensor	At raised position	Not at raised position	
PC13-LCT		Lift-Up Lower	Lift-Up Lower Sensor	At lower limit	Not at lower limit	
PC12-LCT		Shift Tray Home	Shift Tray Home Sensor	At home	Out of home	
PC11-LCT		Shift Tray Stop	Shift Tray Stop Sensor	At stop posi- tion	Not at stop position	
PC1-LCT		Take-Up	Paper Take-up Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC2-LCT		Vertical Transport	Vertical Transport Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC3-LCT		Paper Empty	Paper Empty Board	Paper present	Paper not present	
PWB-E LCT		Main Tray Empty	Main Tray Empty Sensor Board	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC9-LCT		Shift Tray Empty	Shift Tray Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC7-LCT		Lower Over Run	Lower Over Run Sensor	Malfunction	Operational	
NU1-LCT		Manual Button Down	Manual Button Down Board	ON	OFF	
PC14-LCT		Division Board Position	Division Board Motor	At home	Out of home	
PC6-LCT		Cassette Open	Cassette Open Sensor	In position	Out of posi- tion	
PC8-LCT		Shift Motor Pulse	Shift Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked	
PC10-LCT		Elevator Motor Pulse	Elevator Motor Pulse Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked	
PCI DU	Duplex	Set	Duplex Unit Door Set Sensor	Close	Open	
PI1 DU		Paper Passage1	Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC2 DU		Paper Passage2	Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 2	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC1-HO	Hori- zontal	Horizontal Transport	Paper Sensor	Paper not present	Paper present	
PC6-HO	Trans. Unit	Paper Detect Reverse Sensor	Turnover Empty Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present	
PC7	2nd Trans- fer	Retraction	2nd Image Transfer Pressure Position Sensor	Not Retracted	Retracted	
PC6	Trans- fer Belt	Retraction	1st Image Transfer Pressure/ Retraction Position Sensor	Not Retracted	Retracted	
PC8	Waste Toner	Toner Full	Waste Toner Full Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked	

(3) Sensors 3 ② • When the finisher FS-501 is mounted.

Symbol	Panel Display		Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteris- tics/Panel Display	
				1	0
PC1-FN	Multi Staple	Exit (Non-sort1)	1st Tray Exit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC19-FN	Finisher	Exit (Non-sort3)	Job Tray Exit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC3-FN		Exit (Finisher)	Storage Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC4-FN		Upper Paper Pass	Upper Entrance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC2-FN		Transport Lower	Lower Entrance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC6-FN		Full (Non-sort1)	1st Tray Full Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC20-FN		Full (Non-sort3)	Job Tray Full Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC7-FN		Full (Elev. Tray)	Elevator Tray Full Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC5-FN		Empty (Finisher)	Finisher Tray Paper Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PWB-D FN		Surface (Elev.)	Elevator Tray Upper Limit Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC8-FN		Empty (Elev.)	Elevator Tray Paper Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC9-FN		Home (CD-Align)	CD Aligning Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC14-FN		Staple Standby	Staple Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC12-FN		Home (Store roller)	Storage Roller Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC13-FN		Home (Exit roller)	Exit Roller Home Position Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
_		Staple Home	Staple Home 1	Unblocked	Blocked
_		Staple Empty	Staple Empty 1	Unblocked	Blocked
		Self Priming	Staple Self Priming 1	Unblocked	Blocked
S2-FN S3-FN		Elevator Tray Upper Limit	Elevator Tray Upper Limit Switch Elevator Tray Upper Limit Switch	ON	OFF
PC10-FN		Shift Home	Shift Home Position Sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC11-FN		Shift Motor Pulse	Shift Motor Pulse Sensor	Unblocked	Blocked

• When the finisher FS-514 is mounted.

Symbol		Panel display	Part/signal name	Operation characteristics/ Panel display	
				1	0
PC1		Carrying Paper Passage	Entrance sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC2		Middle Paper Passage	Transport sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC7		Home1 (CD-Align)	Alignment home position sensor /1	At home	Not at home
PC8		Home2 (CD-Align)	Alignment home position sensor /2	At home	Not at home
S3		Elevate Tray Raised/ Lowered	Elevator tray switch	ON	OFF
S2		Shutter	Shutter detect switch	Closed	Open
S1		Front Cover	Front door switch	Closed	Open
PC700		Punch Pulse	Punch motor pulse sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC23-SK		Home (Saddle In and Out)	In & out guide home sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC13		Elevate Tray Lowered	Elevator tray lower limit sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC12		Surface (Elev.)	Elevator top face detection sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
_	er 1	Elevate Tray Proliferation	Short connector	Set	Not set
PC11	Finisher	Elevate Position	Elevator tray home position sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC14	Built-In	Home (Shutter)	Shutter home position sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC6	Bui	Home (Exit Paddle)	Exit paddle home position sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC5		Home (Exit R)	Exit roller home position sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC3		Empty (Finisher)	Storage tray detect sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC9		Home (Staple CD)	Staple home position sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
_		Self Printing	Self-priming sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
_		Staple Empty	Staple empty detection sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
_		Home (Stapler)	Staple home position sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC500		Punch Position1	Punch cam sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC600		Punch Position2	Punch home position sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC30		Punch Dust Full	Punch Trash full sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
PC4		Remain in Reverse Section	Entrance switch back sensor	Unblocked	Blocked
PC10		Stapler Save Position	Stapler save position sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
M9		Fan Motor Lock	Cooling fan motor	When turning	When stopped
S4		Exit OP Machine Set	Slide switch	Set	Not set

(4) Sensors 4

• When the finisher FS-603 is mounted.

		Panel Display	Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteris- tics/Panel Display	
			3	1	0
PI1-FN	Sad- dle	Entrance	Entrance Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PI2-FN	Stitch Fin-	Paddle Home	Paddle Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI3-FN	isher	Bundle Roller Home	Swing Guide Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI4-FN		Front Align	Front Aligning Plate Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI5-FN		Back Align	Rear Aligning Plate Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI6-FN		Alignment Tray	Finisher Tray Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PI7-FN		Home (Exit Belt)	Exit Belt Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI10-FN		Crease Position	Folding Position Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PI13-FN		Crease Tray	Saddle Tray Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PI11-FN		Crease Home	Folding Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI12-FN		Crease Roller Home	Folding Roller Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI14-FN		Crease Clock	Staple/Folding Motor Clock Sensor		
PI8-FN		Paper	Exit Tray Sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PI9-FN		Paper Surface	Exit Tray Home Position Sensor	Paper surface detected	
PI15-FN		Lift Raised Position	Shift Upper Limit Sensor	Upper limit	
PI16-FN		Lift Lowered Position	Shift Lower Limit Sensor	Lower limit	
PI17-FN		Lift Clock	Shift Motor Clock Sensor		
_		Lift Middle		Paper full	-
PI18-FN		Slide Home	Slide Home Position Sensor		HP
PI19-FN		Stapler Home	Staple Drive Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI20-FN		Staple	Staple Detecting Sensor	Staples loaded	No staple loaded
_		Stapler Connect.	_		Stapler connection detected
MS3-FN		Stapler Safety SW	Staple Safety Switch (Rear)	Open	
PI21-FN		Self Prime	Self-Priming Sensor		READY
PI22-FN		Front Door	Front Door Open Sensor		Open
PI23-FN		Upper Cover	Upper Cover Open Sensor		Open

пg	
₽.	
Se	
<u> </u>	
듰	
Ĕ	
₽	

Symbol	ol Panel Display		Part/Signal Name	Operation Characteris- tics/Panel Display	
				1	0
MS1-FN	Sad-	Front Door SW	Front Door Open Sensor		Open
_	dle Stitch Fin-	Remain in Reverse Section	_		Paper horiz. side
MS2-FN	isher	Joint SW	Joint Open Sensor		Open
_	Punch	Punch Depth1	_		
_	Unit	Punch Depth2	_		
_		Punch Depth3	_		
_		Punch Depth4	_		
_		Punch Dust	_	Punch trash	
_		Punch Timing	_		
PI3P-PK		Punch Motor Clock	Punch Motor Clock Sensor	Blocked	
PI1P-PK		Punch (Home)	Punch Home Position Sensor	HP	
PI2P-PK		Punch Depth Home	Side Registration Home Sensor	HP	
РС6-НО		Horizontal Transport Door	Horizontal Unit Door Sensor	Blocked	Unblocked



• When the finisher SD-503/MT-501 is mounted.

Symbol		Panel display	Part/Signal name		characteris- el display
		. ,		1	0
PC20-SK		Saddle exit	Saddle exit sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC22-SK		Folding R home	Crease roller home position sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
S5		Middle guide	Middle guide switch	Open	Closed
PC24-SK		Saddle guide	Layable guide home sensor	Blocked	Unblocked
		Saddle stapler 1			
	r 2	Home	Staple Home Position Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
	Finisher	Staple empty	Staple Empty Detection Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
		Self priming	Self-Priming Sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
	Built-In	Saddle stapler 2			
_	Bui	Home	Staple Home Position Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
_		Staple empty	Staple Empty Detection Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
		Self priming	Self-Priming Sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
S4-SK		Saddle	Saddle interlock switch	Open	Closed
PC21-SK		Saddle empty	Saddle tray empty sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC18-SK		Home (Saddle exit)	Saddle exit roller home position sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC10- MK		Paper Passage 1	Lower transport sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC9-MK	Bin	Paper Passage 2	Upper transport sensor	Paper present	Paper not present
PC11- MK		Door (Jam)	Cover open/close sensor	Open	Close
PC1-MK	Bin 1	Empty	Paper detection sensor 1	Paper not present	Paper present
PC5-MK	В	Full	Paper full detection sensor 1	Blocked	Unblocked
PC2-MK	in 2	Empty	Paper detection sensor 2	Paper not present	Paper present
PC6-MK	B	Full	Paper full detection sensor 2	Blocked	Unblocked
РС3-МК	in 3	Empty	Paper detection sensor 3	Paper not present	Paper present
PC7-MK	B	Full	Paper full detection sensor 3	Blocked	Unblocked
PC4-MK	in 4	Empty	Paper detection sensor 4	Paper not present	Paper present
PC8-MK	B	Full	Paper full detection sensor 4	Blocked	Unblocked

(5) Sensors 5 (Main Unit)Item on the Sensor 5 is not used.

17.13.2 Table Number

Functions	 To display the Vg/Vdc output values calculated for the image density of the test pattern (amount of toner sticking) produced on the Transfer Belt during an AIDC detection sequence. Reference values: C, M, Y K Vdc: around 390 V, Vg: around 550 V
Use	Used for troubleshooting of image problems.
	If the value is high, correct so that the image density becomes low. If the value is low, correct so that the image density becomes high.

17.13.3 Level History1

Functions	To display TCR (T/C ratio), IDC/Regist Sensor output values, and fusing temperature.
Use	Used for troubleshooting of image problems.
Setting/ Procedure	TCR-C/-M/-Y/-K: Shows the T/C output reading taken last. IDC1/IDC2: Shows the latest IDC data. Temp-Heat: Shows the latest Heating Roller temperature data. Temp-Press.: Shows the latest Fusing Pressure Roller temperature data. "Reading taken last" means Density of toner of the latest image When a test print is produced by pressing the Start key while Level History 1 is being displayed.

17.13.4 Level History2

Functions	 IDC Sensor (Transfer Belt bare surface level) as adjusted through the image stabili- zation sequence and ATVC value. 	
Use	Used for troubleshooting of image problems.	
Setting/ Procedure	 IDC Sensor: Shows the intensity adjustment value (0 to 255) of the IDC Sensor. ATVC (C, M, Y, K): Shows the first image transfer ATVC adjustment value (300 V to 3000 V). ATVC (2nd) : Shows the second image transfer ATVC adjustment value (300 V to 5000 V). 	

17.13.5 Temp. & Humidity

Functions	To display the temperature and humidity of a specific location (AIDC Sensor portion) inside the machine and fusing temperature.	
Use	 Used as reference i 	nformation when a malfunction occurs.
Setting/ Procedure	Temp-InsideTemp-HeaterTemp-press.HumidityAbsolute Humidity	: 0 to 100 °C in 1 °C increments : 0 to 255 °C in 1 °C increments : 0 to 255 °C in 1 °C increments : 0 to 100 % in 1 % increments : 0 to 100 in 1 increments

17.13.6 Memory/HDD Adj.

A. Memory Check

Functions	To check correspondence of data written to and that read from memory through write/read check.
	Rough Check A check is made to see if the image data reading and writing are correctly made in a very limited area. The progress of the check sequence is displayed in percentage.
	Detail Check A check is made to see if the image data reading and writing are correctly made at the addresses and buses in all areas. The progress of the check sequence is displayed in percentage.
Use	If the print image is faulty.
Adjustment Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [Memory Check]. Select the desired type of check, either Rough Check or Detail Check. Press the Start key to start the check procedure. When the check procedure is completed, the results are shown on the screen. If the check results are NG, check the memory for connection or replace the memory with a new one. Press the Stop key to interrupt the check sequence.

B. Compress / Decompression Check

Functions	To check whether compression and decompression are carried out properly.
Use	If the print image is faulty.
Adjustment Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [Compress / Decompression Check]. Pressing the Start key will automatically start to complete a compression/decompression check sequence. The check result will be displayed,

C. Work Memory In/Out Check

Functions	To check to see if input and output of image data of work memory are correctly performed.
Use	If the print image is faulty.
Adjustment Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [Work Memory In/Out Check]. Select either [Input Check], [Output Check], or both. Pressing the Start key will start the work memory input/output operation check sequence and be terminated automatically. The check result will be displayed, [OK] or [NG].

D. HDD R/W Check

Functions	 To check to see if the hard disk is connected properly, and if read/write operation of the hard disk is correctly performed.
Use	When the hard disk is mounted.
Adjustment Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [HDD R/W Check]. Pressing the Start key will start the hard disk R/W check sequence and be terminated automatically. The check result will be displayed, [OK] or [NG]. Press the Stop key to interrupt the check sequence.

E. HDD Format

Functions	To format the hard disk The function proceeds in the order of Physical Format to Logical Format. If the hard disk is yet to be formatted, the Trouble code "C-D010" will appear. Ignore this code and continue with the formatting procedure.
Use	When the hard disk is mounted. When the hard disk is to be initialized.
Adjustment Procedure	 Call the Service Mode to the screen. Click these keys in this order: [State Confirmation] → [Memory / HDD Adj.] → [HDD Format].
	(1) Physical Format 1. Click [Physical Format]. 2. Press the Start key to start the formatting sequence. 3. The sequence will be automatically terminated as it is completed. 4. Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after. (2) Logical Format (Only when initial is set up) 1. Click [Logical Format]. 2. Press the Start key to start the formatting sequence. 3. The sequence will be automatically terminated as it is completed. 4. Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 seconds after.

17.13.7 Memory/HDD State

1	Functions	 To display the condition and amount of the memory and Hard disk. To display the mounting condition of the optional Encryption Board (Security Kit SC-503).
	Use	 Use to check the condition and amount of the memory and Hard disk. Use to setup the optional Security Kit SC-503.
	Setting/ Procedure	 When an add-on memory is mounted, the machine automatically recognizes it and displays its capacity. When the Encryption Board is mounted, the machine automatically recognizes it and displays [Set].

17.13.8 Color Regist

Functions	 To check each of C, M, Y, and K for color shift amount. The data is updated after a color shift correction has been made or color shift adjument has been completed. 	
Use	Use for check when color shift is evident. Use for adjustment of PH skew.	
Setting/ Procedure	 For each of C, M, Y, and K, the color shift amount (in X and Y directions) at two locations (one at the front and the other in the rear) and the difference in color shift amount between the front and rear (X and Y directions) are displayed. Display unit: dots The shift amount is displayed with reference to K for C, M, and Y, and that for K is displayed with reference to an ideal position. 	

17.13.9 IU Lot No.

Functions	 To display the 10-digit lot number for each of C, M, Y, and K IUs. The lot number data is stored in EEPROM of each IU. 	
Use	Use for checking the IU Lot No.	
Setting/ Procedure	 The IU lot number is displayed even with the Front Door opened; however, the display is blank, since the machine is unable to read the lot number when the Main Power Switch is turned ON with the Front Door open. Nonetheless, the lot number will be displayed when the Front Door is closed. (The engine obtains the IU lot number information when the Front Door is closed.) 	

17.13.10 Adjustment Data List

Functions	To display the adjustment and setting value set in the main unit.
Use • Use to check the adjustment and setting value set in the main unit.	

17.14 Test Mode

- To check the image on the printer side by letting the machine produce various types of test pattern. It also tests the printing operation in running mode.
- The machine searches through the paper sources in the order of Tray 2, Tray 3, Tray 4, and Tray 1 for paper of the maximum size for printing.

17.14.1 Procedure for Test Pattern Output

- 1. Click [Test Mode] to display the Test Mode menu.
- 2. Click the desired test pattern key.
- 3. Set up the desired functions and press the Start key.

17.14.2 Gradation Pattern

Functions	To produce a gradation pattern.		
Use	Used for checking gradation reproducibility.		
Pattern SINGLE HYPER Gradation Cyan			
Setting/ Procedure	# of Print ("1" to 999) Select "SINGLE" (single print) or MULTI (multi print). Select FEET or "HYPER". Select "Gradation" or Resolution if HYPER has been selected. Select the color mode. "Cyan", Magenta, Yellow, Black (4PC), CMYK, 8Color, 4Color, Black (1PC) Black (4PC): Uses four colors. Black (1PC): Uses one color of black.		

17.14.3 Halftone Pattern

Functions	To produce a solid halftone pattern.	
Use	Used for checking uneven density and pitch noise.	
Pattern	SINGLE HYPER Gradation Cyan Density: 255	
Setting/ Procedure	 # of Print ("1" to 999) Select "SINGLE" (single print) or MULTI (multi print). Select FEET or "HYPER." Select "Gradation" or Resolution if HYPER has been selected. Select the color mode. "Cyan", Magenta, Yellow, Black (4PC), Red, Green, Blue, CMYK, 3 Color, 4 Color, Black (1PC), MIX Type the density level (0 to "255"). 	

17.14.4 Lattice Pattern

Functions	To produce a lattice pattern.	
Use	 Used for checking fine line reproducibility and uneven density. A reverse pattern is also used to check for fine line reproducibility of white letters on a solid background. 	
Pattern	SINGLE FEET Cyan CD Width: 5 FD Width: 5 Density: 255 Normal	
Setting/ Procedure	# of Print ("1" to 999) Select "SINGLE" (single print) or MULTI (multi print). Select "FEET" or HYPER. Select Gradation or Resolution. (Only select HYPER) Select the color mode. "Cyan", Magenta, Yellow, Black (4PC), Red, Green, Blue, CMYK, 3 Color, 4 Color, Black (1PC) Enter CD width and FD width (0 to 191 dots). Type the density level (0 to "255"). Select "Normal" or Reverse.	

17.14.5 Solid Pattern

Functions	To produce each of the C, M, Y, and K solid patterns.	
Use	Used for checking reproducibility of image density.	
Pattern	K SINGLE HYPER Gradation Density: 255	
Setting/ Procedure	 # of Print ("1" to 999) Select "SINGLE" (single print) or MULTI (multi print). Select FEET or "HYPER." Select "Gradation" or Resolution if HYPER has been selected. Type the density level (0 to "255"). 	

17.14.6 Color Sample

Functions	To produce a color sample.	
Use	Used for checking reproducibility of each of the different colors.	
Pattern	SINGLE HYPER Gradation	
Setting/ Procedure	 # of Print ("1" to 999) Select "SINGLE" (single print) or MULTI (multi print). Select FEET or "HYPER." Select "Gradation" or Resolution if HYPER has been selected. Produce 12-gradation-level patches of C, M, Y, K, R, G, and B, and a patch of each of the 12 reference colors in the hue circle with lightness and saturation corrected. 	

17.14.7 8 Color Solid Pattern

Functions	To produce an 8-color solid pattern.		
Use	Used for checking color reproducibility and uneven density of each color.		
Pattern	SINGLE HYPER Gradation Density: 255		
Setting/ Procedure	 # of Print ("1" to 999) Select "SINGLE" (single print) or MULTI (multi print). Select FEET or "HYPER." Select "Gradation" or Resolution if HYPER has been selected. Type the density level (0 to "255"). 		

17.14.8 Running Mode

To test the printing operation in Running Mode.	
Use to check the printing operation in Running Mode from each paper source.	
1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.	
 Click these keys in this order: [Test Mode] → [Running Mode]. 	
3. Select the paper size (Tray 1, Bypass only).	
4. Select the paper type.	
5. Press the Start key to start the Running Mode.	
6. Pressing the Stop key will stop operation.	

17.15 Finisher

For details on adjustment, see the Service Manual for Option FS-603 or FS-514.

17.16 Internet ISW

- By using this setting, the Firmware stored in the Server can be downloaded over internet for upgrading.
- When performing Internet ISW from the control panel of the machine, settings must be made in advance on the Jig software side.
- For details for upgrading the Firmware, refer to "Firmware upgrade" in the Maintenance section.

See P.79

17.16.1 Internet ISW Set

	Functions	To set whether or not to enable	ach setting for Internet ISW.
	Use	To use when upgrading the Firmv Each setting such as Server setti	rare by Internet ISW. ng will be valid by setting this to "ON".
<u>^2</u>		NOTE • When the following setting is s to "OFF" and cannot be chang [Admin. Setting] → [Security S	
	Setting/	The default setting is OFF.	
	Procedure	ON	"OFF"

17.16.2 HTTP Setting

• It will be displayed only when [Internet ISW Set] is set to "ON".

A. Data Input Setting

Functions	To set whether or not to enable downloading using the HTTP Protocol.
Use	 To use when accessing the Server using the HTTP Protocol. Setting on the Proxy Server will be valid when this setting is "ON".
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is OFF. ON "OFF"

B. Connect Proxy

Functions	To set whether or not to connect via Proxy Server when accessing the Server.	
Use	To use when accessing the Server via Proxy Server.	
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.	
Procedure	ON	"OFF"

C. Proxy Server

Functions	To set the Address and the Port Number for the Proxy Server.
Use	To use when accessing the Server via Proxy Server.
Setting/ Procedure	<server address=""> Enter the IP Address using the Version 4 method or FQDN method. </server>
	<port number=""> Enter the value between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad. </port>

D. Proxy Authentication

Functions	To set the Login name or Password when Authentication is necessary for accessing the Proxy Server.	
Use	To use when Authentication is necessary for accessing the Proxy Server.	
Setting/ Procedure	<password></password>	"OFF" ne-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

E. Connection Time-Out

Functions	To set the time for the Timeout for accessing the Server.
Use	To use when changing the time for the Timeout for accessing the Server.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the value between 30 and 300 (sec.) using the 10-key pad.

17.16.3 FTP Setting

• It will be displayed only when [Internet ISW Set] is set to "ON".

A. Data Input Setting

Functions	To set whether or not to enable downloading using FTP Protocol.	
Use	 To use when accessing the Server with FTP Protocol. Setting this to "ON" will enable the Proxy Server setting. 	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is ON. "ON" OFF	

B. Connect Proxy

Functions	To set whether or not to access the Server via Proxy Server.	
Use	To use when accessing the Serve	via Proxy Server.
Setting/	The default setting is OFF.	
Procedure	ON	"OFF"

C. Proxy Server

Functions	To set the Address and the Port No. of the Proxy Server.
Use	To use when accessing the Server via Proxy Server.
Setting/ Procedure	<server address=""> Enter the IP Address using the Version 4 method or FQDN method. </server>
	<port number=""> Enter the value between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad. </port>

D. Connection Setting

Functions	To set the Port No. and the time for Timeout when accessing the FTP Server, and also to set whether or not to enable PASV Mode.	
Use	 To use when accessing the FTP Server. To use when connecting by the PASV (passive) Mode (FTP Server side will inform the connection port before connecting). 	
Setting/	<port number=""></port>	
Procedure	Enter the value between 1 and 65535 using the 10-key pad.	
	<connection out="" time=""></connection>	
	Enter the value between 1 and 60 (min.) using the 10-key pad.	
	<pasv mode=""> • The default setting is OFF.</pasv>	
	ON	"OFF"

17.16.4 Forwarding Access Setting

A. User ID

Functions	To register the User ID for accessing the Program Server where Firmware is to be
Use	stored.
	1. Select [User ID]. 2. Enter the User ID (up to 64 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

B. Password

Functions	To register the Password for accessing the Program Server where Firmware is to be
Use	stored.
	1. Select [Password].
Procedure	2. Enter the Password (up to 64 characters) on the on-screen keyboard.

C. URL

Functions	To register the Address and Directory of the Program Server where the Firmware is
Use	to be stored in URL.
Setting/	1. Select [URL].
Procedure	2. Enter the URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.
	NOTE • Enter the URL which format suits the Protocol to be used. When connecting to http http:// (Host name or IP Address)/ Directory name or https:// (Host name or IP Address)/Directory name. When connecting to ftp ftp:// (Host name or IP Address) / Directory name.

D. FileName

Functions	 To register the file name of the Firmware data to be downloaded. 			
Use				
Setting/ Procedure	Select [FileName]. Enter the File Name (up to 63 one-byte characters) on the on-screen keyboard.			

NOTE

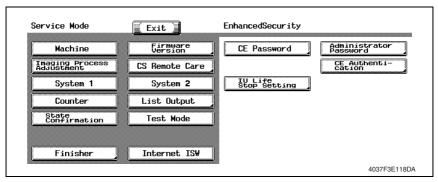
 It is not possible to set the start of downloading of Internet ISW from the Jig software. Set the start from the control panel of the machine.

18. Enhanced Security

18.1 Enhanced Security Function Setting Procedure

18.1.1 Procedure

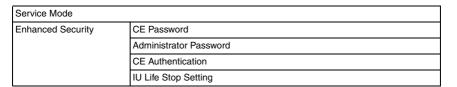
- 1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- Press the following keys in this order.
 Stop → 0→ Clear
- 3. Enhanced Security menu will appear.



18.1.2 Exiting

· Click the "Exit".

18.2 Enhanced Security Function Tree



18.3 **Settings in the Enhanced Security**

18.3.1 **CE Password**

Functions	To set and change the CE Password.
Use	Use to change the CE Password.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the CE Password (8 digits) on the on-screen keyboard. The initial setting is "92729272."
	Current Password : Enter the currently using CE Password. New Password : Enter the new CE Password. Re-Input Password : Enter the new CE Password again.
	NOTE • When the following setting leads to the Password Rules [Enable], the password with the same letters as well as the password which is same as the previous one cannot be changed. [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting] • NEVER forget the CE password. When forgetting the CE password, call responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.

18.3.2 **Administrator Password**

Functions	To set and change the Administrator Password.					
Use	Use to change the Administrator Password.					
Setting/ Procedure	 Enter the Administrator Password (8 digits) on the on-screen keyboard. The initial setting is "12345678." 					
	New Password : Enter the new Administrator Password. Re-Input Password : Enter the new Administrator Password again. NOTE When the following setting leads to the Password Rules [Enable], the password with the same letters, the password which is same as the previous one and the password of less than eight digits cannot be changed. [Admin. Setting] → [Security Setting]					

18.3.3 **CE Authentication**

[Admin. Setting] \rightarrow [Security Setting] \rightarrow [Enhanced Security] or [Password Rules].

	Functions	 To determine whether or not to authenti vice Mode. 	cate CE (Service) password as entering Ser-
	Use	Use when authenticating CE (Service)	passwordas entering Service Mode.
	Setting/	The default setting is OFF.	
	Procedure	ON	"OFF"
2		tion to "ON" and change the initial C	ON" or "Enable", set the CE Authentica- E Password beforehand.] → [Enhanced Security] or [Password

18.3.4 IU Life Stop Setting

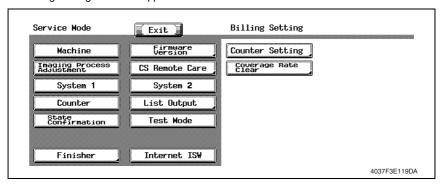
Functions	To select whether or not to stop a print cycle when the IU reaches its service life.			
Use	Use to select not to stop the print cycle when the IU reaches its service life.			
Setting/	The default setting is Stop.			
Procedure	"Stop"	No Stop		

19. Billing Setting

19.1 Billing Setting Function Setting Procedure

19.1.1 Procedure

- 1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
- 2. Press the following keys in this order. Stop \rightarrow 9
- 3. Billing Setting menu will appear.



19.1.2 **Exiting**

· Click the "Exit".

19.2 Billing Setting Function Tree

Service Mode	
Billing Setting	Counter Setting
	Coverage Rate Clear

 Λ

 Λ

19.3 Settings in the Billing Setting

19.3.1 Counter Setting

Functions	To set the counting method for the Total Counter and Size Counter.								
Use	Use to change the counting method for the counters.								
Setting/ Procedure	Mode 2: Large Size is	Total Counter Mode Mode 1: 1 Count per 1 copy cycle (Default: Others 4, Japan) Mode 2: Large Size is double counts (Default: US, Europe, Others 1, Others 2, Others 3)							
	Large Size Counter M	ode							
	• A3/11 x 17		directi tion (e regard	on and xceeds led as	420 mm 399 mm the Large		b scan can), it	direc- is	
	• A3/B4/11 x 17/8 ¹ / ₂	x 14		: When it exceeds 215 mm in the main scan direction and 355 mm in the sub scan direc- tion (exceeds 337 mm at FAX scan), it is regarded as the Large Size.					
	A3/11 x 17/B4/8 ¹ / ₂ x 14/Foolscap : When it exceeds 203 mm in the main scan direction and 330 mm in the sub scan direction (exceeds 313 mm at FAX scan), it is regarded as the Large Size (However the size in the main scan direction changes according to the Foolscap Size Setting.)								
	 Not counted (Default: Others 4, Japan) A3 and 11 x 17 (Default: US) A3, B4, 11 x 17, and 8 ¹/₂ x 14 (Default: Europe, Others 1, Others 2, Others 3) 								
	• A3, B4, Foolscap, 11 x 17, 11 x 14, and 8 ¹ / ₂ x 14								
	* Count-up Table								
	Printing		1-Side	ed			2-Side	ed	
	Size		I Large Sizes I				her than Sizes	Large Sizes	
	Mode	Мо	ode	Мс	ode	Мо	ode	Мо	ode
	Туре	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2
	Total	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	4
	Size	0	0	1	1	0	0	2	2
	2-sided Total	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
	0: No count; 1: 1 count; 2: 2 counts; 3: 3 counts; 4: 4 counts								



- When printing on the long paper (457.3 mm or over), the counting value will be the total of the value set by the large size counter mode and the value by this setting.
- The default setting is Mode 4.

Mode 1 : + 0 count Mode 2 : + 1 count Mode 3 : + 2 counts Mode 4 : + 3 counts

19.3.2 Coverage Rate Clear

Functions	To clear the coverage rate.	
Use	Use to clear the coverage rate.	
Setting/ Procedure	The default setting is Unset.	
	Set	"Unset"
	Clicking "END" key will clear the coverage rate.	

20. Procedure for Resetting

20.1 Trouble resetting

Functions	 If the all troubles occur and the status would not be cleared by turning Main Power Switch OFF and ON again, or opening and closing the front door, clear the status of the machine.
Use	To be used when the status would not be cleared by turning Main Power Switch OFF and ON again, or opening and closing the front door in case of a trouble.
Setting/ Procedure	 Turn OFF the Main Power Switch. Turn main power switch ON while pressing the Menu/Select key. Keep pressing the Menu/Select key until the LED turns OFF on the control Panel. Check to make sure that the "Trouble Reset" will be displayed on the control Panel after LED turns OFF. Pressing the Menu/Select key. Check to make sure that "OK" is displayed and the it has been reset. After turning off the Main Power Switch, turn it on again more than 10 seconds after and check if the machine starts correctly.

20.2 Contents to be cleared by Reset function

Items for clearing		Front Door Main power		Trouble	Initialization		
Contents to be cleared		Open/Close	switch Off/On	resetting	System Error Clear	Data Clear	
Jam display			0	_	=	0	0
	Rank A	Fusing	_	_	0	0	_
Malfunction display	Rank B		0	=	0	_	_
diopidy	Rank C		_	0	0	_	_
Erratic operatio	n / display	/	_	0	_	_	_
Utility Mode (Except items on Expert adjustment.)			_	_	_	_	0
Service Mode (System 1/2)			_	=	=	_	□ *1
Billing Setting Counter Setting		_	_	=	_	0	

O: Will be cleared (initialized)

-: Will not be cleared

□ *1: Items to be cleared				
	Foolscap Size Setting			
System 1	Install Date			
	No Sleep			
System 2 HDD				

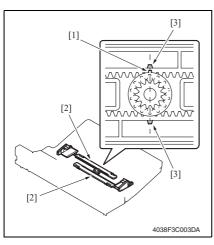
21. Mechanical adjustment

21.1 Mechanical adjustment of the bypass tray section

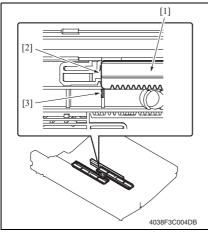
21.1.1 Adjustment of the Bypass Paper Size Unit

This adjustment must be made in the following case:

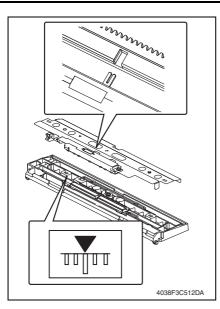
• The Bypass Paper Size Unit has been removed.



 Install the gear so that the protrusion of the gear [1] and the mark [3] on the Bypass Guide Rack Gear [2] are aligned in a straight line.



 Install the Bypass Unit Cover so that part A (edge) [2] of the Rack Gear [1] for the Bypass Paper Size Unit and part B [3] of the Bypass Unit Cover are aligned in a straight line.



 When the Bypass Paper Size Unit base is mounted, align the lever position of the Bypass Paper Size Unit with the tab at the center in a straight line.

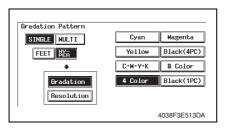
- 4. After the Bypass Paper Size Unit base has been mounted, check that the lever of the Bypass Paper Size Unit moves smoothly in a manner operatively connected to the Bypass Guide.
- Call the Service Mode to the screen and select [Machine] → [Manual Bypass Tray Adjustment] of the Jig software. Then, carry out Manual Bypass Tray Adjustment.
 See P.239

21.2 PH Unit Mechanical Adjustment

1 21.2.1 Skew Adjustment

This adjustment must be made in the following case:

· When PH Unit is replaced.



- 1. Turn ON the main power switch.
- Select [Service Mode] → [Test Mode] → [Gradation Pattern] of the Jig software and output the test pattern with the following conditions.

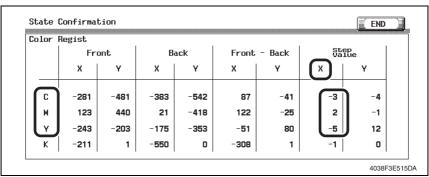
Conditions: SINGLE, HYPER, Gradation, 4 Color

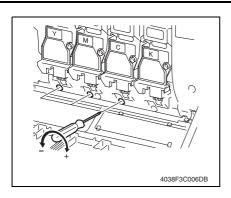
Using the output test pattern, check if each color of CMYK is printed in correct pattern.

If the pattern is not correct, any troubles such as connecting failure in PH Unit of the corresponding color may occur, which should be modified. If there isn't any problem, proceed to step 4.

- Select [Service Mode] → [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Stabilizer] → [Initialize + Image Stabilization] of the Jig software.
- After image stabilization is completed, display [Service Mode] → [State Confirmation]
 → [Color Regist] of the Jig software and check if the Step Value: X of each color C, M, Y, is within the specification.

Specification: within $\pm\ 4$





- If either value is out of the specification, follow the procedures shown below to adjust it to satisfy the specification.
- If the value of all color, C, M, Y satisfy the specification, proceed to step 10.
- 6. Open the Front Door.
- Turn the Skew adjustment dial of the corresponding PH with flathead screwdriver.
- To the left : When the step value goes direction
- To the right : When the step value goes + direction

<Adjustment sample>

If the yellow value, among the step values confirmed in step 5, is [-5], which means out of the specification, turn the skew adjustment dial of PH (Yellow) to the left (- direction) for 5 clicks.

NOTE

- · Do not execute the skew adjustment of Black PH Unit.
- Close the Front door and select [Imaging Process Adjustment] → [Stabilizer] → [Initialize + Image Stabilization] of the Jig software.
- After image stabilization is completed, display [Service mode] → [State Confirmation]
 → [Color Regist] of the Jig software again and check if the Step Value: X of each color C, M, Y is within the specification.

NOTE

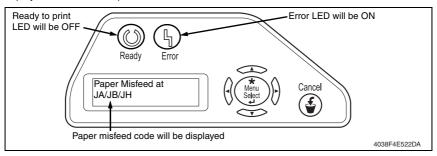
- Each color's Step value displayed on [Color Regist] changes every time the image stabilization is conducted. Therefore the value may change even if skew adjustment is not made.
- If either value is out of the specification, repeat step 6 to 9 to continue the adjustment until all C, M, Y colors satisfy the specification.
- 10. Exit the Service Mode.

Troubleshooting

22. Jam Display

Misfeed Display

· When the paper misfeed occurs, the error LED will be ON and the message will be displayed on the control panel.



22.1.1

bizhub C250P

Code *1	Code *2	Misfeed Location	Misfeed Processing Location		
JA	1101	Tray 1 take-up	Right Door		
JH	3001	2nd Image Transfer			
JB	1201	Tray 2 take-up Tray 2 Right Door			
JG	2001	Vertical Transport			
JE	1001	Manual Bypass take-up	Manual Bypass Slide Board		
JC	1501	LCT take-up	LCT Right Door		
JG	2001	Vertical Transport			
JI	9301	Duplex Unit transport	Duplex Unit Right Door		
JF	9201	Duplex Unit pre-registration			
JC	1301	Tray 3 take-up Paper Feed Unit Righ			
JG	2001	Vertical Transport			
JD	1401	Tray 4 take-up			
JG	2001	Vertical Transport			
JI	3201	Fusing, Exit	Right Door		
JJ	7403	Horizontal transport	Horizontal transport cover		
JJ	7401	Finisher: Transport Section	FS- 501 Finisher Door		
JK	7402	Finisher: Stapler Section			
JL	7404 7405	Finisher: Exit Section			
JT	7406	Finisher: Job Tray Exit Section			
JJ	7401	Finisher: Turnover Section	Horizontal transport cover		
JK	7403	Finisher: Stapler Section	FS-603 Finisher Door		
JQ	7404 7405	Finisher: Punch Section			
JR	7403	Finisher: Transport Section			
JS		Finisher: Folding Position Section			

^{*1:} Code displayed on the control panel

^{*2:} Code displayed in time-series JAM of the Machine Management List

22.1.2 bizhub C252P

Code *1	Code *2	Misfeed Location	Misfeed Processing Location
JA	1101	Tray 1 take-up	Right door
JH	3001	2nd Image Transfer	
JB	1201	Tray 2 take-up	Tray 2 right door
JG	2001	Vertical Transport	
JE	1001	Manual Bypass take-up	Manual bypass slide board
JC	1501	LCT take-up	LCT right door
JG	2001	Vertical Transport	
JI	9301	Duplex Unit transport	Duplex unit right door
JF	9201	Duplex Unit pre-registration	
JC	1301	Tray 3 take-up	Paper feed unit right door
JG	2001	Vertical Transport	
JD	1401	Tray 4 take-up	
JG	2001	Vertical Transport	
JI	3201	Fusing, Exit	Right door
JJ	7403	Horizontal transport	Horizontal transport cover
JJ	7401	Finisher: Transport Section	FS- 501 Finisher door
JK	7402	Finisher: Stapler Section	
JL	7404 7405	Finisher: Exit Section	
JT	7406	Finisher: Job Tray Exit Section	
JJ	7401	Finisher: Turnover Section	Horizontal transport cover
JK	7403	Finisher: Stapler Section	FS-603 Finisher door
JQ	7404 7405	Finisher: Punch Section	
JR	7407	Finisher: Transport Section	
JS		Finisher: Folding Position Section	
JJ	7501	Finisher: transport section,	FS-514 Finisher front door
JK	7502 7503	Finisher: job tray section	Misfeed-clearing door
JL	7503 7504	Finisher: exit section	
JS	7508	Finisher: saddle section	
JU	7509	Mailbin MT-501	Finisher front door Misfeed-clearing door
JK	7503 7505 7506 7507	Saddle stitcher SD-503	Finisher front door Misfeed-clearing door

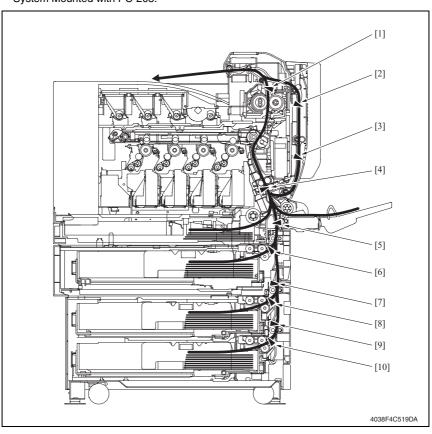
^{*1:} Code displayed on the control panel
*2: Code displayed in time-series JAM of the Machine Management List

22.2 Misfeed Display Resetting Procedure

• Open the corresponding door, clear the sheet of paper misfeed, and close the door.

22.3 Sensor layout

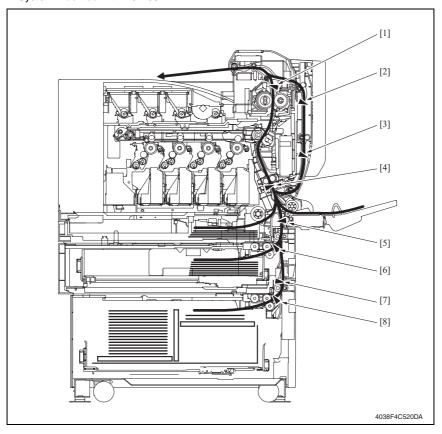
• System Mounted with PC-203.



[1]	Exit Sensor	PC2	[6]	Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor	PC9-PC
[2]	Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1	PC1 DU	[7]	Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor	PC117-PC
[3]	Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 2	PC2 DU	[8]	Tray 3 Take-up Sensor	PC116-PC
[4]*1	Registration Roller Sensor	PC1	[9]	Tray 4 Vertical Transport Sensor	PC126-PC
[4]*1	OHP Sensor	PC4	[10]	Tray 4 Take-up Sensor	PC125-PC
[5]	Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor	PC8-PC			

^{*1:} Two different types of sensors are located in the area near [4].

• System Mounted with PC-403



[1]	Exit Sensor	PC2	[5]	Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor	PC8-PC
[2]	Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1	PC1 DU	[6]	Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor	PC9-PC
[3]	Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 2	PC2 DU	[7]	Vertical Transport Sensor	PC2-LCT
[4]*1	Registration Roller Sensor	PC1	[8]	Paper Take-up Sensor	PC1-LCT
[/]*1	OHP Sensor	PC4			

^{*1:} Two different types of sensors are located in the area near [4].

22.4 Solution

22.4.1 Initial Check Items

• When a paper misfeed occurs, first make checks of the following initial check items

Check Item	Action
Does paper meet product specifications?	Change paper.
Is paper curled, wavy, or damp.	Change paper. Instruct user in correct paper storage.
Is a foreign object present along the paper path, or is the paper path deformed or worn?	Clean or change the paper path.
Are the Paper Separator Fingers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective Paper Separator Finger.
Are rolls/rollers dirty, deformed, or worn?	Clean or change the defective roll/roller.
Are the Edge Guide and Trailing Edge Stop at correct position to accommodate paper?	Set as necessary.
Are actuators found operational as checked for correct operation?	Correct or change the defective actuator.

22.4.2 Misfeed at Tray 1 feed section

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 1 feed section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Registration Roller Sensor (PC1) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Tray 1 Paper Feed Clutch (CL2) has been energized.
Tray 1 Feed section Loop Registration Reversing JAM	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the Registration Roller at Tray 1 feed.

Relevant Electrical Parts			
Tray 1 Paper Feed Clutch (CL2) Registration Roller Sensor (PC1)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)		

Step	Action	
1	Initial check items	
2	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check	
3	CL2 operation check	
4	Change PWB-M	

22.4.3 Misfeed at 2nd Image Transfer section

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at 2nd Image Transfer	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Exit Sensor (PC2) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Registration Roller Clutch (CL1) has been energized.
section	The Registration Roller Sensor (PC1) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in 2nd Image Transfer section	The Registration Roller Sensor (PC1) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The OHP Sensor (PC4) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Exit Sensor (PC2) is blocked when the Image Transfer Belt Unit is being cleaned.
Misfeed detected as a result of delayed deactiva- tion of sensor	Registration Roller Sensor (PC1) does not transmit the paper even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked PC1 at Tray 1 feed.
2nd Image Transfer section Loop Registration Reversing JAM	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making loop at front of the Registration Roller when the sensor at front of the Registration Roller is blocked at Paper feed.

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)		

Step	Action		
1	Initial check items		
2	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check		
3	PC2 I/O check, Sensor check		
4	PC4 I/O check, Sensor check		
5	CL1 operation check		
6	Change PWB-M		

22.4.4 Misfeed at Tray 2 feed, Tray 2 vertical transport section

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 2 feed section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor (M1-PC) has been energized.
Detection of misfeed at Tray 2 vertical transport	The Registration Roller Sensor (PC1) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked the Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC).
section	Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC) does not transmit the paper even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked PC8-PC.
Tray 2 Vertical Transport section Loop Registration Reversing JAM	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the Registration Roller at Tray 2 feed.
Detection of paper left in Tray 2	Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC9-PC) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

Relevant Electrical Parts			
Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC9-PC)	Tray 2 Control Board (PWB-Z-PC)		
Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)		
Registration Roller Sensor (PC1)			
Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor (M1-PC)			

Step	Action
1	Initial check items
2	PC9-PC I/O check, Sensor check
3	PC8-PC I/O check, Sensor check
4	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check
5	M1-PC operation check
6	Change PWB-Z-PC
7	Change PWB-M

22.4.5 Misfeed at Manual Bypass feed section

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at Manual Bypass feed section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Registration Roller Sensor (PC1) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Bypass Paper Feed Clutch (CL5) has been energized.
Manual Bypass feed section Loop Registration Reversing JAM	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the Registration Roller at Bypass feed.

Relevant Electrical Parts		
, ,	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Bypass Paper Feed Clutch (CL5)		

Step	Action
1	Initial check items
2	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check
3	CL5 operation check
4	Change PWB-M

22.4.6 Misfeed at LCT feed and LCT vertical transport section (PC-403)

A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at LCT feed section	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Paper Take-up Sensor (PC1-LCT) or Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Take-up Motor (M1-LCT) has been energized.
Detection of misfeed at LCT vertical transport	The Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked the Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT).
section	The Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been blocked by the paper.
LCT Vertical Transport section Loop Registration Reversing JAM	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the Registration Roller at LCT feed.
Detection of paper left in LCT	The Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Paper Take-up Sensor (PC1-LCT)	Control Board (PWB-C1 LCT)	
Vertical Transport Sensor (PC2-LCT)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC)		
Take-up Motor (M1-LCT)		
Registration Roller Sensor (PC1)		

Step	Action
1	Initial check items
2	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check
3	PC1-LCT I/O check, Sensor check
4	PC2-LCT I/O check, Sensor check
5	PC8-PC I/O check, Sensor check
6	M1-LCT operation check
7	Change PWB-C1 LCT
8	Change PWB-M

22.4.7 Misfeed at Tray 3 Feed and Tray 3 vertical transport section (PC-103/PC203)

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 3 feed or Vertical	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC117-PC) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Tray3 Take-up Motor (M122-PC) has been energized.
Transport Section	The Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked the Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC117-PC).
	The Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC117-PC) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been blocked by the paper.
Tray 3 Vertical Transport section Loop Registration Reversing JAM	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the Registration Roller at Tray 3 feed.
Detection of paper left in Tray 3	The Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC117-PC) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Tray 3 Take-Up Sensor (PC116-PC) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Tray 3 Take-Up Sensor (PC116-PC)	Control Board (PWB-C2 PC)	
Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC117-PC)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC)		
Tray3 Take-up Motor (M122-PC)		
Registration Roller Sensor (PC1)		

Step	Action	
1	Initial check items	
2	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check	
3	PC116-PC I/O check, Sensor check	
4	PC117-PC I/O check, Sensor check	
5	PC8-PC I/O check, Sensor check	
6	M122-PC operation check	
7	Change PWB-C2 PC	
8	Change PWB-M	

22.4.8 Misfeed at Tray 4 Feed and Tray 4 vertical transport section (PC203)

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at Tray 4 feed or Vertical	The leading edge of the paper does not block the Tray 4 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC126-PC) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Tray4 Take-up Motor (M123-PC) has been energized.
Transport Section	The Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC117-PC) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked the Tray 4 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC126-PC).
	The Tray 4 Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PC) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been blocked by the paper.
Tray 4 Vertical Transport section Loop Registration Reversing JAM	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the Registration Roller at Tray 4 feed.
Detection of paper left in Tray 4	The Tray 4 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC126-PC) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.
	The Tray 4 Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PC) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Tray 4 Take-Up Sensor (PC125-PC)	Control Board (PWB-C2 PC)	
Tray 4 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC126-PC)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Tray 3 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC117-PC)		
Tray4 Take-up Motor (M123-PC)		
Registration Roller Sensor (PC1)		

Step	Action
1	Initial check items
2	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check
3	PC125-PC I/O check, Sensor check
4	PC126-PC I/O check, Sensor check
5	PC117-PC I/O check, Sensor check
6	M123-PC operation check
7	Change PWB-C2 PC
8	Change PWB-M

22.4.9 Misfeed at Duplex transport section (AD-503)

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at Duplex Transport section	The Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 2 (PC2 DU) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked the Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1 (PC1 DU).
	The Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1 (PC1 DU) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been blocked by the paper.
	The Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 2 (PC2 DU) is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after it has been blocked by the paper.
Detection of paper left in Duplex Transport Section	Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1 (PC1 DU) or Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 2 (PC2 DU) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1 (PC1 DU) Duplex Control Board (PWB-A DU)		
Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 2 (PC2 DU)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Duplex Unit Switchback Motor (M1 DU)		
Duplex Unit Transport Motor (M2 DU)		

Step	Action
1	Initial check items
2	PC1 DU I/O check, Sensor check
3	PC2 DU I/O check, Sensor check
4	M1 DU operation check
5	M2 DU operation check
6	Change PWB-A DU
7	Change PWB-M

22.4.10 Misfeed at Duplex Unit pre-registration section (AD-503)

A. Detection Timing

Туре	Description
Detection of misfeed at Duplex pre-registration section	The Registration Roller Sensor (PC1) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after a Duplex paper feed sequence has been started.
Duplex Unit Pre- registration section Loop Registration Reversing JAM detection	Rise timing of load for registration is earlier than the one for making the loop at front of the Registration Roller at pre-registration feed.

Relevant Electrical Parts	
` ,	Duplex Control Board (PWB-A DU) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action
1	Initial check items
2	PC1 I/O check, Sensor check
3	M1 DU operation check
4	M2 DU operation check
5	Change PWB-A DU
6	Change PWB-M

22.4.11 Misfeed at Fusing/Exit section

A. Detection Timing

Type	Description
Detection of misfeed at Fusing/	PC2 is not unblocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the paper has blocked the Exit Sensor (PC2).
Exit Section	The Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1 (PC1 DU) is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Exit Sensor (PC2) has been unblocked by the paper during a switchback sequence.
Detection of paper left in Exit Section	Exit Sensor (PC2) is blocked when the Main Power Switch is turned ON, a door or cover is opened and closed, or a misfeed or malfunction is reset.

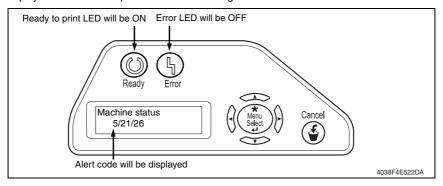
Relevant Electrical Parts	
Exit Sensor (PC2)	Duplex Control Board (PWB-A DU)
Duplex Unit Transport Sensor 1 (PC1 DU)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action
1	Initial check items
2	PC2 I/O check, Sensor check
3	PC1 DU I/O check, Sensor check
4	Change PWB-A DU
5	Change PWB-M

23. Malfunction code

23.1 Alert code

Machine status will be self diagnosed by CPU circuit. The machine status will be displayed on the control panel when the warning is detected.



23.1.1 Alert list

• If an image stabilization fault occurs, the corresponding warning code appears.

Code	Item	Description
P-5 P-28	IDC Sensor (Front) failure IDC Sensor (Back) failure	 All outputs of Sensor photoreceiver section from the detection point (unprinted surface on the Image Transfer Belt) are 0.5 V or less or 4.3 V or more at output checking during IDC/Registration Sensor adjustment. All outputs of Sensor photoreceiver section from the detection point (unprinted surface on the Image Transfer Belt) are 1.9 V or less or 4.4 V or more at density setting during IDC/Registration Sensor adjustment. The output of Sensor photoreceiver section from the detection point (toner pattern on the Image Transfer Belt) is 1.0 V or less after the adjustment.
P-6 P-7	Cyan Imaging Unit failure Magenta Imaging Unit failure	 All density readings taken from the density pattern pro- duced on the Transfer Belt are 0.5 g/m² (IDC Sensor
P-8	Yellow Imaging Unit failure	photoreceiver output) or less during max. density adjustment (Vg/Vdc adjustment).
P-9	Black Imaging Unit failure	All density readings taken from the density pattern produced on the Transfer Belt are 4.5 g/m² (IDC Sensor Photoreceiver output) or more during max. density adjustment (Vg/Vdc adjustment.)
P-21	Color Shift Test Pattern failure	 The number of points detected in the main scan direction is more or less than the specified value during main scan direction registration correction. The number of points detected in the Sub Scan Direction is more or less than the specified value during sub scan direction registration correction.

Code	Item	Description
P-22	Color Shift Adjust failure	 The color shift amount is greater than the specified range during main scan direction registration correction. The color shift amount is greater than the specified range during sub scan direction registration correction. The skew correction amount is greater than the specified value.
P-26	1st Image Transfer ATVC (K) failure	 An abnormal average value is detected during an adjustment of the first image transfer ATVC value of Black.
P-27	2nd Image Transfer ATVC failure	An abnormal average value is detected during an adjustment of the second image transfer ATVC value.
P-29	1st Image Transfer ATVC (color) failure	 An abnormal average value is detected during an adjustment of the first image transfer ATVC value of color.
P-30	Color PC Drum Sensor malfunction	 The output from the Color PC Drive Main and Sub Sensors remains unchanged for a continuous period of 1,000 ms while the Color PC Drum Motor is turning stably and the Lock signal is active (LOW-0).
P-31	Black PC Drum Sensor malfunction	 The output from the Black PC Drive Main and Sub Sensors remains unchanged for a continuous period of 1,000 ms while the Main Motor is turning stably and the Lock signal is active (LOW-0).

23.2 Solution

- *1: How to check the error sensor
- 1. Set the Service Jig.
- 2. Turn the PC Power ON.
- 3. Turn the Printer Power ON while pressing the Menu/Select key on the control Panel.
- 4. Keep pressing the Menu/Select key until the LED turns OFF on the control Panel.
- Check to make sure that the "Trouble Reset" will be displayed on the control Panel after LED turns OFF.
- 6. Start the Jig software and check to make sure the Start-up Dialog will be displayed.
- 7. Click the OK key in the dialogue.
- 8. Check to make sure that the Start screen will be displayed on the PC.
- 9. Check to make sure that the Start screen will change to the Panel screen.
- 10. Click the Utility key.
- 11. Click the Details key.
- 12. Click the keys below.

$$STOP \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow STOP \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 1$$

- 13. Service mode will be displayed.
- 14. Display the Sensor check from the Service mode.
- 15. Close the front door to run "Stabilizer."
- 16. During the Stabilizer sequence, check if the values of the phase detection sensors (Color PC Drive Main/Sub and Black PC Drive Main/Sub Sensors) change.
- 17. A sensor is faulty if its value does not change.

23.2.1 P-5: IDC Sensor (Front) failure

23.2.2 P-28 IDC Sensor (Back) failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
IDC / Registration Sensor /1 (SE1) IDC / Registration Sensor /2 (SE2)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M) High Voltage Unit (HV1) Image Transfer Belt Unit

Step	Action
1	Wipe clean the surface of the Transfer Belt with a soft cloth, if it is dirty
2	Change the Image Transfer Belt Unit if the Transfer Belt is damaged.
3	Reinstall or reconnect SE1 or SE2 if it is installed or connected improperly.
4	Clean SE1 or SE2 if it is dirty
5	Check the HV1 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
6	Open and close the Front Door, run an image stabilization sequence, and select [State Confirmation] → [Level History 1] to check the IDC value. IDC1: SE1, IDC2: SE2 If the value is 1.0 V or less, change SE1 or SE2.
7	Change PWB-M

- 23.2.3 P-6: Cyan Imaging Unit failure
- 23.2.4 P-7: Magenta Imaging Unit failure
- 23.2.5 P-8: Yellow Imaging Unit failure
- 23.2.6 P-9: Black Imaging Unit failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Imaging Unit /C Imaging Unit /M Imaging Unit /Y Imaging Unit /K	Image Transfer Belt Unit High Voltage Unit (HV1)

Step	Action
1	Select [Imaging Process Adjustment] \rightarrow [D Max Density] and, if the setting value is negative, readjust.
2	Check the drive transmission portion of the Imaging Unit and correct as necessary.
3	Clean the IDC / Registration Sensor /1 (SE1) or IDC / Registration Sensor /2 (SE2) window if dirty.
4	Clean the contact of the Imaging Unit connector if dirty.
5	Check the HV1 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
6	Change Imaging Unit.
7	Change the Image Transfer Belt Unit.

23.2.7 P-21: Color Shift Test Pattern failure

Relevant Ele	ectrical Parts
Image Transfer Belt Unit	

Step	Action
1	Wipe clean the surface of the Transfer Belt with a soft cloth, if it is dirty.
2	Change the Image Transfer Belt Unit if the Transfer Belt is damaged.

23.2.8 P-22: Color Shift Adjust failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
IDC / Registration Sensor /1 (SE1)	IDC / Registration Sensor /2 (SE2)

Step	Action
1	Slide out the Imaging Unit and reinstall it in position.
2	Reinstall or reconnect SE1 or SE2 if it is installed or connected improperly.
3	Check the Vertical Transport Guide for installed position and correct as necessary.

23.2.9 P-26: 1st image transfer ATVC (Black) failure

23.2.10 P-27: 2nd image transfer ATVC failure

23.2.11 P-29: 1st image transfer ATVC (Color) failure

Relevant Electrical Parts		
High Voltage Unit (HV1) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	Image Transfer Belt Unit	

Step	Action
1	Check the contact of the Transfer Belt Unit and that of HV1 for connection and clean or correct the contact as necessary.
2	Change the Image Transfer Belt Unit.
3	Change HV1.
4	Change PWB-M.

23.2.12 P-30: Color PC Drum Sensor malfunction

Relevant Electrical Parts						
Color PC Drive Main Sensor (PC17)	Transport Drive Assy					
Color PC Drive Sub Sensor (PC18)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)					

Step	Action
1	Perform the faulty sensor check procedure.
2	Check the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, for installed position and proper connection.
3	Wipe the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, clean of dirt if any.
4	If P-30 occurs again, change the Transport Drive Assy.
5	Change PWB-M.

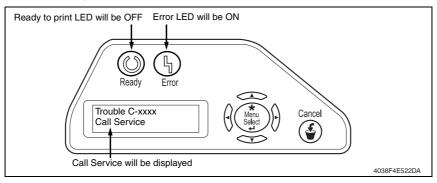
23.2.13 P-31: Black PC Drum Sensor malfunction

Relevant Electrical Parts					
` ,	Transport Drive Assy Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)				

Step	Action
1	Perform the faulty sensor check procedure.
2	Check the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, for installed position and proper connector connection.
3	Wipe the sensor, for which a faulty condition has been checked, clean of dirt if any.
4	If P-31 persists, change the Transport Drive Assy.
5	Change PWB-M.

23.3 Call Service (Trouble Code)

Machine status will be self diagnosed by CPU circuit. The Trouble Code will be displayed
on the control panel when the error is detected.



23.3.1 Call Service list

* For the details of the Call Service of the options, see the Service Manual for the corresponding option.

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C0001	LCT Connection failed	See PC-403 Service Manual.	В
C0102	LCT Vertical Transport Motor malfunction		В
C0204	Tray 2 Elevator failure	The Lift-Up Sensor is not blocked even after the lapse of a given period of time after the lifting motion has been started.	В
C0206	Tray 3 Elevator failure	See PC-103/PC-203 Service Manual.	В
C0208	Tray 4 Elevator failure		В
C0209	LCT Elevator Motor malfunction (Elevator malfunction)	See PC-403 Service Manual.	В
C0210	LCT ascent motion failure		В
C0211	Manual Tray Rise Descent Error	The Bypass Lift-Up Sensor is not blocked even when the Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor has turned for a given number of pulses after the sequence to move the Paper Lifting Plate from the standby position to the feed position was started. The Bypass Lift-Up Sensor is not unblocked even when the Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor has turned for a given number of pulses after the sequence to move the Paper Lifting Plate from the feed position to the standby position was started.	В
C0212	LCT ejection failure	See PC-403 Service Manual.	В
C0213	LCT Shift Gate malfunction		В
C0214	LCT shifting failure		В
C0215	LCT Shift Motor malfunction		В
C0301	Suction Fan Motor's failure to turn	 The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predeter- mined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary. 	В

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C1180	Finishing option transport system malfunction	See FS-501 or FS-603 Service Manual.	В
C1181	Finishing option Paddle Motor malfunction		В
C1182	Finishing option Shift Motor mechanism malfunction		В
C1183	Finishing option Elevator drive malfunction		В
C1190	Finishing option Aligning Bar moving mechanism malfunction		В
C1192	Finishing option Front Aligning Motor malfunction		В
C1193	Finishing option Rear Aligning Motor malfunction		В
C11A1	Finishing option Exit Roller pressure/retraction failure		В
C11A2	Finishing option Storage Roller pressure/retraction failure		В
C11A4	Finishing option Exit Motor malfunction		В
C11B0	Finishing option Stapler Unit CD drive failure		В
C11B1	Finishing option Stapler Unit Slide Motor malfunction		В
C11B2	Finishing option stapling mechanism malfunction 1		В
C11B4	Finishing option Staple/Folding Motor malfunction		В
C11C0	Punch Motor malfunction		В
C11C1	Finishing option Punch Cam Motor drive failure		С
C11C2	Finishing option Punch Unit Board malfunction		С
C11C3	Finishing option Punch Side Registration Motor malfunction		С
C11C5	Finishing option Punch Sensor malfunction		С
C1401	Finishing option Backup RAM		

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C2151	2nd Image Transfer Roller Separation	 The 2nd Image Transfer Pressure Position Sensor doesn't turn ON (Retracting) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the 2nd Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Motor has started rotating during the 2nd Image Transfer Roller is retracting. The 2nd Image Transfer Pressure Position Sensor doesn't turn OFF (Pressuring) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the 2nd Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Motor has started rotating during the 2nd Image Transfer Roller is pressuring. 	В
C2152	Transfer Belt Separation	 The 1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Position Sensor doesn't turn ON (Retracting) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the 1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Clutch has turned ON during the Transfer Belt is retracting. The 1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Position Sensor doesn't turn OFF (Pressuring) even after the lapse of a given period of time after the 1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Clutch has turned ON during the Transfer Belt is pressuring. 	В
C2253	Color PC Drum Motor's failure to turn	 The Motor Lock signal remains HIGH for a prede- termined continuous period of time while the Motor is turning. 	В
C2254	Color PC Drum Motor's turning at abnormal timing	 The Motor Lock signal remains LOW for a prede- termined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary. 	В
C2255	Color Developing Motor's failure to turn	 The Motor Lock signal remains HIGH for a prede- termined continuous period of time while the Motor is turning. 	В
C2256	Color Developing Motor's turning at abnormal timing	 The Motor Lock signal remains LOW for a prede- termined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary. 	В
C2451	Image Transfer Belt Unit New Article Release	 A new installation is not detected when a new Image Transfer Belt Unit is installed. 	В
C2551	Abnormally low toner density detected Cyan TCR Sensor	TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 5 % or less for a given number of times consecutively.	В
C2552	Abnormally high toner density detected Cyan TCR Sensor	 TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 12 % or more for a given number of times consecutively. 	В
C2553	Abnormally low toner density detected Magenta TCR Sensor	 TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 5 % or less for a given number of times consecutively. 	В

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C2554	Abnormally high toner density detected Magenta TCR Sensor	TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 12 % or more for a given number of times consecutively.	В
C2555	Abnormally low toner density detected Yellow TCR Sensor	TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 5 % or less for a given number of times consecutively.	В
C2556	Abnormally high toner density detected Yellow TCR Sensor	TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 12 % or more for a given number of times consecutively.	В
C2557	Abnormally low toner density detected Black TCR Sensor	TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 5 % or less for a given number of times consecutively.	В
C2558	Abnormally high toner density detected Black TCR Sensor	TC ratio in the developing machine, which is determined by Toner replenishing amount control mechanism, is 12 % or more for a given number of times consecutively.	В
C2559	Cyan TCR Sensor adjustment failure	TCR Sensor automatic adjustment does not func- tion properly, failing to adjust to an appropriate	В
C255A	Magenta TCR Sensor adjustment failure	value.	В
C255B	Yellow TCR Sensor adjustment failure		В
C255C	Black TCR Sensor adjustment failure		В
C2651	Cyan Imaging Unit EEPROM access error	The re-written data, which has been read out, checked and founded as error, is read out again	С
C2652	Magenta Imaging Unit EEPROM access error	and found as error. The error was found when reading out the counter	С
C2653	Yellow Imaging Unit EEPROM access error	value.	С
C2654	Black Imaging Unit EEPROM access error		С
C2A01	Cyan Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error	The re-written data, which has been read out, checked and founded as error, is read out again	С
C2A02	Magenta Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error	and found as error. The error was found when reading out the counter	С
C2A03	Yellow Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error	value.	С
C2A04	Black Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error		С
C3301	Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/1's failure to turn	The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predeter- mined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В
C3302	Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/2's failure to turn	The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predeter- mined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C3451	Heat. Heater Trouble	The Heating Roller Thermistor/1 (TH1) and the Heating Roller Thermistor/2 (TH3) fails to raise a given degree of temperature even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Heating Roller Heater lamp/1 (H1) is turned ON. The detected temperature of the Heating Roller Thermistor/1 (TH1) is lower for a given level of degree than one of the Fusing Pressure Roller Thermistor/1 (TH2) after the Front Door is opened or closed, the Main Power Switch is turned ON or TROUBLE RESET is implemented. The counter value of zero cross signal input is not updated for a given period of time.	A
C3452	Press. Heater Trouble	The Fusing Pressure Roller Thermistor/1 (TH2) fails to raise a given degree of temperature even after the lapse of a given period of time after the Fusing Pressure Heater Lamp (H3) is turned ON. The detected temperature of the Fusing Pressure Roller Thermistor/1 (TH2) is lower for a given level of degree than one of the Heating Roller Thermistor/1 (TH1) after the Front Door is opened or closed, the Main Power Switch is turned ON or TROUBLE RESET is implemented.	A
C3461	New Fusing Unit New Article Release	A new installation is not detected when a new Fusing Unit is installed.	В
C3751	Abnormal High Temp. (Heater)	The temperatures of the Heating Roller Thermistor/1 (TH1) and the Heating Roller Thermistor/2 (TH3) are higher than a given level of degree for 1 second or more uninterruptedly. The Heater Relay is OFF.	Α
C3752	Abnormal High Temp. (Press)	The temperature of the Fusing Pressure Roller Thermistor/1 (TH2) is higher than a given level of degree for 1 second or more uninterruptedly before the Heater temperature control starts. The temperature of the Fusing Pressure Roller Thermistor/1 (TH2) is higher than a given level of degree for 1 second or more uninterruptedly after the Heater temperature control starts.	А
C3851	Abnormal Low Temp. (Heater)	The temperature of the Heating Roller Thermistor/1 (TH1) is lower than a given level of degree for 1 second or more uninterruptedly during Ready mode, Low Power mode or printing. The temperature of the Heating Roller Thermistor/2 (TH3) is lower than a given level of degree for 1 second or more uninterruptedly during Ready mode, Low Power mode or printing.	А
C3852	Abnormal Low Temp. (Press)	The temperature of the Fusing Pressure Roller Thermistor /1 (TH2) is lower than a given level of degree for 1 second or more uninterruptedly dur- ing Ready mode, Low Power mode or printing.	А

Code	Item	Description	Rank
C3A01	Paper Stuck to Fuser Heater Roller	The temperature of the Heating Roller Thermistor /1 (TH1) goes down by a given level of degree compared to the temperature of a given period of time before when the paper passes on the Timing Roller and blocks the Exit Sensor (PC2).	Α
C3A02	Paper Stuck to Fuser Pressure Roller	The temperature of the Fusing Pressure Roller Thermistor /1 (TH2) goes down by a given level of degree compared to the temperature of a given period of time before when the paper passes on the Timing Roller and blocks the Exit Sensor (PC2).	А
C4151	Polygon Motor/C failure to turn	The Polygon motor fails to turn stably even after	В
C4152	Polygon Motor/M failure to turn	the lapse of a given period of time after activating the Polygon motor.	В
C4153	Polygon Motor/Y failure to turn	Motor Lock signal detects H for a given period	В
C4154	Polygon Motor/K failure to turn	time consecutively during the Polygon motor is rotating.	В
C4551	Laser malfunction (Cyan)	SOS signal is not detected even after the lapse of	В
C4552	Laser malfunction (Magenta)	a given period of time after staring the laser output.	В
C4553	Laser malfunction (Yellow)	SOS signal is not detected for a given period of	В
C4554	Laser malfunction (Black)	time during printing or IDC sensor adjustment.	В
C4705	Image Output Time Out	No image data is output from the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP).	С
C4761	Compression hardware timeout	The hardware involved with the compression function offered by the MFP Control Board (PWB- MFP) does not respond.	С
C4765	Extraction hardware timeout	The hardware involved with the extraction function offered by the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) does not respond.	С
C4770	JBIG0 Error	The MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) is faulty.	С
C4771	JBIG1 Error		С
C4772	JBIG2 Error		С
C4773	JBIG3 Error		С
C4780	Compressor 0 command buffer stop failure		С
C4781	Compressor 1 command buffer stop failure		С
C4782	Compressor 2 command buffer stop failure		С
C4783	Compressor 3 command buffer stop failure		С
C5102	Main Motor's failure to turn	The Motor Lock signal remains HIGH for a prede- termined continuous period of time while the Motor is turning.	В
C5103	Main Motor turning at abnormal timing	The Motor Lock signal remains LOW for a prede- termined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В

	Code	Item		Description	Rank
	C5351	Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/1's failure to turn	•	The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В
	C5353	Cooling Fan Motor 2's failure to turn	•	The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В
	C5354	Ozone Ventilation Fan Motor's failure to turn	•	The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В
	C5357	Cooling Fan Motor/1's failure to turn	•	The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В
	C5358	Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/2's failure to turn	•	The Fan Lock signal remains HIGH for a predetermined continuous period of time while the Motor remains stationary.	В
	CA051	Standard controller configuration failure	•	The controller of the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) is faulty.	С
	CA052	Controller hardware error	•	A controller hardware error is detected in the network I/F.	С
	CA053	Controller start failure	•	A controller start failure is detected in the controller interface.	С
	CC151	ROM contents error upon startup (MSC)	•	A fault is detected in a sequence of ROM contents check of the MSC (PWB-MFP) during starting	С
	CC153	ROM contents error upon startup (PRT)	•	A fault is detected in a sequence of ROM contents check of the Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M) during starting.	С
	CC154	ROM contents error upon startup (PH)	•	A fault is detected in a sequence of ROM contents check of the PH Interface Board (PWB-D) during starting.	С
	CC163	ROM contents error (PRT)	•	The wrong model of firmware is detected in the engine during the initial connection to the engine is being checked.	С
<u>^</u> 2	CD001	Hard disk initialization abnormality	•	Abnormality of saved data (document information) is detected at data check in hard disk during starting.	С
	CD002	JOB RAM save error	•	The error in save of JOB data to the Memory/ Hard Disk and its read error are detected.	С
	CD004	Hard disk access error	•	Unable to communicate between the hard disk and MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP).	С
	CD005	Hard Disk Error 1	•	Hard disk is faulty.	С
	CD006	Hard Disk Error 2			С
	CD007	Hard Disk Error 3			С
	CD008	Hard Disk Error 4			С
	CD009	Hard Disk Error 5			С
	CD00A	Hard Disk Error 6			С
	CD00B	Hard Disk Error 7			С
	CD00C	Hard Disk Error 8			С
	CD00D	Hard Disk Error 9			С

Code	Item		Description	Rank
CD00E	Hard Disk Error A	•	Hard disk is faulty.	С
CD00F	Hard disk data transfer error	•	Data transfer from the hard disk is faulty.	С
CD010	Hard disk unformat	•	Unformatted hard disk is connected.	С
CD011	Hard disk specifications error	•	A hard disk that falls outside the specifications is connected.	С
CD020	Hard disk verify error	•	The data abnormality is detected by the HDD verify check.	С
CD201	File memory mounting error	•	The file memory is not mounted. The file has any abnormality.	С
CD202	Memory capacity discrepancy	•	File memory capacity on the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) is not enough. File memory capacity necessary for duplex printing is not enough during Duplex unit mounting.	O
CD203	Memory capacity discrepancy 2	•	File memory capacity on the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) is not enough.	С
CD211	PCI-SDRAM DMA operation failure	•	Hardware related to the transfer of memory image of the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) fails to respond.	С
CD212	Compression/extraction timeout detection	•	Hardware related to the BTC compression function of the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) fails to respond.	С
CD22#	Trouble related to Security	•	Contact the responsible people of KONIKA MINOTLTA before taking some countermeasures.	-
CD241	Encryption board setting error	•	Initialization error of the encrypted ASIC is detected during the machine is starting.	С
CD242	Encryption board mounting error	•	The faulty of the installation of encrypted ASIC is detected during the machine is starting.	O
CD3##	NVRAM Data error	•	Abnormality is detected by the abnormal check of each NVRAM Data.	ı
CD370	NVRAM Data multiple errors	•	Multiple errors (Over 5) are detected by the abnormal check of each NVRAM data.	ı
CDC##	Trouble related to Security	•	Contact the responsible people of KONIKA MINOTLTA before taking some countermeasures.	-
CE001	Abnormal message queue	•	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) is faulty.	С
CE002	Message and Method parameter failure			С
CE003	Task error			С
CE004	Event error			С
CE005	Memory access error	Ī		С
CE006	Header access error			С
CE007	DIMM initialize error			С
CEEE1	MSC undefined malfunction occurring	•	An undefined malfunction occurs in the MSC of the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP).	С
CEEE3	Engine Section undefined malfunction	•	An undefined malfunction occurs in the Engine Section (PWB-M, etc.).	Α

- The machine displays an abort code (CF###) on the Control Panel as it becomes unable to process tasks properly through its software control.
- When the system program is aborted, check the electrical component, unit, option, and connection relating to the specific type of the abort condition.



00	ection relating to the specific t	ype of the about our	and in	
Code	Item		Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
CF001	CT_SingleList Table Abnormal		MFP Control Board	С
CF002	CT_DoubleList Table Abnormal		(PWB-MFP)	С
CF003	CT_DoubleList Table Abnormal			С
CF004	CT_Queue Full Abnormal			С
CF011	ArrayLink Abnormal			С
CF012	FAT Link Abnormal			С
CF013	File Size Abnormal			С
CF021	setDelayMessage Table OverFlow			С
CF022	procSetBootParamTcpipAd- dress() injustice			С
CF023	MsgQue OverFlow	An exceptional		С
CF031	getJobPageToIPE() page number injustice	instance occurred due to the unex-		С
CF032	getJobHDDPageToIPE() page number injustice	pected Parameter in the System F/W.		С
CF033	setDivTbl() limitation over			С
CF034	HDDQUEUE Over Flow			С
CF041	getAPPPtrFromAPPID() abnormal			С
CF042	getAPPIndexFromAPPID() abnormal			С
CF051	CC_InputPageEntry:operator[] page injustice			С
CF061	IdeCommand_Set() status Abnormal			С
CF062	IdeCommand_Set() parameter Abnormal			С
CF091	PCI ASIC1 ERROR	ASIC1 Error	1	С
CF092	PCI ASIC2 ERROR	ASIC2 Error		С
CF093	PCI ASIC4 ERROR	ASIC3 Error	1	С
CF101	SCAN TIME OUT	Image transfer malfunctions		С
CF111	Compress TIME OUT			С
CF112	Compress Table OverFlow			С
CF113	Compress Table check	Compression		С
CF121	Expand TIME OUT	malfunctions		С
CF122	Expand Table OverFlow			С
CF123	Expand ExpandLine Abnormal	1		С

Code	Item		Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
CF131	Print TIME OUT	Image transfer malfunctions	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CF201	startIRReadAnd Compress()Sequence			С
CF202	startWorkSave()Sequence Abnormal			С
CF203	convAPItoIJCParameter()page Abnormal			С
CF204	calcCompresserUse()CmpEx- pID Abnormal			С
CF211	setParameterBandColorPlane() Table OverFlow	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unex-		С
CF212	convAPItoIJCParameter()page Abnormal	pected Parameter in the System F/W.		С
CF213	calcExpandUse() CmpExpID Abnormal			С
CF221	startPrintOutput outputsize zero			С
CF222	Next request comes during processing of startPrintOutput ()			С
CF223	Next request comes during processing of startWorkLoad-Output ()			С
CF300	IR Bus Check Timeout	Image transfer Error on IR Input Bus		С
CF411	Parity error			С
CF421	Overrun error			С
CF431	Parity error + Overrun error			С
CF441	Framing error			С
CF451	Parity error + Framing error			С
CF461	Overrun error + Framing error			С
CF471	Parity error + Overrun error + Framing error	Communication Error		С
CF412	Parity error	(between IR-Sys- tems)		С
CF422	Overrun error			С
CF432	Parity error + Overrun error			С
CF442	Framing error			С
CF452	Parity error + Framing error			С
CF462	Overrun error + Framing error			С
CF472	Parity error + Overrun error + Framing error			С
CF510	Parity error			С



Code	Item		Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
CF520	Framing error		MFP Control Board	С
CF530	Parity error + Framing error		(PWB-MFP)	С
CF540	Overrun error			С
CF550	Parity error + Overrun error			С
CF560	Overrun error + Framing error			С
CF570	Parity error + Overrun error + Framing error	Communication Error (IR detected)		С
CF580	Frame distortion of ADF			С
CF600	Report receiving of print start that is out of sequence		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Engine	С
CF601	Report receiving of paper feed- ing that is out of sequence			С
CF604	Outside IF/Command Queue		MFP Control Board	С
CF614	"Output sequence" Queue		(PWB-MFP)	С
CF624	Panel LCD date Queue			С
CF704	Common data "Delete-waiting HDD accumulated job ID" Queue			С
CF714	IRC/Command Queue			С
CF724	Engine/Command Queue		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Engine	С
CF734	Panel/Command Queue		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Control Panel	С
CF744	File Memory Transfer start-waiting Command Queue		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CF754	File Memory Compression requesting Command Queue	An exceptional instance occurred		O
CF764	Panel instruction delete job Queue	due to the unex- pected Parameter in		O
CF774	Warning delete job Queue	the System F/W.		O
CF784	Application instruction delete job Queue			С
CF794	Output page information for Duplex back side Queue			С
CF7A4	Paper feed completion output pate information Queue			С
CF7B4	Exposure compaction output page information Queue			С
CF7C4	Pre-discharge completion output page information Queue			С
CF7D4	Touch panel coordinate data Queue			С
CF7E4	Direct Key data Queue			С
CF802	SIO Sending PortENG		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Engine	С

	Code	Item		Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
	CF806	SIO Sending PortIRC		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
	CF810	SIO Sending PortJig software		Jig software connection cable / MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
Γ	CF812	SIO Sending PortFiery		MFP Control Board	С
	CF815	SIO Sending PortPIC/PIC Term	inal	(PWB-MFP)	С
	CF8ED	SIO Sending PortEPNet			С
	CF902	SIO Receiving PortENG		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Engine	С
	CF906	SIO Receiving PortIRC		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
	CF910	SIO Receiving PortJig software		Jig software connection cable / MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
	CF912	SIO Receiving PortFiery		MFP Control Board	С
	CF915	SIO Receiving PortPIC/PIC Ter	minal	(PWB-MFP)	С
	CF9ED	SIO Receiving PortEPNet			С
	CFA01	getOneImgTransInfoFromTh() No applied thread			С
	CFA02	chkEnableAllocExec() default error			С
	CFA03	setTransBandAndRepeatNum() error			С
	CFA04	Application ID error			С
	CFA05	Thread selection image processing mode error			С
	CFA06	getOneImgIndexNumFromTh() No applied thread			С
	CFA07	setBufBandFromOut() No applied thread	An exceptional instance occurred		С
	CFA08	chkStartOutput() No applied thread	due to the unex- pected Parameter in		С
	CFA09	rptReleaseMemResultACS() No applied thread	the System F/W.		С
	CFA10	rptEndBandTrans() No applied thread			С
	CFA11	cancelTransExec() No applied thread			С
	CFA12	CC_ImgTransInfo:allocTransIndex			С
	CFA13	CC_MultiThreadProfile:rptBuf2 MemClrEnd			С
	CFA21	Outside image input start			С
	CFA22	Inside image outside output start			С

Δ	
/1\	

Code	Item			Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
CFA23	Engine Input start		•	MFP Control Board	С
CFA24	Buffer memory → File memory transfer Start			(PWB-MFP)	С
CFA25	BTC compression/CMM start				С
CFA26	Inside image PCIBridegDMA input/output start				С
CFA27	File memory → Buffer memory transfer Start				С
CFA28	BTC extension start	1			С
CFA29	JPEG compression start				С
CFA30	JPEG extension start				С
CFA31	Software resolution conversion start				С
CFA32	Hardware resolution conversion start				С
CFA33	Software rotating processing start				С
CFA34	Other Sequence malfunction	1			С
CFA35	Buffer Array malfunction	1			С
CFA36	Thread Service malfunction	An exceptional			С
CFA37	Input image height 0	instance occurred			С
CFA38	Output image width 0	due to the unex- pected Parameter in			С
CFA41	pcbuf_exinput.cpp,h	the System F/W.			С
CFA42	pcbuf_inout.cpp,h				С
CFA43	pcbuf_exoutput.cpp,h				С
CFA61	DMA A				С
CFA62	DMA B				С
CFA63	DMA C				С
CFA64	DMA D				С
CFA65	DMA E]			С
CFA66	DMA F]			С
CFA67	DMA G				С
CFA68	DMA H	1			С
CFA69	DMA I				С
CFA70	DMA J	1			С
CFA71	Interruption				С
CFA72	Common register setting				С
CFA73	PCIBridgeDMA				С
CFA74	BTC compression/Extension device				С
CFA75	СММ	1			С

Code	Item		Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
CFB52	DMA_A error interruption	Error concerning Data transmission Bus or hardware (IR Input system)	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CFB53	DMA_B error interruption	Error concerning		С
CFB54	DMA_C error interruption	Data transmission Bus or hardware (inside the Board)		С
CFB55	DMA_D 0 error interruption	Error concerning	MFP Control Board	С
CFB56	DMA_D 1 error interruption	Data transmission	(PWB-MFP)/Engine	С
CFB57	DMA_D 2 error interruption	Bus or hardware (Engine output sys-		С
CFB58	DMA_D 3 error interruption	tem)		С
CFB59	DMA_E error interruption		MFP Control Board	С
CFB5A	DMA_F error interruption	1	(PWB-MFP)	С
CFB5B	DMA_G error interruption	Error concerning Data transmission		С
CFB5C	DMA_H error interruption	Bus or hardware		С
CFB5D	DMA_I error interruption	(inside the Board)		С
CFB5E	DMA_J error interruption		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Engine	С
CFB5F	Watch Dog Timer Error interruption	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unexpected Parameter in the System F/W.	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CFB60	PCI slave error interruption		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Local I/F Board	С
CFB61	Local bus error interruption	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unexpected Parameter in the System F/W.	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CFB6E	Underrun at DMA_D 0 image output interface 1	-		С
CFB6F	Underrun at DMA_D 1 image output interface 1	Error concerning Data transmission Bus or hardware		С
CFB70	Underrun at DMA_D 2 image output interface 1	(Engine output system)		С
CFB71	Underrun at DMA_D 3 image output interface 1			С

Code	Item		Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
CFB72	Underrun at DMA_G image output interface 1		MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CFB73	Overflow at DMA_A/B image output interface 1	An exceptional instance occurred due to the unex-		С
CFB74	Underrun at DMA_F ASIC 1 image output interface	pected Parameter in the System F/W.		С
CFB75	Overflow at DMA_C ASIC 1 image input interface			С
CFB76	Target abort			С
CFB77	Master abort	1		С
CFB78	Forced stoppage			С
CFB79	Retry error detection of PCI master			С
CFB7A	Master read data parity error	PCI Bus connection		С
CFB7E	Master write data parity error	Device error		С
CFB7C	System error	-		С
CFB7D	Slave read data parity error	-		С
CFB7E	Slave write data parity error	-		С
CFB7F	Address parity error			С
CFB96	DMA-M error interruption			С
CFB97	DMA-N0 error interruption			С
CFB98	DMA-N1 error interruption			С
CFB99	DMA-N2 error interruption			С
CFB9A	DMA-N3 error interruption			С
CFC01	Color Number faulty			С
CFC02	Thread Sequence malfunction			С
CFC03	Thread Service Sequence mal- function	An exceptional instance occurred		С
CFC04	Thread Message Q malfunction	due to the unex-		С
CFC12	Output of output buffer 2 surpasses clear.	pected Parameter in the System F/W.		С
CFC13	Image transfer control information acquisition malfunction			С
CFD00	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA transfer completion line=0: DMA_	•		С
CFD01				С
CFD02	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA transfer completion line=0: DMA_	•		С
CFD03	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA transfer completion line=0: DMA_	•		С
CFD04	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA transfer completion line=0: DMA_	•		С

À	Code	ltem	Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
	CFD05	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_B2	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
	CFD06	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_C		С
	CFD07	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_D		С
	CFD08	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_E		С
	CFD09	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_F		С
	CFD0A	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_G		С
	CFD0B	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_H0		С
	CFD0C	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_H1		С
	CFD0D	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_H2		С
	CFD0E	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA-I		С
	CFD0F	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA-J	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Engine	С
	CFD10	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA PCI Bridge	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
	CFD11	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA 19 ASIC1		С
	CFD12	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA JPEG		С
	CFD13	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA NO		С
	CFD15	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA-N		С
	CFE00	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA_A0		С
	CFE01	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_A1		С
	CFE02	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_A2		С
	CFE03	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_B0		С
	CFE04	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_B1		С
	CFE05	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_B2		С
	CFE06	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_C		С

Code	Item	Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
CFE07	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_D	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CFE08	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_E		С
CFE09	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_F		С
CFE0A	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_G		С
CFE0B	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_H0		С
CFE0C	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_H1		С
CFE0D	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA_H2		С
CFE0E	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA-I		С
CFE0F	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA-J	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)/Engine	С
CFE10	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMAPCI Bridge	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
CFE11	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA19 ASIC1		С
CFE12	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA JPEG		С
CFE13	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line≠0: DMA NO		С
CFE15	ASIC10 Timeout Number of DMA under operation and transfer completion line=0: DMA-N		С
CFF00	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_A0		С
CFF01	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_A1		С
CFF02	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_A2		С
CFF03	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_B0		С
CFF04	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_B1		С
CFF05	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_B2		С
CFF06	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_C		С
CFF07	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_D		С
CFF08	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_E		С

Â	Code	ltem	Relevant Electrical Components, Units, and Options	Rank
	CFF09	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_F	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	С
	CFF0A	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_G		С
	CFF0B	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_H0		С
	CFF0C	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_H1		С
	CFF0D	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA_H2		С
	CFF0E	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA-I		С
	CFF0F	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA-J		С
	CFF10	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA PCI Bridge		С
	CFF11	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA 19 ASIC1		С
	CFF12	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA JPEG		С
	CFF13	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting:DMA NO		С
	CFF15	ASIC10 Timeout Waiting state of DMA band preparation register setting: DMA-N		С

23.4 How to reset

- Different malfunction resetting procedures apply depending on the rank of the Call Service.
- * List of Malfunction Resetting Procedures

Call Service Rank	Resetting Procedures
Rank A	Trouble Reset See P.303
Rank B	Opening/Closing the front door
Rank C	Turning main power switch OFF/ON

23.5 Solution

23.5.1 C0204: Tray 2 Elevator failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Tray 2 Lift-Up Sensor (PC7-PC) Tray 2 Lift-Up Motor (M3-PC)	Tray 2 Control Board (PWB-Z-PC)

Step	Action
1	Check the M3-PC connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Check the connector of M3-PC for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.
3	PC7-PC I/O check, Sensor check
4	M3-PC operation check
5	Change PWB-Z-PC

23.5.2 C0211: Manual Tray Rise Descent Error

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Bypass Lift-Up Sensor (PC14)	Tray 2 Control Board (PWB-Z-PC)
Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor (M2-PC)	

Step	Action
1	Check the M2-PC connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Check the connector of M2-PC for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.
3	PC14 I/O check, Sensor check
4	M2-PC operation check
5	Change PWB-Z-PC

23.5.3 C0301: Suction Fan Motor's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts			
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M) Right Door Assy			
Step		Action	
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.		
2	Change the Right Door Assy		
3	Change PWR-M		

23.5.4 C2151: 2nd Image Transfer Roller Separation

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	Right Door Assy

Step	Action
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Change the Right Door Assy
	Change PWB-M

23.5.5 C2152: Transfer Belt Separation

Relevant Electrical Parts	
1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Position	Main Motor (M1)
Sensor (PC6)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)
1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Clutch	
(CL3)	

Step	Action
1	Check the M1 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	PC6 I/O check, Sensor check
3	CL3 operation check
4	M1 operation check
5	Change PWB-M

23.5.6 C2253: Color PC Drum Motor's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Color PC Drum Motor (M2)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Check the connector of motor for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.
3	Check the PWB-M connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
4	M2 operation check (C0018)
5	Change PWB-M

23.5.7 C2254: Color PC Drum Motor's turning at abnormal timing

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Color	Color PC Drum Motor (M2) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Step	Action Action	
1	M2 operation check	
2	Change PWB-M	

23.5.8 C2255: Color Developing Motor's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts	
, ,	DC Power Supply (PU1) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Check the connector of motor for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.
3	Check the PU1 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
4	Check the PWB-M connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
5	M3 operation check
6	Change PU1
7	Change PWB-M

23.5.9 C2256: Color Developing Motor's turning at abnormal timing

Relevant Electrical Parts	
,	DC Power Supply (PU1) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action
1	M3 operation check
2	Change PU1
3	Change PWB-M

23.5.10 C2451: Transfer Cleaner Unit New Article Release

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)		

Step	Action
1	Reinstall Unit
2	Change PWB-M

- 23.5.11 C2551: Abnormally low toner density detected Cyan TCR Sensor
- 23.5.12 C2553: Abnormally low toner density detected Magenta TCR Sensor
- 23.5.13 C2555: Abnormally low toner density detected Yellow TCR Sensor

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Imaging Unit /C	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Imaging Unit /M	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	
Imaging Unit /Y		
Toner Supply Motor C/K (M6)		
Toner Supply Motor Y/M (M7)		

Step	Action
1	Perform image troubleshooting procedure if image density is low.
2	Clean the TCR Sensor window on the underside of the Imaging Unit if dirty
3	M6, M7 operation check
4	Reinstall Imaging Unit
5	Change Imaging Unit
6	Change PWB-M
7	Change PWB-MFP.

- 23.5.14 C2552: Abnormally high toner density detected Cyan TCR Sensor
- 23.5.15 C2554: Abnormally high toner density detected Magenta TCR Sensor
- 23.5.16 C2556: Abnormally high toner density detected Yellow TCR Sensor

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Imaging Unit /C	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Imaging Unit /M	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	
Imaging Unit /Y		

Step	Action
1	Clean the TCR Sensor window on the underside of the Imaging Unit if dirty
2	Reinstall Imaging Unit
3	Change Imaging Unit
4	Change PWB-M
5	Change PWB-MFP

23.5.17 C2557: Abnormally low toner density detected Black TCR Sensor

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Imaging Unit /K	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)
Toner Supply Motor C/K (M7)	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)

Step	Action
1	Perform image troubleshooting procedure if image density is low.
2	Clean the TCR Sensor window on the underside of the Imaging Unit if dirty
3	M7 operation check
4	Reinstall Imaging Unit
5	Change Imaging Unit /K
6	Change PWB-M
7	Change PWB-MFP.

23.5.18 C2558: Abnormally high toner density detected Black TCR Sensor

Relevant Electrical Parts	
8 8	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M) MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)

Step	Action
1	Correct the TCR connection on the underside of the Imaging Unit if faulty.
2	Reinstall Imaging Unit
3	Change Imaging Unit /K
4	Change PWB-M
5	Change PWB-MFP

23.5.19 C2559: Cyan TCR Sensor adjustment failure

23.5.20 C255A: Magenta TCR Sensor adjustment failure

23.5.21 C255B: Yellow TCR Sensor adjustment failure

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Imaging Unit /C	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	
Imaging Unit /M	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	
Imaging Unit /Y		
Toner Supply Motor Y/M (M6)		
Toner Supply Motor C/K (M7)		

Step	Action
1	Clean the TCR Sensor window on the underside of the Imaging Unit if dirty
2	M6, M7 operation check
3	Reinstall Imaging Unit
4	Change Imaging Unit
5	Change PWB-M
6	Change PWB-MFP

23.5.22 C255C: Black TCR Sensor adjustment failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Imaging Unit /K	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)
Toner Supply Motor C/K (M7)	MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)

Step	Action
1	Clean or correct each contact of the Imaging Unit if faulty.
2	M7 operation check
3	Reinstall Imaging Unit /K
4	Change Imaging Unit /K
5	Change PWB-M
6	Change PWB-MFP

23.5.23 C2651: Cyan Imaging Unit EEPROM access error

23.5.24 C2652: Magenta Imaging Unit EEPROM access error

23.5.25 C2653: Yellow Imaging Unit EEPROM access error

23.5.26 C2654: Black Imaging Unit EEPROM access error

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Imaging Unit /C Imaging Unit /M Imaging Unit /Y Imaging Unit /K	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action
1	Clean the connection between the Imaging Unit and the machine if dirty
2	Reinstall Imaging Unit
3	Change Imaging Unit
4	Change PWB-M

23.5.27 C2A01: Cyan Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error

23.5.28 C2A02: Yellow Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error

23.5.29 C2A03: Magenta Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error

23.5.30 C2A04: Black Toner Cartridge EEPROM access error

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Toner Cartridge /C	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)
Toner Cartridge /M	
Toner Cartridge /Y	
Toner Cartridge /K	

Step	Action
1	Clean the connection between the Toner Cartridge and the machine if dirty
2	Reinstall Toner Cartridge
3	Change Toner Cartridge
4	Change PWB-M

23.5.31 C3301: Fusing Cooling Fan Motor /1's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/1 (M11)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action	
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	
3	M11 operation check	
4	Change PWB-M	

23.5.32 C3302: Fusing Cooling Fan Motor /2's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/2 (M13)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	

Step	Action	
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	
3	M13 operation check	
4	Change PWB-M	

23.5.33 C3451: Heat. Heater Trouble

23.5.34 C3452: Press. Heater Trouble

23.5.35 C3751: Abnormal High Temp. (Heater)
23.5.36 C3752: Abnormal High Temp. (Press)

23.5.37 C3851: Abnormal Low Temp. (Heater)

23.5.38 C3852: Abnormal Low Temp. (Press)

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Fusing Unit	DC Power Supply (PU1) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	

Step	Action	
1	Check the Fusing Unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	
2	Check the Fusing Unit, PWB-M and PU1 for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	
3	Change Fusing Unit	
4	Change PWB-M	
5	Change PU1	

23.5.39 C3461: Fusing Unit New Article Release

Relevant Electrical Parts				
Fusing	Fusing Unit Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)			
Step	Step Action			
1	Check the Fusing Unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).			
2	Check the Fusing Unit, PWB-M for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.			
3	Reinstall Fusing Unit			
4	Change Fusing Unit			
5	Change PWB-M			

23.5.40 C3A01: Paper Stuck to Fuser Heater Roller

23.5.41 C3A02: Paper Stuck to Fuser Pressure Roller

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Fusing Unit	DC Power Supply (PU1)	
Exit Sensor (PC2)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	

Step	Action	
1	Check the Fusing Unit for correct installation (whether it is secured in position).	
2	Check the Fusing Unit, PWB-M for proper connection and correct or change as necessary.	
3	PC2 I/O check, Sensor check	
4	Change Fusing Unit	
5	Change PWB-M	
6	Change PU1	

23.5.42 C4151: Polygon Motor/C failure to turn
23.5.43 C4152: Polygon Motor/M failure to turn
23.5.44 C4153: Polygon Motor/Y failure to turn

23.5.45 C4154: Polygon Motor/K failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts		
PH Unit	PH Interface Board (PWB-D) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	

Step	Action
1	Check the connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Change PH Unit
3	Change PWB-D
4	Change PWB-M

23.5.46 C4551: Laser malfunction (Cyan)
23.5.47 C4552: Laser malfunction (Magenta)
23.5.48 C4553: Laser malfunction (Yellow)
23.5.49 C4554: Laser malfunction (Black)

Relevant Electrical Parts		
	PH Interface Board (PWB-D) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	

Step	Action
1	Check the connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Change PH Unit
3	Change PWB-D
4	Change PWB-M

23.5.50 C4705: Image Output Time Out

Relevant Electrical Parts		
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)		

Step	Action
1	Select [Service Mode] \rightarrow [State Confirmation] \rightarrow [Memory/HDD Adj.] \rightarrow [Memory Bus Check] \rightarrow [Memory \rightarrow PRT] of the Jig software.
2	Check the connectors on PWB-MFP for proper connection and correct as necessary.
3	Change PWB-MFP

23.5.51	C4761: Compression hardware timeout
23.5.52	C4765: Extraction hardware timeout
23.5.53	C4770: JBIG0 Error
23.5.54	C4771: JBIG1 Error
23.5.55	C4772: JBIG2 Error
23.5.56	C4773: JBIG3 Error
23.5.57	C4780: Compressor 0 command buffer sto

23.5.57 C4780: Compressor 0 command buffer stop failure
23.5.58 C4781: Compressor 1 command buffer stop failure
23.5.59 C4782: Compressor 2 command buffer stop failure
23.5.60 C4783: Compressor 3 command buffer stop failure

Relevant Electrical Parts	
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	DIMM0 (Work0) DIMM1 (Work1)

Step	Action
1 1	When the error is displayed after the memory check, remove and insert the DIMM0 and DIMM1 again to recheck (C4765).
2	Change PWB-MFP

23.5.61 C5102: Main Motor's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts	
· ·	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M) DC Power Supply (PU1)

Step	Action	
1	Check the M1 connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Check M1 for proper drive coupling and correct as necessary.	
3	Check the PWB-M connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
4	M1 operation check	
5	Change PWB-M	
6	Change PU1	

23.5.62 C5103: Main Motor Turning at abnormal timing

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Main Motor (M1)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M) DC Power Supply (PU1)

Step	Action
1	M1 operation check
2	Change PWB-M
3	Change PU1

23.5.63 C5351: Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/1's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/1 (M8)	DC Power Supply (PU1)

Step	Action	
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	
3	M8 operation check	
4	Change PU1	

23.5.64 C5353: Cooling Fan Motor 2's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Cooling Fan Motor/2 (M22)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action	
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	
3	M22 operation check	
4	Change PWB-M	

23.5.65 C5354: Ozone Ventilation Fan Motor's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts	
Ozone Ventilation Fan Motor (M14)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)

Step	Action	
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	
3	M14 operation check	
4	Change PWB-M	

23.5.66 C5357: Cooling Fan Motor/1's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Cooling Fan Motor/1 (M12)	Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	

Step	Action	
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.	
3	M12 operation check	
4	Change PWB-M	

3

4

bizhub C250P/C252P

23.5.67 C5358: Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/2's failure to turn

Relevant Electrical Parts			
Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/2 (M9) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)			
Step	Action		
1	Check the connector of motor for proper connection and correct as necessary.		
2	Check the fan for possible overload and correct as necessary.		

23.5.68 CA051: Standard Controller configuration failure

23.5.69 CA052:Controller hardware error

23.5.70 CA053: Controller start failure

M9 operation check

Change PWB-M

Relevant Electrical Parts		
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)		

Step	Action	
1	Check to see if the following setting has been correctly made: [Service Mode] \rightarrow [System 2] \rightarrow [Image Controller Setting] of the Jig software. If changing the setting, turn OFF the Main Power SW and turn it ON again after 10 seconds or more.	
2	Check the connectors of the MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP) for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
3	Change PWB-MFP	

23.5.71 CC151: ROM contents error upon startup (MSC)

23.5.72 CC153: ROM contents error upon startup (PRT)

23.5.73 CC154: ROM contents error upon startup (PH)

Step	Action	
1	Check the ROM version.	
2	Rewrite firmware using the Compact Flash card.	
3	Replace the appropriate board.	

23.5.74 CC163: ROM contents error (PRT)

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)		

Step	Action	
1	Check the ROM version.	
2	Rewrite firmware using the Compact Flash card.	
3	Change PWB-M	

23.5.75 CD001: Hard disk initialization abnormality

CD002: JOB RAM save error 23.5.76

Relevant Electrical Parts		
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	Hard Disk	

Step	Action
1	Check the Hard Disk connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.
2	Format Hard Disk.
3	Change Hard Disk.
4	Change PWB-MFP.

- 23.5.77 CD004: Hard disk access error
- 23.5.78 CD005: Hard Disk Error 1
- 23.5.79 CD006: Hard Disk Error 2
- 23.5.80 CD007: Hard Disk Error 3
- 23.5.81 CD008: Hard Disk Error 4
- 23.5.82 CD009: Hard Disk Error 5
- 23.5.83 CD00A: Hard Disk Error 6
- 23.5.84 CD00B: Hard Disk Error 7
- 23.5.85 CD00C: Hard Disk Error 8

23.5.86

- CD00E: Hard Disk Error A 23.5.87
- 23.5.88 CD00F: Hard disk data transfer error

CD00D: Hard Disk Error 9

↑ 23.5.89 CD020: Hard disk verify error

Relevant Electrical Parts		
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)		Hard Disk

Step	Action	
1	Check the Hard Disk connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Reinstall the Hard Disk.	
3	Change Hard Disk.	
4	Change PWB-MFP.	

23.5.90 CD010: Hard disk unformat

Relevant Electrical Parts		
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	Hard Disk	

Step	Action		
1	$\label{eq:select} Select [Service Mode] \rightarrow [State Confirmation] \rightarrow [Memory/HDD \ Adj.] \rightarrow [HDD \ Format] \ of the \ Jig software.$		
2	Change Hard Disk		
3	Change PWB-MFP		

23.5.91 CD011: Hard disk specifications error

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Hard Disk		

	Step	Action	
Ì	1	Check the hard disk specifications.	
	2	Change the hard disk.	

23.5.92 CD201: File memory mounting error

23.5.93 CD202: Memory capacity discrepancy

23.5.94 CD203: Memory capacity discrepancy 2

Relevant Electrical Parts		
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	DIMM/0 (WORK0) DIMM/1 (WORK1)	

Step	Action	
1	Check to see if the memory (DIMM/0, DIMM/1) on PWB-MFP is installed correctly.	
2	Change the memory (DIMM/0, DIMM/1) on PWB-MFP.	
3	Change PWB-MFP.	

23.5.95 CD211: PCI-SDRAM DMA operation failure

23.5.96 CD212: Compression/extraction timeout detection

	Relevant Ele	ectrical Parts
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)		

Step	Action
1	Change PWB-MFP.



CD241: Encryption board setting error 23.5.97

23.5.98 CD242: Encryption board mounting error

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Encryption Board (SC-503)		

Step	Action	
1	Check the Encryption Board connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.	
2	Change Encryption Board.	

23.5.99 CD3##: NVRAM Data error

 When the data stored due to the NVRAM trouble is lost, backup data can be used for restoration.



- ♠ Trouble code [C-D370] will be displayed when multiple errors (over 5) of NVRAM data are detected, which can be restored with one restoration command.
 - · Data backup will be automatically performed every hour. Backup can also be performed manually with the following setting.

[Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Data Backup]

See P.210

A. Recovery procedure from NVRAM data error

- 1. With the malfunction code displayed on the screen, press the following keys:
 - $\blacktriangledown \to \blacktriangleright \to \blacktriangledown \to \blacktriangleright \to \blacktriangledown \to \mathsf{Menu/Select}$ key
- 2. The message "Data restoration OK to Start?" appears on the control panel.
- 3. Press the Menu/Select key.
- 4. The message "Data restoration Now processing." appears on the control panel and data restoration sequence is carried out.

NOTE

- When the restoration is performed in a short time, data restoration screen may not be displayed.
- 5. When the message "Complete." appears on the control panel, turn OFF the Main Power Switch. Then, wait for 10 sec. or more before turning ON the Main Power Switch again.

NOTE

· In case it failed to restore data, return to the malfunction code screen.

23.5.100 CE001: Abnormal message queue

23.5.101 CE003: Task error 23.5.102 CE004: Event error

23.5.103 CE005: Memory access error 23.5.104 CE006: Header access error 23.5.105 CE007: DIMM initialize error

	Relevant Ele	ectrical Parts
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)		

Step	Action		
1	Check the connectors on PWB-MFP for proper connection and correct as necessary.		
2	Change PWB-MFP.		

↑ 23.5.106 CE002: Message and Method parameter failure

	Relevant Electrical Parts	
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)	Hard Disk	

Step	Action
1	If it occurred after upgrading the Firmware, conduct the following setting. [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Version Upgrad] → [HDD Ver. Upgrad] See P.205
2	Turn OFF the main power switch and turn it ON again, and conduct the following setting. [Tech. Rep. Mode] → [Initialization] → [Data Clear]. See P.203
3	Format Hard Disk.
4	Change Hard Disk.
5	Change PWB-MFPC.

23.5.107 CEEE1: MSC undefined malfunction occurring

Relevant Electrical Parts		
MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)		

Step	Action			
1	Check the connectors on PWB-MFP for proper connection and correct as necessary.			
2	Change PWB-MFP			

23.5.108 CEEE3: Engine Section undefined malfunction

Relevant Electrical Parts			
Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)			

Step	Action			
1	Check the PWB-M connector for proper connection and correct as necessary.			
2	Change PWB-M			

24. Power supply trouble

24.1 Machine is not Energized at All (PU1 Operation Check)

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Main Power Switch (S1) Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)	DC Power Supply (PU1)	

Step	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Is a power voltage supplied across PJ1PU1-1 and 3 on PU1?	NO	Check the WIRING from the wall outlet to S1 PJ1PU1.
2	Are the fuses on PU1 conducting?	NO	Change PU1.
3	Is DC24 V being output from PJ5PU1-2 on PU1?	NO	Change PU1.
4	Is DC5 V being input to PJ7PU1-3 on PU1?	NO	Change PU1.
5	Is DC5 V being input to CNPOW-4 on the Control Board?	NO	Change PU1.
	(LED on PWB-M does not blink.)		Change PWB-M

24.2 Control panel indicators do not light.

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Control Panel (UN1)	DC Power Supply (PU1)	

Step	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Is a power voltage being applied across PJ1PU1-1 and 3 on PU1?	NO	Check the WIRING from the wall outlet to S1 PJ1PU1.
2	Is the fuse on PU1 conducting?	NO	Change PU1.
3	Is DC5 V being output from PJ13PU1-1 on PU1 and DC24 V from PJ12PU1-2?	NO	Change PU1.
4	Is CN1 on UN1 securely connected?	NO	Reconnect.
4		YES	Change UN1.

24.3 Fusing Heaters do not Operate

Relevant Electrical Parts		
Primary Interlock Switch (S2) Fusing Unit	DC Power Supply (PU1)	

Step	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Is the power source voltage applied across PJ2PU1-1 to 3 on PU1? During this time, the Right Door should be closed.	NO	Check wiring from power outlet to S2 to PJ2PU1.
2	Is the power source voltage applied across CN30-1 and 3,	YES	Fusing Unit
2	or across 2 and 3?	NO	Change PU1.

24.4 Power is not Supplied to Option

24.4.1 Optional Paper Feed Cabinet

Step	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Is DC24 V being applied to hookup connector CN12-2?	NO	Malfunction in Paper Feed Cabinet
2	Is DC24 V being output from CNCST-2 on PWB-M?	NO	Check wiring from PWB-M to CN12 to Paper Feed Cabinet.
	Is the fuse on PU1 conducting?	YES	Change PU1.
3		NO	Malfunction in Paper Feed Cabinet

24.4.2 Power is not Supplied to Automatic Duplex Unit

Step	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Is DC24 V being output from CN19-2 on Duplex?	NO	Malfunction in Duplex.
2	Is DC24 V being output from CNDUP-2 on PWB-M?	NO	Check wiring from PWB-M to CN19 to Duplex.
3	Is the fuse on PU1 conducting?	YES	Change PU1.
3		NO	Malfunction in Duplex.

24.4.3 **Finisher**



A. FS-501/FS-603

Step	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Are DC24 V and DC5 V being applied to CN60-11 and CN60-1, respectively, of the Finisher?	NO	Malfunction in Finisher.
2	Are DC24 V and DC5 V being applied to PJ6PU1-1 on PU1 and CNFIN-1 on PWB-M, respectively?	NO	Check wiring from PU1 to PWB-M to Finisher.
3	Is the fuse on PU1 conducting?	YES	Change PU1.
٦		NO	Malfunction in Finisher.



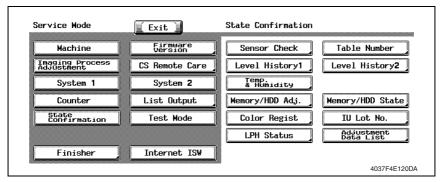
<u>2</u> B. FS-514

Step	Check item	Result	Action
1	Are DC24 V being applied to CN65-1 of the Finisher?	NO	Malfunction in finisher.
2	Are DC24 V being applied to PJ6DCPU-1 on DCPU?	NO	Check wiring from DCPU to finisher.
3	Is the fuse on DCPU conducting?	YES	Change DCPU.
J		NO	Malfunction in finisher.

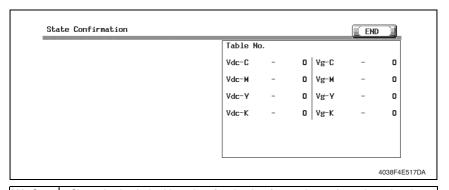
25. Image quality problem

25.1 How to read Element date

 As part of troubleshooting procedures, the numeric values set for "State Confirmation" available from "Service Mode" can be used to isolate the cause of the image problem.

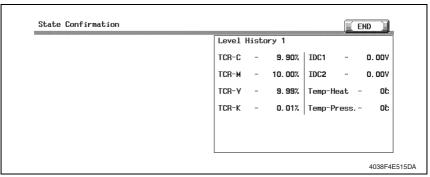


25.1.1 Table Number



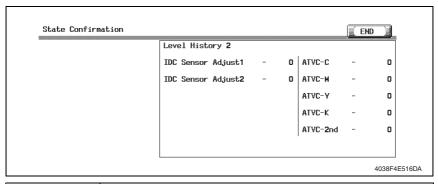
Vdc-M Vdc-Y Vdc-K	 Shows the developing bias value of each color of toner when an image is produced. Standard values: Around 400 V A correction is made to make the image lighter when the numeric value is greater. A correction is made to make the image darker when the numeric value is smaller. Relevant Components: Imaging Unit, High Voltage Unit (Developing Bias)
Vg-C Vg-M Vg-Y Vg-K	 Shows the grid voltage value of each color of toner when an image is produced. Standard values: Around 500 V A correction is made to make the image lighter when the numeric value is greater. A correction is made to make the image darker when the numeric value is smaller. Relevant Components: Imaging Unit, High Voltage Unit (Developing Bias)

25.1.2 Level History 1



TCR-C TCR-M TCR-Y TCR-K	 Shows the T/C ratio (in 0.01 % increments). Standard value: 8 ± 2 % Relevant Components: PH Unit, TCR Sensor K
IDC1 IDC2	 Shows the IDC bare surface output reading taken last (in 0.01 V increments). It should normally be around 4.3 V. The output range is 0 V to 5 V. "Reading taken last" means: Latest toner density When the Start key is pressed, the output value is displayed while a test print is being produced. Relevant Components: IDC Sensor, Transfer Belt Unit
Temp-Belt. Temp-Press.	 Shows the temperature of the Heating Roller (Temp-Heat) and the Fusing Pressure Roller (Temp-Press.) (in 1 °C increments). Relevant Components: Fusing Unit

25.1.3 Level History 2



IDC Sensor Adjust 1 IDC Sensor Adjust 2	 Shows the IDC intensity adjustment value. It should normally be around 40 and can range from 0 to 255. The value becomes greater as the Transfer Belt Unit has been used more. Relevant Components: IDC Sensor, Transfer Belt Unit
ATVC -C ATVC -M ATVC -Y ATVC -K ATVC -2nd	 Shows the latest ATVC level (which varies according to the paper type). 300 V to 3000 V (ATVC-C/-M/-Y/-K) 300 V to 5000 V (ATVC-2nd) Relevant Components: Transfer Belt Unit, High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing)

25.2 How to identify problematic part

- This chapter is divided into two parts: "Initial Check Items" and "Troubleshooting Procedure by a Particular Image Quality Problem."
- When an image quality problem occurs, first go through the "Initial Check Items" and, if
 the cause is yet to be identified, go to "Troubleshooting Procedure by a Particular Image
 Quality Problem."

25.2.1 Initial Check Items

A. Initial Check Items 1

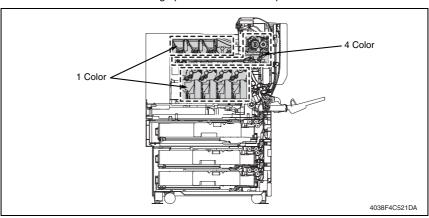
• The trouble will be distinguished whether it is on the Engine, or on the Controller.

* How to distinguish

Action	Result	Next Step
When transmitting the Print job to C250P/C252P, the "RIP" is displayed on the control panel on the Machine.	NO	See P.395 (Trouble on the controller)
When selecting "Demo page" from "Report output" which is available from "User setting", image trouble occurs.		Check the connector connected to MFP. Replace the MFP Board.
	YES	Initial Check Items 2

B. Initial Check Items 2

• If the printer is responsible for the image problem, let the machine produce a test print and determine whether the image problem occurs in a specific 1 color or 4 colors.



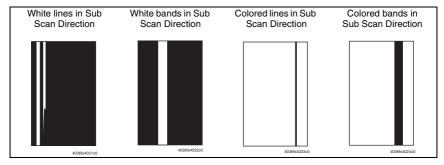
* How to distinguish

Image Problem	Action	Result	Cause
Lines, bands	Lines, bands When selecting "Demo page" from "Report output" which is available from "User setting", all four colors have image troubles.		Printer, 4 colors
			Printer, 1 color

25.3 Solution

25.3.1 Printer Monocolor: white lines in Sub Scan Direction, white bands in Sub Scan Direction, colored lines colored bands in Sub Scan Direction

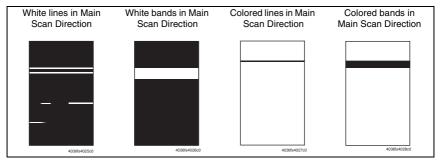
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image check	A white line or black line in sub scan direction is sharp.	NO	Clean the Comb Electrode by moving the Comb Electrode Cleaning Lever.
2	Imaging Unit	The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
3		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
4		Contact terminals make good connection between each IU and machine.	NO	Clean contact terminals.
5		Developing bias contact terminal makes good connection.	NO	Clean contact terminal and check terminal position.
6	PH Unit	The surface of the PH Window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6.	NO	Change Imaging Unit. → Change Image Transfer Belt Unit. → Change PH Unit.

25.3.2 Printer Monocolor: white lines in Main Scan Direction, white bands in Main Scan Direction, colored lines in Main Scan Direction, colored bands in Main Scan Direction

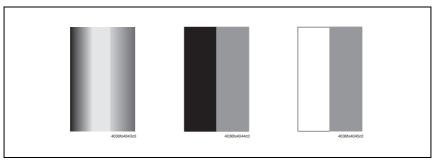
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image check	A white line or black line in sub scan direction is sharp.	NO	Clean the Comb Electrode by moving the Comb Electrode Cleaning Lever.
2	Imaging Unit	The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
3		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
4		Contact terminals make good connection between each IU and machine.	NO	Clean contact terminals.
5		Developing bias contact terminal makes good connection.	NO	Clean contact terminal and check terminal position.
6	PH Unit	The surface of the PH Window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6.	NO	Change Imaging Unit. → Change Image Transfer Belt Unit. → Change PH Unit.

25.3.3 Printer Monocolor: uneven density in sub scan direction

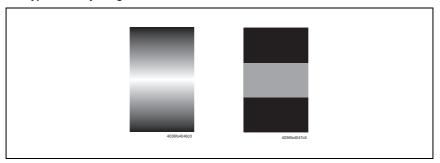
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	High image density original	Uneven density in Sub Scan Direction occurs at a pitch of 40 mm to 50 mm when a multi-print cycle is run using an original with high image density (50% or more).	rs at a pitch of 40 mm to sheets of paper with originals placed, as the part original with high sheets of paper with originals placed, as the fails to keep up with a	
2	Imaging Unit	The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
3		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
4	PH Unit	The surface of the PH Window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
5	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Cam gear operates properly.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change IU. → Change PH Unit. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.4 Printer Monocolor: uneven density in main scan direction

A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Imaging Unit	The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
2		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
3	PH Unit	The surface of the PH Window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
4	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Image Transfer Belt Unit makes positive contact with plates on rails.	NO	Check and correct contacts.
5		Cam gear operates properly.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change Imaging Unit. → Change PH Unit. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.5 Printer Monocolor: low image density

A. Typical Faulty Images

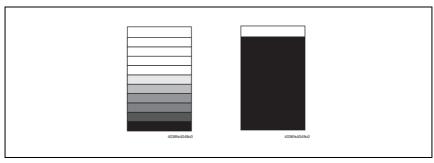


Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	State Confirm → Table Number (Service Mode)	Check data for Vg and Vdc. Color Vdc: Around 400 V Vg : Around 500 V Black Vdc: Around 400 V Vg : Around 500 V	NO	Go to next step.
2	State Confirmation \rightarrow	Check TCR data.	NO	Go to next step.
3	Level History 1 (Service Mode)	IDC output value is around 4.3 V.	NO	Clean IDC Sensor. Check Image Transfer Belt for damage.
4	Level History data	Low TCR and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 8.
5	check results	Low TCR and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 13.
6		TCR falling within specified range and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 8.
7		TCR falling within specified range and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 13.
8	Imaging Unit	Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
9	PH Unit	The surface of the PH Window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
10	TCR Sensor window	The color TCR Sensor window on the LED Assy is dirty.	YES	Clean.
11	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Image Transfer Belt Unit makes positive contact with plates on rails.	NO	Check and correct contacts.
12		Cam gear operates properly.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit.
13	Hopper Unit	Connectors are loose.	YES	Reconnect.
14		Gear is cracked.	YES	Change gear.
15	Image Process Adjustment → TCR Toner Supply (Service Mode)	Toner is properly supplied when TCR Toner Supply is run.	NO	Go to next step.

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
16	Image Process Adjustment → X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust) (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through Gradation Adjust. Max: 0 ± 100 Highlight = 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 19.
17	Image Process Adjustment → D Max Density (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of D Max.	NO	Go to next step.
18	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Reset + Stabilizer (Service Mode)	After the Reset + Stabilizer sequence has been completed, run Gradation Adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
19		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 18.	NO	Change Imaging Unit. → Change MFP Control Board → Change PH Unit. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.6 Printer Monocolor: gradation reproduction failure

A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Photo/Density	Original type and screen pattern are selected properly.	NO	Change screen pattern.
2	Imaging Unit	Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
3	PH Unit	The surface of the PH Window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
4	TCR Sensor window	TCR Sensor window is dirty.	YES	Clean.
5	State Confirmation → Level History 1 (Service Mode)	IDC output value is around 4.3 V.	NO	Clean IDC Sensor. Check Image Transfer Belt for damage.
6	Image Process Adjustment → X-Rite Calibration (Gradation Adjust) (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through Gradation Adjust. Max: 0 ± 100 Highlight = 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 9.
7	Image Process Adjustment → D Max Density (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of D Max.	NO	Go to next step.
8	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Reset + Stabilizer (Service Mode)	After the Reset + Stabilizer sequence has been completed, run Gradation Adjust;	NO	Go to next step.
9		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8.	NO	Change Imaging Unit. → Change MFP Control Board → Change PH Unit. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.7 Printer Monocolor: foggy background

A. Typical Faulty Images

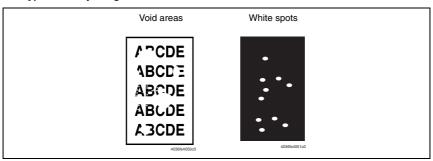


Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	State Confirmation → Table Number (Service Mode)	Check data for Vg and Vb. Color Vdc: Around 400 V Vg : Around 500 V Black Vdc: Around 400 V Vg : Around 500 V	NO	Go to next step.
2	State Confirmation \rightarrow	Check TCR data.	NO	Go to next step.
3	Level History 1 (Service Mode)	IDC output value is around 4.3 V.	NO	Clean IDC Sensor. Check Transfer Belt for damage.
4	Level History data	Low TCR and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 8.
5	check results	Low TCR and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 11.
6		TCR falling within specified range and low Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 8.
7		TCR falling within specified range and high Vg and Vdc	YES	Go to step 11.
8	Imaging Unit	Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
9	PH Unit	The surface of the PH Window is dirty.	YES	Clean with cleaning jig.
10	TCR Sensor window	The color TCR Sensor window is dirty.	YES	Clean.
11	Image Process Adjustment → Back- ground Voltage Margin (Service Mode)	The problem is eliminated after Background Voltage Margin has been adjusted.	NO	Go to next step.
12	Image Process Adjustment → X-Rite Calibration (Grada- tion Adjust) (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the specified range as checked through Gradation Adjust. Max: 0 ± 100 Highlight = 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 15.
13	Image Process Adjustment → D Max Density (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of D Max.	NO	Go to next step.

Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
14	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Reset + Stabilizer (Service Mode)	After the Reset + Stabilizer sequence has been completed, run Gradation Adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
15		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 14.	NO	Change Imaging Unit. → Change MFP Control Board → Change PH Unit. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.8 Printer Monocolor: void areas, white spots

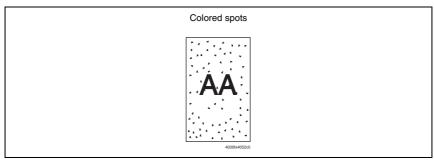
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image Check	There are void areas at the front side or high density section.	YES	See P.372
2		There is void area at the rear side section.	YES	Perform [Transfer Adjust] of [Image Process Adjust- ment] under Service Mode.
3	Imaging Unit	The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
4		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.
5	Toner Cartridge	Foreign matter or caked toner in the Toner Cartridge.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
6	Installation environment	Is the atmospheric pressure at the installation site low?	YES	Make the following adjustment: [Service Mode] → [Image Process Adjustment] → [Dev. Bias Choice].

25.3.9 Printer Monocolor: colored spots

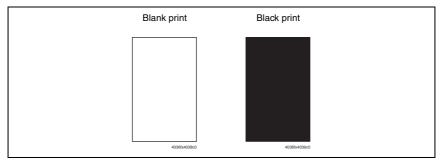
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Imaging Unit	Developing bias contact terminal makes good connection.	NO	Clean contact terminal and check terminal position.
2		The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
3		Dirty on the outside.	YES	Clean.

25.3.11 Printer Monocolor: blank print, black print

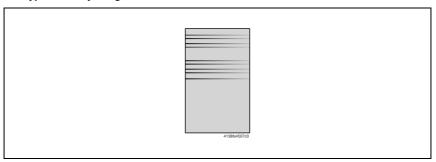
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image Check	A blank print occurs.	YES	Check PH Unit connector for proper connection.
2	Imaging Unit	Coupling of IU drive mechanism is installed properly.	NO	Check and correct drive transmitting coupling. Change IU.
3		The PC Drum Charge Corona voltage contact or PC Drum ground contact of the Imaging Unit is connected properly.	NO	Check, clean, or correct the contact.
4	High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neu- tralizing)	Connector is connected properly.	NO	Reconnect.
5		The problem has been eliminated through the check of step 4.	NO	Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutral- izing). → Change MFP Control Board → Change PH Unit.

25.3.12 Printer Monocolor: uneven image

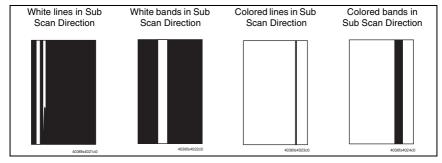
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Toner Cartridge The Toner Cartridge of every color is surely installed.		NO	Re-install it.
2	PH Unit	The PH Unit is surely installed.	NO	Re-install it.
3		Uneven pitch occurs in 3.0 mm pitch.	YES	Replace the PH Unit Holder. See P.118
4	Toner Cartridge	There is any stain or breakage on the Drive section of the Toner Cartridge.	YES	Clean/replace the Toner Cartridge.
5	Imaging Unit	There is any stain, damage or abrasion on the PC drum.	YES	Replace the Imaging Unit.
6	Transfer Roller	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the Transfer roller.	YES	Replace the Transfer Roller.
7	Fusing Unit	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the Roller and Drive section of the Fusing Unit.	YES	Replace the Fusing unit.
8		The problem has been eliminated through the check of step 7.	NO	Replace the Image Transfer Belt unit.

25.3.13 Printer 4-Color: white lines in sub scan direction, white bands in sub scan direction, colored lines in sub scan direction, and colored bands in sub scan direction

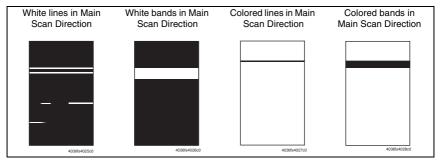
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image Check	A white line or colored line in sub scan direction.	YES	Clean the Comb Electrode by moving the Comb Electrode Cleaning Lever.
2	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Image Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
3		Image Transfer Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change Image Transfer Belt Unit if belt is dam- aged.
4		Cleaning Blade is not effective in removing toner completely.	YES	Clean Cleaning blade. Change Image Transfer Belt Unit.
5	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
6	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
7		Image Transfer Paper Separator Fingers are damaged or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
8	Fusing Unit	Fusing Entrance Guide Plate is dirty or damaged.	YES	Clean. Change Fusing Unit.
9		Fusing Paper Separator Fingers are dirty.	YES	Clean.
10		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 9.	NO	Change MFP Control Board.

25.3.14 Printer 4-Color: white lines in main scan direction, white bands in main scan direction, colored lines in main scan direction, and colored bands in main scan direction

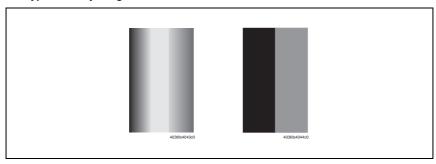
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Image Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
2		Image Transfer Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change Image Transfer Belt Unit if belt is dam- aged.
3		Cleaning Blade is not effective in removing toner completely.	YES	Clean Cleaning Blade. change Image Transfer Belt Unit.
4	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
5	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
6		Image Transfer Paper Separator Fingers are damaged or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
7	Fusing Unit	Fusing Entrance Guide Plate is dirty or damaged.	YES	Clean. Change Fusing Unit.
8		Fusing Paper Separator Fingers are dirty.	YES	Clean.
9	Neutralizing Brush	The resistance values between the Neutralizing brush and the ground terminal is not ∞ .	NO	Check the contact. Modify. Change Neutralizing brush.
10		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 9.	NO	Change MFP Control Board.

25.3.15 Printer 4-Color: uneven density in sub scan direction

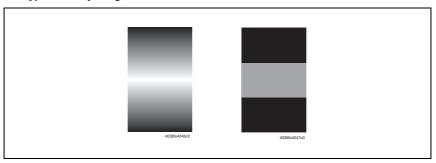
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Image Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
2		Image Transfer Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change Image Transfer Belt Unit if belt is dam- aged.
3		Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
4	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
5		Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit.

25.3.16 Printer 4-Color: uneven density in main scan direction

A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Image Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
2		Image Transfer Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change Image Transfer Belt Unit if belt is dam- aged.
3		Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
4	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
5		Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.17 Printer 4-Color: low image density

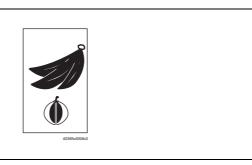
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Paper	Paper is damp.	YES	Change paper to one just unwrapped from its pack- age. Install Paper Dehu- midifying Heater.
2	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
4		Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	NO	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
5	IDC Sensor	Sensor is dirty.	YES	Clean with blower brush.
6	Image Process Adjustment → X-Rite Calibration (Grada- tion Adjust) (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the speci- fied range as checked through Gra- dation Adjust. Max: 0 ± 100 Highlight: 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 9.
7	Image Process Adjustment → D Max Density (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of D Max Density.	NO	Go to next step.
8	Image Process Adjustment → Stabilizer → Reset + Stabilizer (Service Mode)	After the Reset + Stabilizer sequence has been completed, run Gradation Adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
9		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit. → Change MFP Control Board. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.18 Printer 4-Color: poor color reproduction

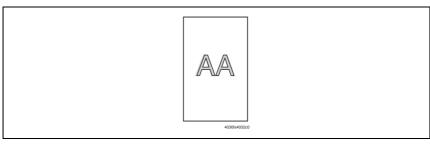
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Paper	Paper is damp.	YES	Change paper to one just unwrapped from its pack- age. Install Paper Dehu- midifying Heater.
2	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Terminal is dirty.	YES	Clean.
3	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
4		Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	NO	Change Image Transfer Roller Unit.
5	IDC Sensor	Sensor is dirty.	YES	Clean with blower brush.
6	Image Process Adjustment → X-Rite Calibration (Grada- tion Adjust) (Service Mode)	"Conv. Value" falls within the speci- fied range as checked through Gra- dation Adjust. Max: 0 ± 100 Highlight: 0 ± 60	YES	Go to step 9.
7	Image Process Adjustment → D Max Density (Service Mode)	The problem has been eliminated through the adjust of D Max Density.	NO	Go to next step.
8	Image Process Adjustment → Stabi- lizer → Reset + Stabi- lizer (Service Mode)	After the Reset + Stabilizer sequence has been completed, run Gradation Adjust.	NO	Go to next step.
9		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit. → Change MFP Control Board. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.19 Printer 4-Color: incorrect color image registration

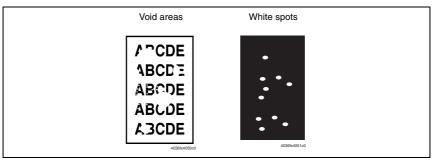
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Warning display	The maintenance call mark is displayed on the panel.	YES	Take action according to the warning code shown on the State Confirm screen.
2	Machine condition	Vibration is given to the machine after main power switch has been turned ON.	YES	Turn off the Main Power Switch and turn it on again more than 10 sec- onds after.
3	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Image Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
4		Image Transfer Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change Image Transfer Belt Unit if belt is damaged.
5		Drive coupling to the machine is dirty.	YES	Clean.
6	Imaging Unit	The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
7	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is installed properly.	NO	Reinstall.
8		Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
9	Machine → Fusing Transport Speed (Service Mode)	Brush effect or blurred image occurs.	YES	Readjust Fusing Transport Speed.
10	Machine → Color registration Adjustment (Service Mode)	Check the specific color in which color shift occurs.	YES	Perform "Color registration Adjustment." If color shift is not corrected even with a correction of ± 1 dot, go to next step.
11		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 10.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit. → Change MFP Control Board.

25.3.20 Printer 4-Color: void areas, white spots

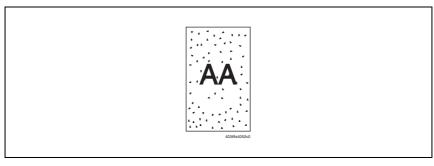
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
Sieh				
1	Image Check	There are void areas at the front side or high density section.	YES	See P.387
2		There are void areas in the trailing edge.	YES	Perform [Transfer Adjust] of [Image Process Adjust- ment] under Service Mode.
3	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
4		Transfer Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change Transfer Belt Unit if belt is damaged.
5	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
6		Charge Neutralizing Cloth is not separated and ground terminal is connected properly.	NO	Correct or change.
7	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
8		Pre-Image Transfer Guide Plate is damaged or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
9		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 8.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit.

25.3.21 Printer 4-Color: colored spots

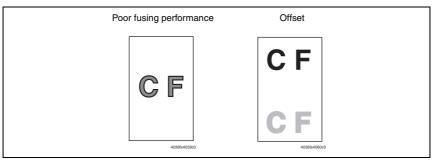
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Imaging Unit	The surface of the PC Drum is scratched.	YES	Change Imaging Unit.
2	Image Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Image Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
3		Image Transfer Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Clean dirty belt with a soft cloth. Change Image Transfer Belt Unit if belt is dam- aged.
4	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
5	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
6	Fusing Unit	Fusing Belt is dirty or scratched.	YES	Change Fusing Unit.
7		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 6.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit.

25.3.22 Printer 4-Color: poor fusing performance, offset

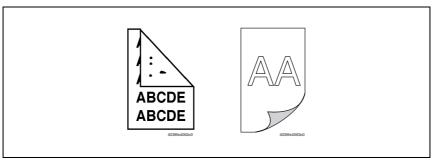
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Paper	Paper type does not match.	YES	Change the setting.
2	Machine Setting → Fusing Temperature (Service Mode)	Changing fusing temperature eliminates the problem of poor fusing performance and offset.	YES	Readjust Fusing Temperature.
3		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 2.		Change Fusing Unit.

25.3.24 Printer 4-Color: back marking

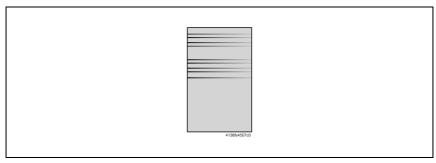
A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	Image Transfer Roller is scratched or dirty.	YES	Change 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit.
2	Paper path	There is foreign matter on paper path.	YES	Remove foreign matter.
3	Fusing Unit	Fusing Entrance Guide Plate is scratched or dirty.	YES	Clean or change.
4		Lower Fusing Roller is scratched or dirty.	YES	Change Fusing Unit.
5	Transfer Belt Unit	Fingerprints, oil, or other foreign matter is evident on the Transfer Belt.	YES	Clean with specified solvent. (See Maintenance.)
6		The problem has been eliminated through the checks of steps up to 5.	NO	Change Image Transfer Belt Unit. → Change High Voltage Unit (Image Transfer, Neutralizing).

25.3.25 Printer 4-Color: uneven image

A. Typical Faulty Images



Step	Section	Check Item	Result	Action
1	Toner Cartridge	The Toner Cartridge of every color is surely installed.	NO	Re-install it.
2	PH Unit	The PH Unit is surely installed.	NO	Re-install it.
3		Uneven pitch occurs in 3.0 mm pitch.	YES	Replace the PH Unit Holder. See P.118
4	Toner Cartridge	There is any stain or breakage on the Drive section of the Toner Cartridge.	YES	Clean/replace the Toner Cartridge.
5	Imaging Unit	There is any stain, damage or abrasion on the PC drum.	YES	Replace the Imaging Unit.
6	Transfer Roller	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the Transfer roller.	YES	Replace the Transfer Roller.
7	Fusing Unit	There is any stain, damage, deformation or abrasion on the Roller and Drive section of the Fusing Unit.	YES	Replace the Fusing unit.
8		The problem has been eliminated through the check of step 7.	NO	Replace the Image Transfer Belt unit.

26. Controller trouble

26.1 Unable to print over the network

26.1.1 The "RIP" is displayed on the machine control panel.

Step	Check	Result	Action
1	An error on machine side (Paper running out, toner running out, etc.)	Yes	Correct the error.
2	Waiting its turn	Yes	Check the machine control panel for jobs in print queue. Priority may be changed as necessary
3	The job is locked.	Yes	Enter the password to unlock the job.
4	The correct division ID has not been entered.	Yes	Enter the correct division ID in the printer driver and try re-transmitting the job again.(account code)

26.1.2 The "RIP" is not displayed on the machine control panel.

Step	Check	Result	Action
1	The response of Ping sent from the PC to the machine.	No	Go to item 5.
2	The print destination port setting is wrong.	Yes	Set the correct port.
3	PC operates erratically temporarily.	Yes	Restart the PC
4	Printer driver incorrectry installed.	No	Uninstall the printer driver through the proper steps and then reinstall it properly.
5	The main power on the Machine turns OFF/ON and operates normally.	Yes	No process is necessary. Only a temporally malfunction.
6	Network cable is disconnected or a relay device is faulty.	No	Reconnect the cable and restart or change the faulty relay device.
7	IP address and/or subnet mask incorrectly set.	No	Set the correct IP address and subnet mask.

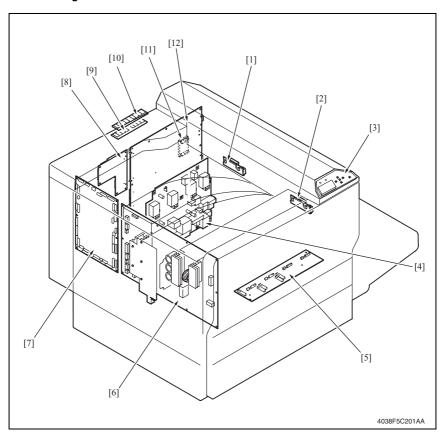
Blank Page

Appendix

27. Parts layout drawing

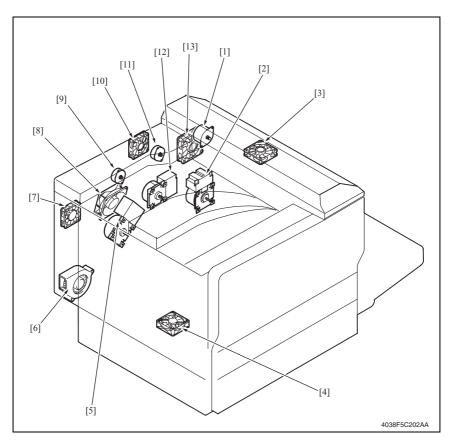
27.1 Main unit

27.1.1 Engine section



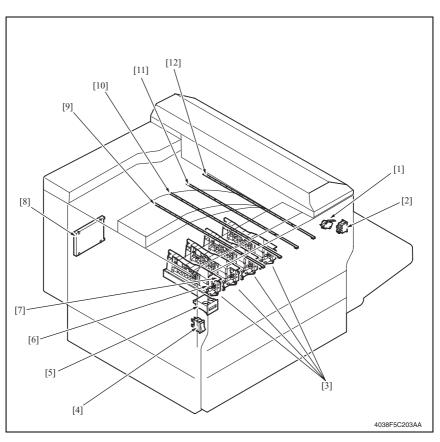
- [1] IDC/Registration Sensor/2 (SE2)
- [2] IDC/Registration Sensor/1 (SE1)
- [3] Control Panel (UN201)
- [4] High Voltage Unit (HV1)
- [5] PH Interface Board (PWB-D)
- [6] DC Power Supply (PU1)

- [7] Mechanical Control Board (PWB-M)
- [8] Slide Interface Board (PWB-SIF)
- [9] DIMM/0 (WORK0)
- [10] DIMM/1 (WORK1)
- [11] NVRAM Board (PWB-NVR)
- [12] MFP Control Board (PWB-MFP)



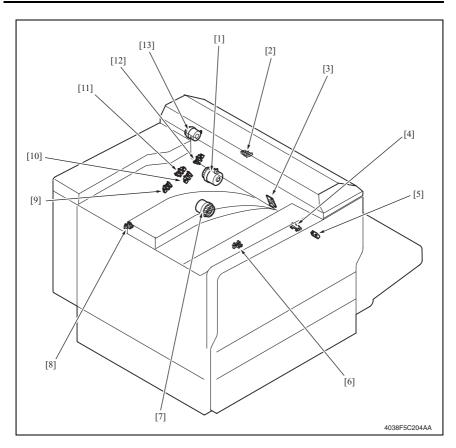
- [1] Fusing Drive Motor (M4)
- [2] Main Motor (M1)
- [3] Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/2 (M11)
- [4] Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/1 (M8)
- [5] Color Developing Motor (M3)
- [6] Ozone Ventilation Fan Motor (M14)
- [7] Power Supply Cooling Fan Motor/2 (M9)

- [8] Cooling Fan Motor/1 (M12)
- [9] Toner Supply Motor Y/M (M6)
- [10] Cooling Fan Motor/2 (M22)
- [11] Toner Supply Motor C/K (M7)
- [12] Color PC Drum Motor (M2)
- [13] Fusing Cooling Fan Motor/1 (M13)



- Right Door Switch (S5) [1]
- Primary Interlock Switch (S2) [2]
- [3] PH Unit
- [4] Main Power Switch (S1)
- [5] Total Counter (CNT1)
- [6] Front Door Switch/1 (S3)
- *1: Option

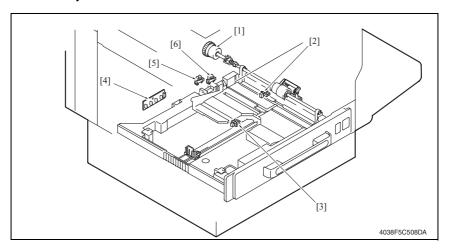
- Front Door Switch/2 (S4) [7]
- [8] Hard Disk Drive (HDD) *1
- [9] Main Erase Lamp/Y (LA4)
- [10] Main Erase Lamp/M (LA3)
- [11] Main Erase Lamp/C (LA2)
- [12] Main Erase Lamp/K (LA1)



- [1] Developing Clutch/K (CL4)
- [2] Exit Sensor (PC2)
- [3] Temperature/Humidity Sensor (SE3)
- [4] Registration Roller Sensor (PC1)
- [5] OHP Sensor (PC4)
- [6] 1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Position Sensor (PC6)
- [7] Registration Roller Clutch (CL1)

- [8] Waste Toner Full Sensor (PC8)
- [9] Color PC Drive Main Sensor (PC17)
- [10] Color PC Drive Sub Sensor (PC18)
- [11] Black PC Drive Main Sensor (PC15)
- [12] Black PC Drive Sub Sensor (PC16)
- [13] 1st Image Transfer Pressure/Retraction Clutch (CL3)

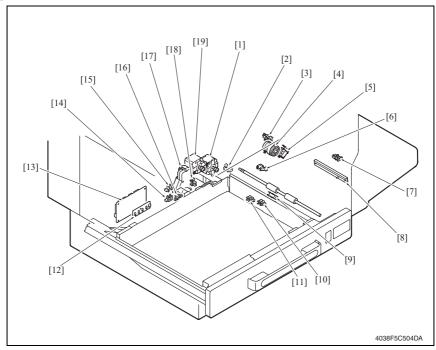
27.1.2 Tray 1



- [1] Tray 1 Paper Feed Clutch (CL2)
- [2] Tray 1 Paper Empty Sensor (PC10)
- [3] Tray 1 CD Paper Size Sensor (PC9)
- [4] Tray 1 Paper Size Board (PWB-I)
- [5] Tray 1 Paper Near-Empty Sensor (PC11)
- [6] Tray 1 Device Detection Sensor (PC12)

27.1.3 Tray 2/Multiple bypass tray

🛕 A. bizhub C250P

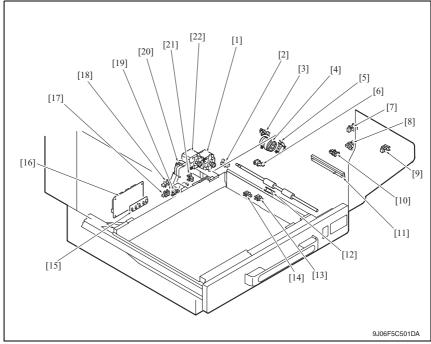


- [1] Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor (M2-PC)
- [2] Tray 2 Door Set Sensor (PC5-PC)
- [3] Bypass Lift-Up Sensor (PC14)
- [4] Bypass Paper Feed Clutch (CL5)
- [5] Bypass Pick-Up Solenoid (SL2)
- [6] Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC)
- [7] Bypass Paper Empty Sensor (PC13)
- [8] Bypass Paper Size VR (UN1)
- [9] Tray 2 Paper Take-Up Sensor (PC9-PC)
- [10] Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor (PC6-PC)

- [11] Tray 2 Lift-Up Sensor (PC7-PC)
- [12] Tray 2 Paper Size Board (PWB-I-PC)
- [13] Tray 2 Control Board (PWB-Z-PC)
- [14] Tray 2 CD Paper Size Sensor/1 (PC4-PC)
- [15] Tray 2 Set Sensor (PC2-PC)
- [16] Tray 2 CD Paper Size Sensor/2 (PC3-PC)
- [17] Tray 2 Lift-Up Motor (M3-PC)
- [18] Tray 2 Paper Near-Empty Sensor (PC1-PC)
- [19] Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor (M1-PC)

2

B. bizhub C252P



- [1] Tray 2 Vertical Transport Motor (M2-PC)
- [2] Tray 2 Door Set Sensor (PC5-PC)
- [3] Bypass Lift-up Sensor (PC14)
- [4] Bypass Paper Feed Clutch (CL5)
- [5] Bypass Pick-up Solenoid (SL2)
- [6] Tray 2 Vertical Transport Sensor (PC8-PC)
- [7] Multi FD Size 3 Sensor (PC21)
- [8] Multi FD Size 1 Sensor (PC19)
- [9] Multi FD Size 2 Sensor (PC20)
- [10] Bypass Paper Empty Sensor (PC13)
- [11] Bypass Paper Size VR (UN1)

- [12] Tray 2 Paper Take-up Sensor (PC9-PC)
- [13] Tray 2 Paper Empty Sensor (PC6-PC)
- [14] Tray 2 Lift-Up Sensor (PC7-PC)
- [15] Tray 2 Paper Size Board (PWB-I-PC)
- [16] Tray 2 Control Board (PWB-Z-PC)
- [17] Tray 2 CD Paper Size Sensor/1 (PC4-PC)
- [18] Tray 2 Set Sensor (PC2-PC)
- [19] Tray2 CD Paper Size Sensor/2 (PC3-PC)
- [20] Tray 2 Lift-Up Motor (M3-PC)
- [21] Tray 1 Paper Near-Empty Sensor (PC1-PC)
- [22] Tray 2 Paper Feed Motor (M1-PC)

Blank Page





PARTS GUIDE MANUAL

OCTOBER 2007

bizhub C252P 4038002

INFORMATION FOR PARTS GUIDE MANUAL

To find correct Parts No., refer to the "HOW TO MAKE THE BEST USE OF THIS MANUAL" in the following page.

HOW TO MAKE THE BEST USE OF THIS MANUAL

- 1 When you order, please check the proper figures beforehand that are on Our Parts Guide Manual, and order with the appropriate figures.
- 2 For screws, Nuts, Washers, retaining rings and Pins which are used in this model, one letter is shown on the Standard parts column of Parts list and exploded diagrams.
- 3 In order to maintain safety of the product, some specific parts composed of this product are set up as "essential safety parts".
- 4 The assigned parts number for the "essential safety parts" is indicated as "SP00-****".

When replacing these parts, follow precautions for disassembling and installing which are listed in the Service Manual.

Do not use any parts that are not set up as

- 5 heans that there are exclusive parts for each destination. Please check the appropriate destination when you order.
- 6 Revision Mark

Marked as ▲ on the illustration shows that the revision has been made.

7 All rights reserved. (any reprints or quotations are prohibited.)
Use of this parts guide manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

パーツガイドマニュアルのご案内

サービス部品をご発注の際には、下記に示す "パーツガイドマニュアルの活用にあたって"をご参照の上、正しい部品番号にてお願い致します。

パーツガイドマニュアルの活用にあたって

- 1 部品発注の際には、掲載されている部品番号の桁数を確認し、掲載されている桁数で発注願います。
- 2 この製品に使用されているネジ、ナット、ワッシャー、止め輪、ピンなどは、リストの右側の Standard parts 欄に a,b,c,\cdots で表示し、イラストにも a,b,c,\cdots 表示してあります。
- 3 製品の安全性を維持する為に、製品に使用される特定の部品を「重要保安部品」として設定しています。
- 4 重要保安部品の部品番号は、"SP00-****" と記載されていますので、部品交換時は、サービスマニュアル記載の分解・組み立ての注意事項に従って作業をして下さい。

また、指定以外の部品は一切使用しないで下さい。

- 5 本文に ♣ が表示されている部品は、仕向け地毎に専用部品がある事を意味しています。
 - オーダーされる時は、仕向け地を確認して下さい。
- 6 改訂記号について

イラスト上に▲印が表示されている部分は、改訂された事を表します。

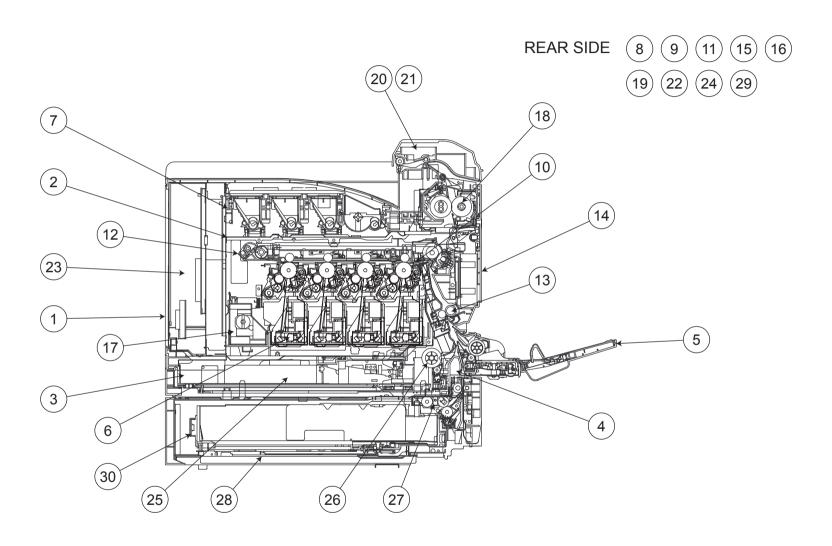
7 版権所有 (無断転載及び無断引用の禁止) 本パーツガイドマニュアルについては、機密保持等その扱いには十分注 意して下さい。万一取り扱いを誤った場合には、法律で処罰されること があります。

SYSTEM OUTLINE *1: Standard for USA/Europe *2: Standard for Japan 9 **(15)** HD-501 (14) 3 (13) 5 (12) (11) 8 (6)

GENERAL CONTENTS

No.	Description	Model
1	PRINTER COLOR	bizhub C252P
2	DUPLEX	AD-503
3	OTHER OPTION	MK-706
4	PAPER FEEDER	PC-103
5	PAPER FEEDER	PC-203
6	PAPER FEEDER	PC-403
7	SORTER/FINISHER	FS-603
8	PUNCH UNIT	PK-501/PK-4/PK131
9	SORTER/FINISHER	FS-501
10	STACKER	JS-601
11	SORTER/FINISHER	FS-514
12	OTHER OPTION	OT-601
13	SORTER/FINISHER	MT-501
14	PUNCH UNIT	PK-510
15	SORTER/FINISHER	SD-503

DIAGRAMS OF MAIN PARTS SECTION



CONTENTS

No.	DESCRIPTION	名 称	PAGE No.
1	EXTERNAL PARTS	外装部	P1
2	MAIN FRAME	メインフレーム	P2
3	INNER COVER SECTION	2 次カバー	P3
4	MPT PAPER TAKE-UP SECTION	MPT 給紙部	P4
5	MANUAL FEED SECTION	手差し給紙部	P5 P6 P7
6	P/H FRAME SECTION	P / H フレーム	P8 P9
7	T/C RAIL SECTION	T/Cレール	P10
8	HOPPER DRIVE SECTION	ホッパー駆動部	P11
9	CONTACT SECTION	IU 接点部	P12
10	ERASER SECTION	イレーサ部	P13
11	DEVELOPMENT DRIVE SECTION	現像駆動部	P14
12	TRANSFER BELT SECTION	転写ベルトユニット	P15
13	PAPER TRANSPORT SECTION	搬送部	P16
14	RIGHT DOOR SECTION	右扉	P17
15	TRANSPORT DRIVE SECTION	搬送駆動部	P18
16	WASTE TONER TRANSPORT SECTION	廃トナー搬送部	P19
17	WASTE TONER BOX SECTION	廃棄トナーボトル	P20
18	FUSING SECTION	定着部	P21
19	FUSING DRIVE SECTION	定着駆動部	P22
20	PAPER EXIT SECTION	排紙部	P23
21	PAPER EXIT DRIVE SECTION	排紙駆動部	P24
22	REAR DUCT SECTION	背面排気部	P25
23	POWER UNIT	電源ユニット	P26
24	ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	電装部	P27
25	MPT CASSETTE TRAY SECTION	MPTトレイ	P28
26	MPT CASSETTE PAPER TAKE-UP SECTION	MPT 給紙部	P29
27	2ND CASSETTE PAPER TAKE-UP SECTION	ユニバーサルカセット給紙部	P30
28	2ND CASSETTE FRAME	ユニバーサルカセットフレーム部	P31 P32 P33
29	2ND CASSETTE DRIVE SECTION	ユニバーサルカセット駆動部	P34
30	2ND CASSETTE	ユニバーサルカセット	P35 P36
31	WIRING	束線	P37 P38 P39 P40
32	WIRING ACCESSORIES AND JIGS	配線部品・治具	P41
33	ACCESSORY PARTS	同梱部品	P42

INDEX

Parts No.	Page No.
0992 3014 01	36-18
0996 3055 01	2-10
0996 3055 01	33-15
1038 4006 01	41-16
1053 3103 01	1-8
1065 3086 01	30-21
1065 5872 02	41-10
1067 2501 01	9-8
1067 2501 01	30-18
1075 2565 01	7-11
1134 3042 02	5-7
1136 1019 03	1-6
1154 4670 01	2-12
1154 4670 01	3-17
1156 7501 01	42-2
1164 3003 01	29-16
1164 3004 03	29-21
1164 3005 02	29-22
1164 3020 03	4-14
1164 3022 02	4-12
1164 3027 01	4-5
1164 3045 01	28-29
1164 3053 12	4-24
1164 3054 01	4-16
1164 3057 01	4-23
1164 3061 01	28-10
1164 3062 01	28-11
1164 3066 01	29-5
1164 3527 02	16-32
1200 1646 03	24-12
1274 3603 01	36-26
1500 2320 02	26-26
4002 2581 01	33-1
4002 2581 01	34-16
4002 3108 01	36-22
4002 3110 01	34-24
4002 3131 01	34-25
4002 7306 01	36-3
4004 2148 01	25-10
4004 2203 01	27-20

Parts No.	Page No.
4004 2545 01	18-24
4004 2545 01	19-9
4004 3001 02	29-6
4004 3004 01	29-14
4004 3005 01	29-8
4004 3006 03	29-15
4004 3008 01	28-14
4004 3011 01	4-18
4004 3012 01	4-19
4004 3024 01	28-9
4004 3029 01	4-22
4004 3031 01	28-23
4004 3032 01	28-26
4004 3033 01	28-12
4004 3038 01	28-13
4004 3040 02	28-8
4004 3042 01	28-28
4004 3051 02	28-22
4004 3052 01	4-15
4004 3061 01	4-7
4004 3062 06	4-3
4004 3063 01	4-8
4004 3503 02	16-17
4004 3504 02	16-18
4004 5339 01	7-17
4004 5607 02	19-8
4004 5612 01	19-12
4004 7324 01	28-33
4011 3012 01	34-14
4011 3020 01	29-4
4011 3020 01	36-25
4011 3021 01	36-24
4021 3036 01	28-27
4025 1018 01	1-10
4025 2283 01	27-2
4025 2294 01	27-24
4025 2295 01	27-25
4025 3572 01	16-16
4025 5984 01	24-3
4025 6805 01	26-14

Parts No. Page No. 4030 0151 01 31-10 4030 2080 01 33-24 4030 3002 02 30-12 4030 3003 01 30-16 4030 3005 01 30-11 4030 3008 01 30-17 4030 3010 02 30-5 4030 3012 01 30-22 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 2080 01 33-24 4030 3002 02 30-12 4030 3003 01 30-16 4030 3005 01 30-11 4030 3008 01 30-17 4030 3010 02 30-5 4030 3012 01 30-22 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3002 02 30-12 4030 3003 01 30-16 4030 3005 01 30-11 4030 3008 01 30-17 4030 3010 02 30-5 4030 3011 03 30-22 4030 3012 01 30-23 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3003 01 30-16 4030 3005 01 30-11 4030 3008 01 30-17 4030 3010 02 30-5 4030 3011 03 30-22 4030 3012 01 30-23 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3005 01 30-11 4030 3008 01 30-17 4030 3010 02 30-5 4030 3011 03 30-22 4030 3012 01 30-23 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3008 01 30-17 4030 3010 02 30-5 4030 3011 03 30-22 4030 3012 01 30-23 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3010 02 30-5 4030 3011 03 30-22 4030 3012 01 30-23 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3011 03 30-22 4030 3012 01 30-23 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3012 01 30-23 4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3013 01 31-13	
4030 3016 12 30-4 4030 3017 03 31-14	
4030 3020 02 30-19	
4030 3025 02 31-6	
4030 3030 01 30-20	
4030 3034 01 30-10	
4030 3036 01 30-14	
4030 3037 01 31-5	
4030 3039 01 31-16	
4030 3046 03 34-11	
4030 3047 02 34-23	
4030 3048 02 34-8	
4030 3049 01 34-9	
4030 3077 01 31-9 4030 3078 01 31-11	
4030 3079 01 31-12	
4030 3081 01 34-5	
4030 3083 01 34-7	
4030 3091 01 34-22	
4030 3093 01 7-3	
4030 3095 01 30-13	
4030 3105 01 31-1	
4030 3116 01 32-8	
4030 3116 01 32-8 4030 3122 01 32-4	
4030 3123 01 32-2	
4030 3124 03 31-2	
4030 3125 01 31-4	
4030 3129 03 31-3	
4030 3201 09 36-17	
4030 3203 01 35-7	

Parts No.	Page No.
4030 3205 01	36-27
4030 3206 01	36-28
4030 3207 01	36-23
4030 3208 02	34-10
4030 3211 02	36-16
4030 3212 01	36-1
4030 3214 02	36-5
4030 3215 01	36-6
4030 3216 01	36-20
4030 3217 01	36-8
4030 3218 01	36-21
4030 3221 01	35-13
4030 3222 03	35-11
4030 3223 03	35-10
4030 3224 02	34-4
4030 3224 02	35-14
4030 3226 01	35-8
4030 3227 01	36-10
4030 3228 12	36-9
4030 3229 02	35-1
4030 3238 00	36-32
4030 3403 01	6-10
4030 3412 01	5-37
4030 3414 01	5-4
4030 3415 02	5-6
4030 3446 01	5-5
4030 3460 02	5-36
4030 3475 01	6-19
4030 6214 00	36-30
4030 6215 00	36-31
4030 7301 02	28-37
4030 7301 02	35-4
4030 7500 01	1-16
4030 P002 00	36-29
4034 0151 01	6-23
4034 0151 01	29-10
4034 3012 01	29-7
4036 1011 01	1-21
4036 3008 01	28-4
4036 3014 01	29-20

Parts No. Page No. 4036 3018 01 29-19 4036 3019 01 28-36 4036 3021 02 28-16 4036 3022 03 28-1	
4036 3019 01 28-36 4036 3021 02 28-16 4036 3022 03 28-1	
4036 3021 02 28-16 4036 3022 03 28-1	
4036 3022 03 28-1	
4036 3025 01 28-19	
4036 3025 01 35-5	
4036 3028 12 28-34	
4036 3030 01 29-2	
4036 3031 01 29-3	
4036 3040 01 29-17	
4036 3086 01 28-35	
4036 3808 03 33-10	
4036 3809 01 33-25	
4036 3810 03 33-5	
4036 3811 01 33-26	
4036 3814 01 33-16	
4036 3823 01 32-6	
4036 3828 02 33-19	
4036 3831 01 32-21	
4036 3838 01 31-8	
4036 3843 02 33-14	
4036 3846 02 31-7	
4036 3849 01 33-6	
4036 4909 01 1-30	
4036 6870 01 27-22	
4036 7313 01 28-30	
4036 7314 01 28-5	
4037 0104 01 4-13	
4037 0104 01 34-13	
4037 0775 01 26-19	
4037 0902 01 30-2	
4037 0904 01 4-17	
4037 0906 01 5-3	
4037 0906 01 16-28	
4037 0906 01 30-8	
4037 0906 01 34-6	
4037 1006 01 1-26	
4037 2219 02 27-10	
4037 2220 02 27-9	
4037 2239 02 26-18	

Parts No.	Page No.	Parts N
4037 2242 01	27-5	4038 1039 0
4037 2244 01	27-33	4038 1046 0
4037 2247 01	27-6	4038 1050 0
4037 3204 01	36-15	4038 1051 0
4037 3210 01	28-7	4038 1054 0
4037 3213 12	36-11	4038 1101 0
4037 3223 01	28-25	4038 1102 0
4037 3226 01	28-24	4038 1103 0
4037 3227 01	28-32	4038 1105 0
4037 6076 01	27-27	4038 1271 0
4037 6751 01	26-21	4038 1272 0
4037 6776 01	27-3	4038 1273 (
4037 6777 01	27-8	4038 1280 0
4037 6778 02	27-7	4038 1281 0
4037 6812 01	27-18	4038 1310 0
4037 6899 01	5-34	4038 1311 0
4037 7001 00	6-14	4038 1312 0
4037 7406 01	1-24	4038 1351 0
4038 0105 03	8-1	4038 1360 0
4038 0121 06	27-30	4038 1502 0
4038 0123 03	27-28	4038 1510 0
4038 0203 02	19-20	4038 1906 0
4038 0210 01	17-15	4038 2008 0
4038 0211 04	9-14	4038 2013 0
4038 0212 01	24-24	4038 2014 0
4038 0213 01	24-25	4038 2015 0
4038 0252 03	5-38	4038 2016 0
4038 0760 00	12-2	4038 2017 0
4038 1008 03	1-3	4038 2018 0
4038 1010 01	1-5	4038 2019 0
4038 1014 01	3-9	4038 2020 0
4038 1018 02	25-8	4038 2021 0
4038 1020 03	1-1	4038 2022 0
4038 1021 05	1-19	4038 2023 1
4038 1022 06	1-14	4038 2024 0
4038 1023 04	1-27	4038 2026 0
4038 1027 04	1-23	4038 2027 0
4038 1029 04	1-28	4038 2028 0
4038 1031 03	1-29	4038 2029 0
4038 1035 01	1-22	4038 2031 0

Parts No.	Page No.
4038 1039 02	1-2
4038 1046 01	1-13
4038 1050 01	26-28
4038 1051 01	1-11
4038 1054 04	1-20
4038 1101 06	3-8
4038 1102 02	3-10
4038 1103 03	3-22
4038 1105 01	3-13
4038 1271 00	10-14
4038 1272 00	19-26
4038 1273 00	13-24
4038 1280 00	9-22
4038 1281 00	8-14
4038 1310 00	26-32
4038 1311 00	10-17
4038 1312 00	2-15
4038 1351 00	27-26
4038 1360 00	3-24
4038 1502 03	27-11
4038 1510 01	27-32
4038 1906 04	9-1
4038 2008 02	4-10
4038 2013 04	20-3
4038 2014 08	13-6
4038 2015 02	13-5
4038 2016 02	8-3
4038 2017 01	8-4
4038 2018 03	8-5
4038 2019 01	10-1
4038 2020 02	10-5
4038 2021 03	10-6
4038 2022 02	10-7
4038 2023 18	15-1
4038 2024 02	15-19
4038 2026 01	15-23
4038 2027 01	15-21
4038 2028 01	15-22
4038 2029 01	15-2
4038 2031 01	25-2

Parts No.	Page No.
4038 2032 01	13-22
4038 2033 01	25-3
4038 2034 04	25-4
4038 2036 01	2-7
4038 2036 01	27-14
4038 2038 02	10-2
4038 2040 01	13-11
4038 2042 01	9-17
4038 2043 03	9-18
4038 2044 02	9-4
4038 2045 01	15-9
4038 2046 01	15-3
4038 2047 02	15-6
4038 2048 01	15-5
4038 2051 01	8-12
4038 2052 02	13-13
4038 2053 02	13-14
4038 2055 02	25-5
4038 2056 02	13-12
4038 2060 02	8-10
4038 2061 01	8-7
4038 2062 01	19-25
4038 2065 17	2-3
4038 2066 12	2-5
4038 2067 01	8-11
4038 2069 01	13-8
4038 2071 02	26-5
4038 2072 04	13-9
4038 2073 02	2-8
4038 2073 02	27-16
4038 2074 05	27-13
4038 2075 02	27-15
4038 2076 01	19-2
4038 2077 13	15-11
4038 2078 13	15-14
4038 2080 01	15-8
4038 2081 02	13-15
4038 2082 04	21-2
4038 2083 02	1-18
4038 2084 06	1-7

Parts No.	Page No.
4038 2086 01	8-13
4038 2089 01	19-21
4038 2094 01	8-2
4038 2097 02	2-11
4038 2099 01	4-21
4038 2101 01	13-21
4038 2102 01	10-16
4038 2103 04	13-19
4038 2104 02	13-18
4038 2105 03	13-20
4038 2106 01	13-17
4038 2107 03	10-9
4038 2108 01	10-11
4038 2109 01	10-10
4038 2110 03	10-13
4038 2111 02	19-13
4038 2112 04	19-14
4038 2113 02	19-24
4038 2114 01	19-15
4038 2115 02	19-7
4038 2116 04	19-3
4038 2117 02	19-5
4038 2118 01	19-1
4038 2119 01	19-6
4038 2120 02	19-18
4038 2130 01	19-23
4038 2131 07	19-4
4038 2140 01	19-22
4038 2142 01	19-17
4038 2143 01	19-16
4038 2150 01	10-12
4038 2151 02	13-16
4038 2151 02	15-17
4038 2152 13	15-12
4038 2153 13	15-13
4038 2162 02	4-9
4038 2173 02	10-3
4038 2174 03	10-3
4038 2175 02	10-3
4038 2178 01	26-3

Parts No.	Page No.
4038 2179 01	9-16
4038 2180 01	9-19
4038 2181 01	13-3
4038 2182 01	13-2
4038 2183 01	13-23
4038 2184 01	9-11
4038 2187 04	9-3
4038 2188 02	9-15
4038 2189 01	9-2
4038 2190 03	9-12
4038 2191 02	9-10
4038 2192 02	9-13
4038 2193 03	9-6
4038 2194 01	9-5
4038 2195 03	25-12
4038 2196 01	9-9
4038 2198 02	13-10
4038 2199 02	13-1
4038 2205 02	15-15
4038 2206 02	12-6
4038 2207 01	15-16
4038 2217 01	15-18
4038 2222 01	12-9
4038 2225 02	12-12
4038 2232 01	12-13
4038 2232 13	12-13
4038 2233 02	12-3
4038 2237 01	25-7
4038 2241 02	25-6
4038 2249 02	8-9
4038 2253 01	18-27
4038 2255 01	12-8
4038 2265 04	3-1
4038 2266 01	3-21
4038 2274 03	12-7
4038 2275 01	12-1
4038 2276 01	12-11
4038 2277 01	12-10
4038 2281 04	3-4
4038 2282 03	3-7

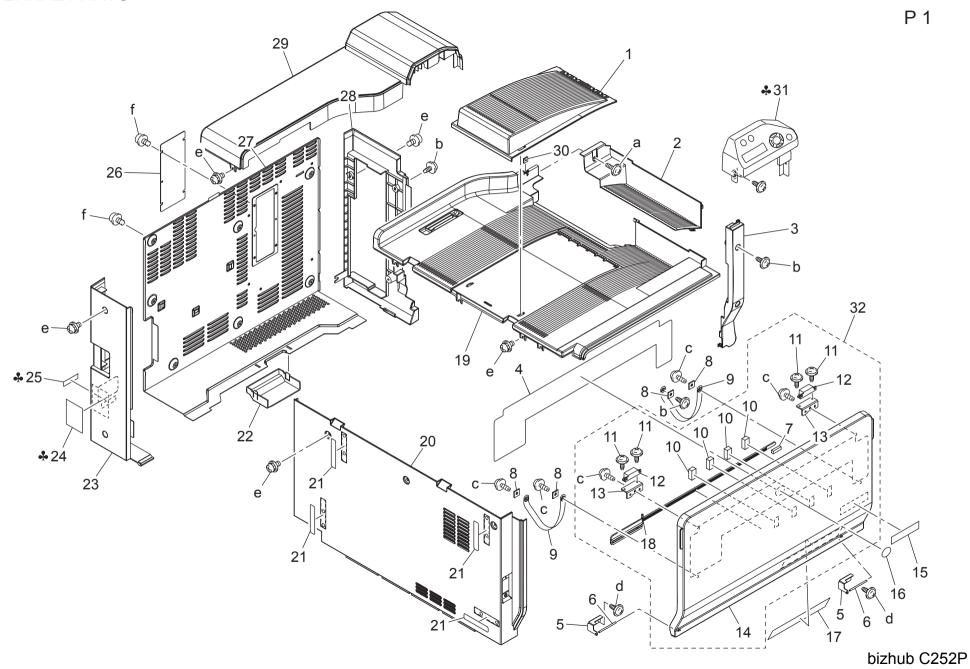
Parts No.	Page No.								
4038 2283 02	3-3	4038 2538 01	22-5	4038 3222 03	5-30	4038 3536 01	16-9	4038 5664 00	6-29
4038 2285 02	2-14	4038 2539 01	18-25	4038 3232 01	7-10	4038 3537 01	16-7	4038 5666 00	4-28
4038 2287 02	3-20	4038 2540 01	22-4	4038 3233 02	5-14	4038 3538 01	16-8	4038 5667 00	4-27
4038 2301 04	27-19	4038 2541 01	22-19	4038 3234 02	5-15	4038 3539 01	16-4	4038 5852 02	23-13
4038 2302 01	27-31	4038 2549 01	18-18	4038 3236 01	7-7	4038 3540 03	16-11	4038 5856 01	23-3
4038 2303 02	27-1	4038 2551 01	18-9	4038 3237 01	7-18	4038 3541 01	4-1	4038 5860 01	24-7
4038 2304 02	26-11	4038 2556 01	22-1	4038 3240 01	7-2	4038 3542 02	17-5	4038 5861 02	24-26
4038 2305 01	3-15	4038 2557 01	22-7	4038 3244 02	7-14	4038 3551 01	17-7	4038 5862 01	24-21
4038 2307 02	26-6	4038 2573 01	22-9	4038 3246 01	7-4	4038 3552 01	17-12	4038 5863 01	24-23
4038 2308 02	26-8	4038 2574 01	22-11	4038 3247 01	7-5	4038 3553 01	17-3	4038 5864 01	24-22
4038 2309 01	25-11	4038 2575 01	22-16	4038 3252 01	5-23	4038 3556 01	16-34	4038 5869 01	24-11
4038 2309 01	26-9	4038 2576 01	22-12	4038 3253 01	5-24	4038 3558 02	16-36	4038 5870 01	24-17
4038 2312 01	27-23	4038 2577 01	22-13	4038 3255 01	5-32	4038 3559 01	16-35	4038 5871 02	24-29
4038 2313 01	12-5	4038 2578 01	18-23	4038 3260 01	7-1	4038 3561 03	16-30	4038 5872 02	24-28
4038 2314 03	26-13	4038 2579 01	19-10	4038 3261 02	6-17	4038 3562 01	16-22	4038 5873 01	24-18
4038 2315 01	27-12	4038 2580 01	22-15	4038 3262 03	6-18	4038 3567 01	16-19	4038 5874 01	24-27
4038 2316 01	26-20	4038 2586 01	19-11	4038 3266 01	6-16	4038 3571 02	17-11	4038 5876 01	24-30
4038 2401 08	26-1	4038 2587 01	22-18	4038 3267 01	6-24	4038 3592 01	16-25	4038 5877 02	24-20
4038 2402 05	26-12	4038 2588 01	22-14	4038 3268 02	6-12	4038 3593 01	16-24	4038 5879 01	24-19
4038 2404 03	27-29	4038 2591 01	22-3	4038 3269 02	6-9	4038 3595 01	2-1	4038 5881 05	23-1
4038 2405 01	27-17	4038 2592 01	22-2	4038 3270 01	6-20	4038 3735 01	21-3	4038 5883 03	23-5
4038 2406 02	26-24	4038 2593 02	22-21	4038 3272 01	5-35	4038 4611 01	17-4	4038 5884 03	24-8
4038 2408 01	4-11	4038 2596 01	22-10	4038 3286 01	5-28	4038 4620 01	17-9	4038 5885 01	24-10
4038 2410 01	27-36	4038 2597 01	18-28	4038 3501 01	16-5	4038 5002 00	15-27	4038 5886 03	23-4
4038 2450 00	18-29	4038 2598 01	18-14	4038 3502 02	16-10	4038 5601 00	28-6	4038 5887 01	24-1
4038 2508 01	18-22	4038 2599 01	18-4	4038 3511 02	17-16	4038 5603 00	16-38	4038 5888 02	24-31
4038 2513 01	18-1	4038 2600 02	22-17	4038 3512 02	17-13	4038 5604 00	5-42	4038 5889 02	24-16
4038 2514 01	18-17	4038 2699 01	18-15	4038 3515 02	17-1	4038 5605 00	6-32	4038 5890 02	24-4
4038 2515 01	18-16	4038 3020 03	28-17	4038 3516 01	17-8	4038 5606 00	5-43	4038 5891 02	24-6
4038 2517 01	18-21	4038 3054 01	4-25	4038 3517 03	14-1	4038 5651 00	6-25	4038 5893 01	24-13
4038 2519 01	18-12	4038 3063 01	29-1	4038 3520 01	17-2	4038 5653 00	6-11	4038 5894 03	23-6
4038 2520 01	18-2	4038 3071 02	28-20	4038 3521 01	17-18	4038 5654 00	29-11	4038 5895 03	23-9
4038 2523 01	18-19	4038 3204 05	6-13	4038 3523 01	17-17	4038 5655 00	29-13	4038 5896 02	23-7
4038 2524 01	18-5	4038 3207 03	6-2	4038 3525 01	16-15	4038 5656 00	6-8	4038 5897 01	24-14
4038 2526 01	18-10	4038 3212 04	5-20	4038 3527 03	16-37	4038 5657 00	6-28	4038 5898 01	24-15
4038 2529 01	18-3	4038 3216 03	6-5	4038 3529 02	16-3	4038 5658 00	6-30	4038 5901 01	24-9
4038 2531 01	18-6	4038 3217 01	6-4	4038 3530 01	16-14	4038 5660 01	6-1	4038 5915 01	24-2
4038 2532 01	18-7	4038 3218 01	6-7	4038 3531 02	16-27	4038 5661 00	6-27	4038 6055 03	1-31
4038 2535 01	18-13	4038 3220 01	6-6	4038 3532 01	16-2	4038 5662 00	6-21	4038 6056 03	1-31
4038 2536 01	18-26	4038 3221 03	5-29	4038 3534 01	17-14	4038 5663 00	6-31	4038 6057 03	1-31

Parts No.	Page No.								
4038 6201 02	26-7	4038 7316 01	10-4	4040 0156 0D	35-12	4128 2215 01	2-4	4348 3049 01	30-3
4038 6202 04	26-7	4038 7321 01	28-18	4040 7304 01	35-6	4128 3522 01	16-21	4348 3069 04	32-16
4038 6203 03	12-14	4038 7321 01	35-3	4065 611	20-5	4128 3823 01	36-14	4348 3070 02	30-28
4038 6251 00	32-19	4038 7337 01	28-15	4066 3770 03	17-1	4131 3001 01	7-8	4348 3071 01	32-3
4038 6803 03	37-1	4038 7341 01	1-25	4067 0101 03	34-21	4131 3003 01	30-6	4348 6205 00	33-12
4038 6807 01	26-31	4038 7351 01	5-1	4067 0201 02	33-8	4131 3532 02	7-6	4348 6206 00	33-32
4038 6809 03	2-9	4038 7352 01	5-1	4067 0202 03	33-2	4131 3532 02	32-11	4425 3013 01	30-9
4038 6811 02	3-19	4038 9431 00	1-15	4067 0203 02	34-2	4134 3106 01	28-3	4425 3016 01	30-15
4038 6813 01	10-8	4038 H001 01	26-25	4067 0204 03	30-26	4136 6751 01	3-5	4475 2603 02	1-12
4038 6815 02	3-6	4038 M101 00	14-3	4067 3802 01	33-11	4139 5577 01	24-5	4498 3469 01	35-9
4038 6816 01	3-14	4038 M102 00	14-4	4067 3803 02	33-3	4142 3217 01	7-9	4498 3825 01	36-13
4038 6817 03	37-2	4038 M600 00	3-16	4067 3805 02	33-23	4154 3804 01	2-6	4498 3826 01	36-12
4038 6821 02	37-3	4038 M601 00	2-2	4067 3807 03	33-22	4154 3804 01	3-23	4498 3834 01	36-19
4038 6824 04	37-4	4038 N100 00	38-1	4067 3815 02	34-15	4154 3804 01	5-40	4581 2269 04	27-4
4038 6829 02	4-2	4038 R729 00	11-1	4067 3816 02	30-7	4154 3804 01	8-6	4581 7901 02	41-18
4038 6830 02	16-29	4038 R730 00	14-2	4067 3818 02	33-4	4154 3804 01	12-4	4643 1020 03	1-9
4038 6835 01	15-26	4038 R731 00	9-20	4067 3820 01	34-19	4154 3804 01	15-10	4658 3012 01	36-7
4038 6835 01	23-10	4038 R732 00	20-1	4067 3821 01	33-9	4154 3804 01	20-4	4658 3040 01	29-12
4038 6836 01	15-20	4038 R733 00	15-25	4067 3822 03	32-1	4154 3804 01	22-6	4658 3042 02	33-18
4038 6836 01	39-2	4038 R734 00	28-38	4067 3825 01	32-20	4154 3804 01	26-4	4658 3046 01	29-9
4038 6841 05	39-1	4038 R737 00	8-8	4067 3832 01	32-18	4163 5293 01	15-4	4658 3048 01	36-2
4038 6842 02	40-2	4038 R740 00	4-20	4067 3833 01	32-5	4163 5293 01	17-6	4658 3049 01	36-4
4038 6844 01	40-1	4038 R742 00	17-20	4067 3834 01	32-9	4163 5293 01	23-8	4658 3140 02	33-17
4038 6847 01	26-2	4038 R743 00	15-24	4067 3852 01	35-2	4163 5293 01	27-35	4658 3516 01	18-11
4038 6848 01	26-27	4038 R748 00	29-23	4067 3855 02	33-30	4163 5293 01	28-21	4658 3516 01	22-8
4038 7010 00	16-40	4038 R759 00	16-39	4067 3856 02	33-28	4163 5293 01	32-7	4687 3281 01	5-39
4038 7021 00	4-26	4038 R770 00	3-18	4067 3857 02	33-29	4348 2040 01	33-31	4687 3281 01	28-2
4038 7022 00	16-12	4038 R771 00	17-19	4067 3871 01	33-27	4348 2041 02	33-21	50GA 6271 01	34-27
4038 7023 00	16-13	4038 R772 00	17-19	4067 5601 00	33-13	4348 2042 01	33-7	9313 1000 72	25-9
4038 7301 03	1-4	4038 R773 00	21-1	4067 5614 00	31-15	4348 2044 01	33-20	9313 1400 81	25-1
4038 7302 02	17-10	4038 R774 00	21-1	4067 5620 00	30-29	4348 3011 04	32-12	9313 1400 81	26-10
4038 7303 01	16-1	4038 R775 00	5-41	4067 6801 04	34-17	4348 3028 01	32-17	9314 1300 61	34-1
4038 7304 01	23-2	4038 R782 00	21-1	4067 6802 01	34-20	4348 3029 01	30-27	9314 1400 71	22-23
4038 7308 02	3-11	4038 R783 00	1-32	4067 6803 02	34-26	4348 3030 01	34-3	9322 1300 21	16-33
4038 7309 01	3-12	4038 R903 00	21-4	4067 6804 01	30-25	4348 3031 01	32-14	9322 1300 21	22-20
4038 7309 01	13-7	4038 R913 00	41-19	4067 6805 01	34-18	4348 3032 01	32-15	9322 1300 31	18-20
4038 7311 02	20-2	4039 2210 01	2-13	4067 R704 00	31-17	4348 3042 01	32-10	9322 1400 21	18-8
4038 7313 01	42-5	4039 5602 00	29-18	4067 R706 00	42-6	4348 3046 01	30-1	9326 1410 31	26-30
4038 7314 01	42-5	4039 5604 00	28-31	4106 2063 01	9-7	4348 3047 01	30-24	9335 1300 61	7-16
4038 7315 02	1-17	4039 R723 00	9-21	4109 5530 01	26-29	4348 3048 01	32-13	9335 1300 61	19-19

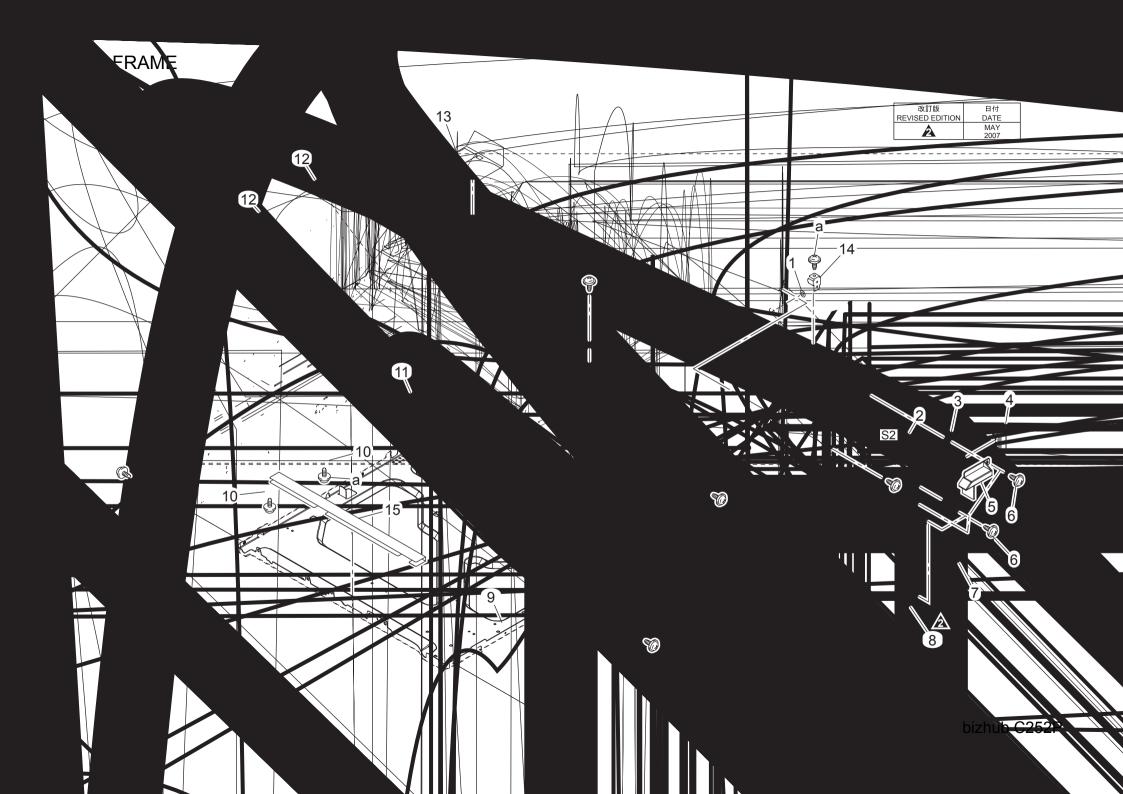
Parts No.	Page No.
9335 1400 11	16-23
9335 1400 21	16-6
9335 1400 61	4-6
9353 2400 11	13-4
9372 1300 12	16-26
9372 5400 31	16-31
9381 4101 31	42-1
9381 4300 41	42-1
9383 2210 11	22-22
9383 2210 41	23-11
9383 5000 11	26-17
9384 1000 51	41-1
9384 1000 51	41-7
9384 1100 31	41-9
9384 1100 91	41-8
9384 1310 81	41-3
9384 1311 11	41-14
9384 1410 51	41-15
9384 1521 51	41-17
9384 1700 24	42-3
9384 1921 01	41-4
9384 1921 11	41-5
9384 1921 21	41-6
9384 2010 21	41-11
9384 2200 31	42-4
9384 2910 21	41-12
9384 2910 31	41-13
9384 4300 11	26-22
9384 4300 21	26-23
9455 8076 01	6-15
9455 8076 01	16-20
9646 0308 14	42-7
9J06 0202 14	6-26
9J06 1013 00	10-15
9J06 1015 01	13-25
9J06 1016 00	13-27
9J06 1017 00	13-26
9J06 1018 00	13-28
9J06 2403 01	26-15
9J06 3208 02	6-3

Parts No.	Page No.
9J06 3213 01	5-26
9J06 3214 02	5-31
9J06 3215 02	5-22
9J06 3235 01	5-12
9J06 3249 01	7-15
9J06 3251 04	5-27
9J06 3256 01	5-25
9J06 3281 02	5-8
9J06 3282 01	5-2
9J06 3283 04	5-13
9J06 3284 03	5-11
9J06 3285 01	5-16
9J06 3286 02	5-21
9J06 3287 00	5-10
9J06 6211 00	5-18
9J06 6810 01	5-33
9J06 6813 01	5-17
9J06 6814 01	26-16
9J06 7303 01	5-9
9J06 7354 01	5-19
9J06 M100 00	23-12
9J06 M100 00	27-34
9J06 M103 00	34-12
9J06 M200 00	7-13
9J06 M201 00	7-12
9J06 M601 00	3-2
9J06 M705 00	27-21
9J06 M900 00	41-2
9J06 R718 00	6-22
9J06 R901 00	4-4
A00J 6234 00	35-15

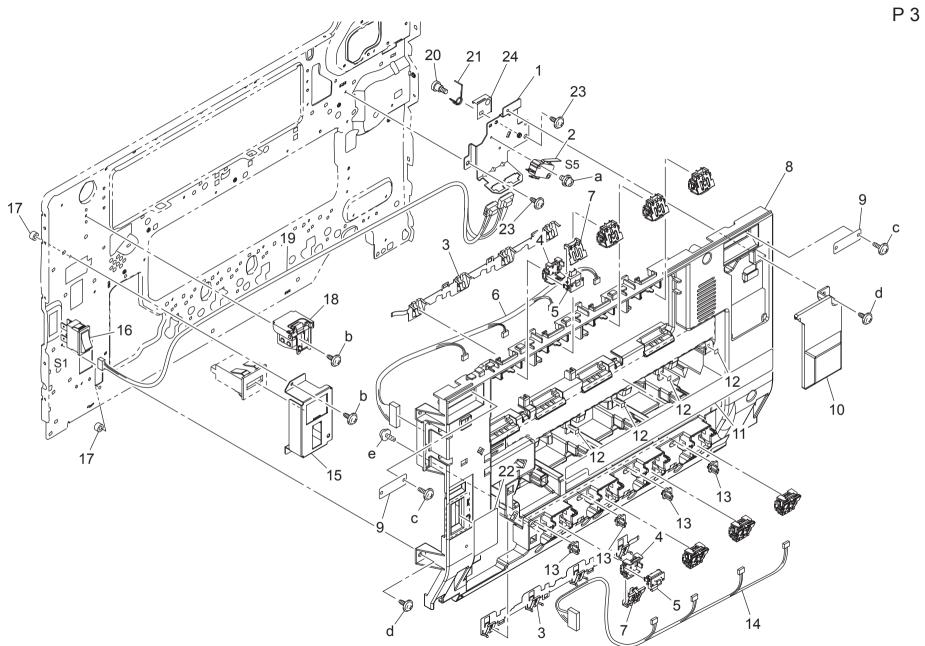
EXTERNAL PARTS



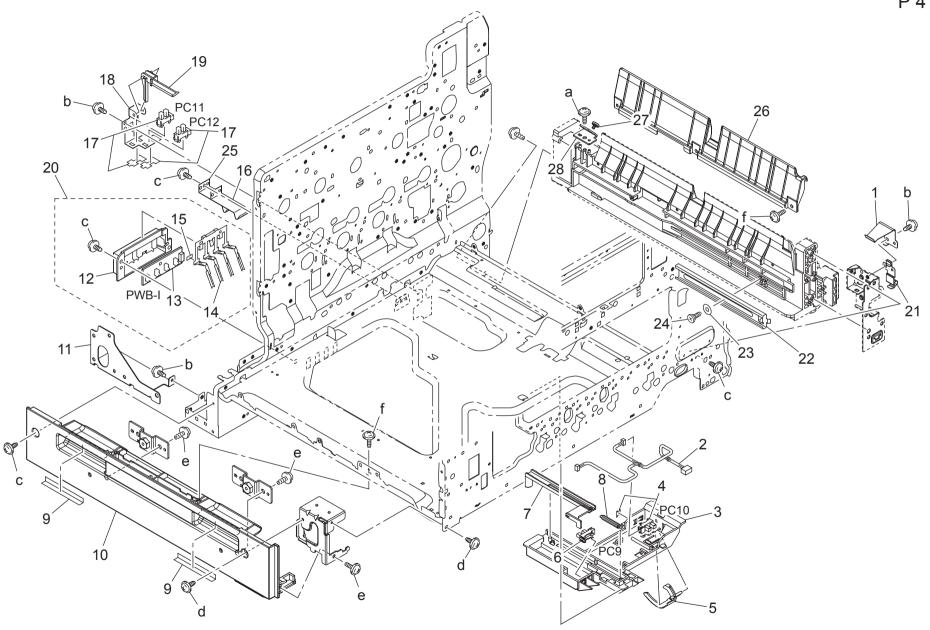
ev	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts	
1	4038 1020 03	TRAY TOP	上トレイ	- Dodinations	C	1	a-9739 0408 14	
2	4038 1039 02	TOP COVER LIGHT	上カバー 右		Č		b-9735 0308 14	
3	4038 1039 02	RIGHT COVER	エがバー・石 右カバー		C		c-9739 0308 14	
							d-9735 0306 14	
4	4038 7301 03	LABEL REMOVE	ラベル 交換		С	1	e-9646 0308 14	
5	4038 1010 01	HINGE	ヒンジ		С	2	f-9646 0306 14	
6	1136 1019 03	SHAFT	シャフト		С	2		
7	4038 2084 06	CLEANING PAD	クリーニングパッド		С	1		
8	1053 3103 01	SET PLATE	押え板		С	4		
9	4643 1020 03	BAND	バンド		С	2		
10	4025 1018 01	SEAL	シール		C	4		
-	4038 1051 01	SCREW	ねじ		C	4	1	
	4475 2603 02	MAGNET CATCH	マグネットキャッチ		D	2		
					D			
	4038 1046 01	BRACKET	取付板		_	2		
	4038 1022 06	FRONT DOOR	前扉		С	1		
15	4038 9431 00	LABEL BIZHUB C252P	ラベル (bizhubC 252 P)		С	1		
16	4030 7500 01	LABEL LOGO MARK	ラベル ロゴマーク		С	1		
7	4038 7315 02	LABEL CH CLEAN	ラベル 帯電清掃		С	1		
8	4038 2083 02	CLANING MATERIAL	清掃具		C	1		
	4038 1021 05	TOP COVER	上カバー		č	1		
0	4038 1021 03	LEFT COVER UPPER	左カバー 上		Č			
						4	4	
1	4036 1011 01	LABEL HIDE	ラベル 目隠し		С	-		
	4038 1035 01	REAR COVER	後カバー		C	1		
	4038 1027 04	LEFT COVER	左カバー(後)		С	1		
4	4037 7406 01	LABEL EARTH CAUTION	ラベル アース注意	C	С	1		
5	4038 7341 01	LABEL OUTLET	ラベル アウトレット	A,A1	С	1		
6	4037 1006 01	COVER	カバー	,	C	1	1	
7	4038 1023 04	REAR COVER	後カバー		D	1		
28	4038 1029 04	RIGHT COVER REAR	右力バー 後		Č	1		
			_ · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			1		
	4038 1031 03	REAR COVER	後カバー		C			
30	4036 4909 01	PLATE NUT	板ナット		D	1		
31	4038 6055 03	CONTROL PANEL ASSY	操作パネル ASSY	A,A1	I	1		
31	4038 6056 03	CONTROL PANEL ASSY	操作パネル ASSY	В	I	1		
31	4038 6057 03	CONTROL PANEL ASSY	操作パネル ASSY	С	1	1		
32	4038 R783 00	COVER ASSY	前カバー ASSY		S	1		
_		0012.17.001	13333 7 7 7 6 6 7		<u> </u>			
T								
٦								
							1	



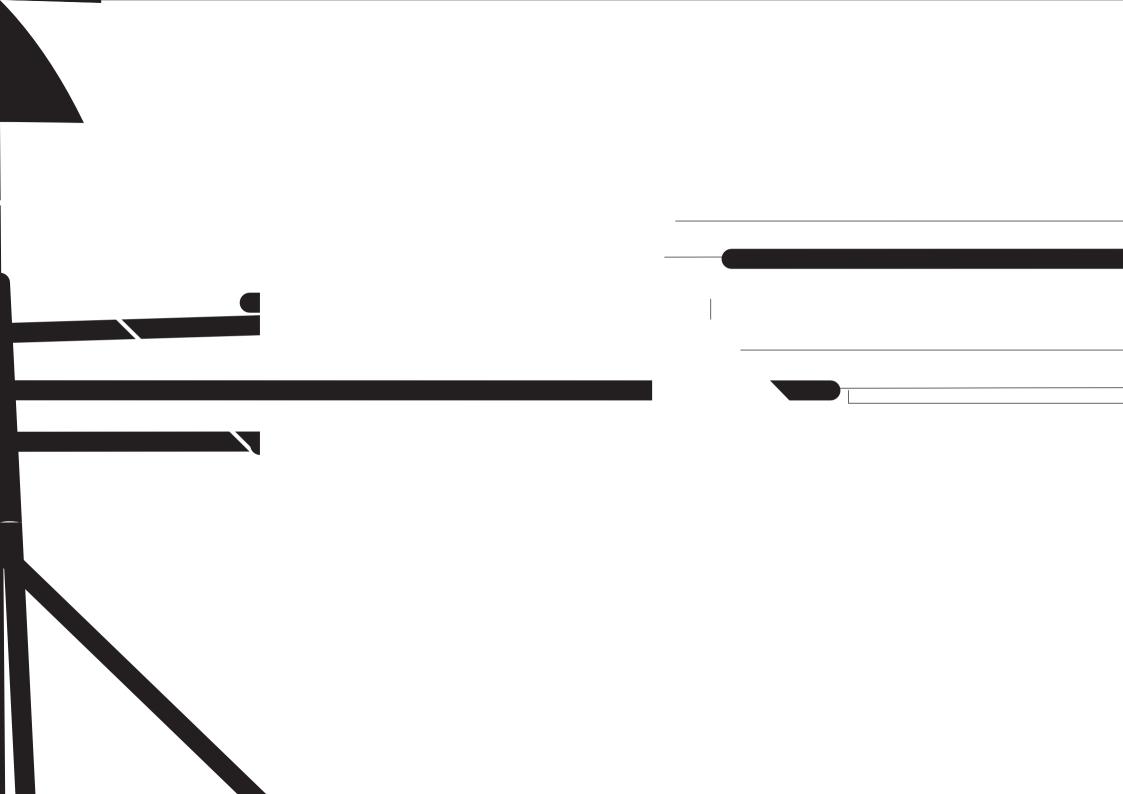
							Page. Z
Key	Part No.		ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
	4038 3595 01	SPACER	スペーサ		D	1	a-9735 0308 14
2	4038 M601 00	SWITCH	押釦スイッチ		С	1	
	4038 2065 17	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
4	4128 2215 01	COVER	カバー		D	1	
5	4038 2066 12	COVER	カバー		D	1	
6	4154 3804 01	SCREW	ねじ		C	5	
7	4038 2036 01	CAP	キャップ		С	1	
8	4038 2073 02	Reinforce plate	補強板		D	1	
9	4038 6809 03	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY		D	1	
	0996 3055 01	RUBBER FOOT	コ゛ムアシ		C	2	
11	4038 2097 02	SEAL	シール		С	1	
12	1154 4670 01	PROTECTION	保護材		С	2	
13	4039 2210 01	SEAL	シール		С	1	
14	4038 2285 02	BRACKET SEAL	取付板		D C	1	
15	4038 1312 00	SEAL	シール(台板ハーネス押さえ)		C	1	
							-
							_
							-



Key	Part No.	1					
	1000 000= -:	DD4 OVET	Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 2265 04	BRACKET	取付板(右扉安全 SW)		D	1	a-9646 0316 14 b-9735 0306 14
2	9J06 M601 00	MICRO SWITCH	マイクロスイッチ		С	1	c-9739 0308 14
3	4038 2283 02	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		C	2	d-9735 0308 14
4	4038 2281 04	HOLDER	ホルダ		С	8	e-9739 0306 14
5	4136 6751 01	CONNECTOR PIN	基板用コネクタポスト		D	8	<u> </u>
6	4038 6815 02	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	
7	4038 2282 03	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		С	8	
8	4038 1101 06	COVER	カバー		С	1	
9	4038 1014 01	SUCTION PLATE	吸着板		D	2	
10	4038 1102 02	COVER	カバー		С	1	
11	4038 7308 02	LABEL TC IU	ラベル TC IU 挿入目標		D	1	
12	4038 7309 01	LABEL	ラベル		D	4	
3	4038 1105 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	4	
14	4038 6816 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY		С	1	
15	4038 2305 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
16	4038 M600 00	SEESAW-SWITCH	波形スイッチ		C	1	
17	1154 4670 01	PROTECTION	保護材		Č	2	
18	4038 R770 00	FRONT COVER SW ASSY	休設性 前扉 SW ASSY		C	1	
19			nji SW ASS T		D		
	4038 6811 02	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	投ねじ		C		
20	4038 2287 02	SHOULDER SCREW				1	
	4038 2266 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		С	1	
22	4038 1103 03	PLATE	保護板		С	1	
23	4154 3804 01	SCREW	ねじ		С	2	
24	4038 1360 00	GUIDE	ガイド		D	1	
							-

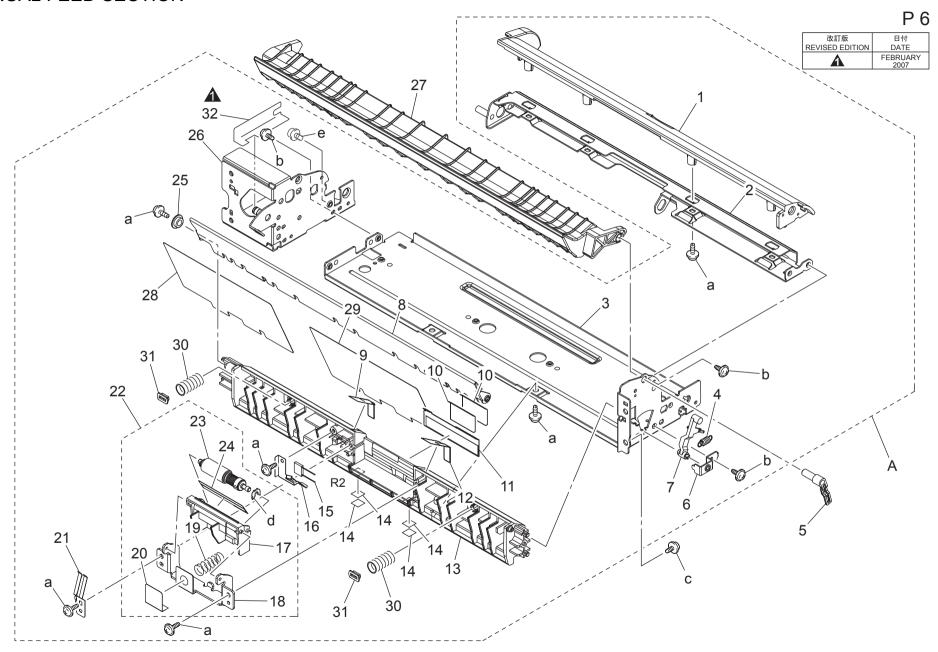


May Part No.	IVII		TAKE-UP SECTION					Page. 4
2 4038 6829 02 WIRE HARNESS ASSY	Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
3 4004 3062 06 HOLDER	1	4038 3541 01	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		D	1	a-9739 0410 14
4 9,006 R901 00 PHOTO INTERUPPTER フォトインタラブタ C 1 164 3027 01 ACTUATOR アクチュエータ C 1 6 9335 1400 61 SOLID STATE SWITCH 透過型フォトスイッチ B 1 1 7 4004 3061 01 ACTUATOR アクチュエータ C 1 8 4 004 3063 01 TENSION SPRING 引張 コルばね C 1 9 4038 2080 02 RAIL レール C 1 11 4038 2080 02 RAIL レール C 1 11 4038 2080 02 RAIL レール C 1 11 4038 2080 02 RAIL レール C 1 12 1164 3022 02 HOLDER ホルダー D 1 13 4037 0104 01 PWB ASSY 基板 A S S Y C 1 14 1164 3022 01 SPACER スペーサ D 1 15 4004 3052 01 SPACER スペーサ D 1 17 4037 0904 01 PHOTO INTERUPTER フォトインタラブター B 2 18 4004 3011 01 BRACKET 取付板 D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER D 1 10 4038 2090 01 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY D 1 20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY D 1 21 1164 3057 01 WASHER D 1 22 4004 3052 01 RAIL D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 4038 2090 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね D 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW B 20 1 28 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW B 20 1	2	4038 6829 02	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	b-9735 0306 14
5 1164 3027 01 ACTUATOR アクチュエータ C 1 6 9335 1400 61 SOLID STATE SWITCH 透過型フォトスイッチ B 1 7 4004 3061 01 ACTUATOR アクチュエータ C 1 8 4004 3063 01 TENSION SPRING 引張コイルばね C 2 9 4038 2162 02 CUSHION C 2 10 4038 2008 02 RAIL レール C 1 11 4038 2408 01 REINFORCE PLATE 補強板 D 1 12 1164 3022 02 HOLDER ホルダー D 1 13 4037 0104 01 PWB ASSY 基 A S S Y C 1 14 1164 3020 03 LEVER スペーサ D 1 15 4004 3052 01 SPACER スペーサ D 1 16 1164 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 17 4037 0904 01 PHOTO INTERRUPTER フォトインタラブター B 2 18 4004 3011 01 BRACKET 取り板板 D 1	3	4004 3062 06		ホルダ		С	1	c-9735 0308 14
5 1164 3027 01 ACTUATOR アクチュエータ C 1 6 9335 1400 61 SOLID STATE SWITCH 透過型フォトスイッチ B 1 7 4004 3061 01 ACTUATOR アクチュエータ C 1 8 4004 3063 01 TENSION SPRING 引張コイルばね C 1 9 4038 2162 02 CUSHION クッション C 2 10 4038 2008 02 RAIL レール C 1 11 4038 2408 01 REINFORCE PLATE 補強板 D 1 13 4037 0104 01 PWB ASSY 基板 A S S Y C 1 14 1164 3022 02 HOLDER スペーサ D 1 15 4004 3052 01 SPACER スペーサ C 1 16 1164 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 17 4037 0904 01 PHOTO INTERRUPTER フォトインタラブター B 2 18 4004 3011 01 BRACKET 取付板 D 1 20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY カセットサイズ検出 A S S Y C 1 21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCRE	4	9J06 R901 00	PHOTO INTERUPPTER	フォトインタラプタ		В	1	d-9735 0408 14 e-9739 0408 14
6 9335 1400 61 SOLID STATE SWITCH 透過型フォトスイッチ C C 1 8 4004 3063 01 TENSION SPRING 7クチュエータ C C 1 9 4038 2162 02 CUSHION クッション C C 2 14 4038 2080 02 RAIL レール C C 1 11 4038 2080 01 REINFORCE PLATE 補強板 D 1 12 1164 3022 02 HOLLDER ホルダー D 1 13 4037 0104 01 PWB ASSY 基板 AS S Y C C 1 15 4004 3052 01 SPACER スペーサ D 1 16 1164 3020 03 LEVER スペーサ D 1 17 4037 0904 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね D 1 17 4037 0904 01 PHOTO INTERRUPTER フォトインタラブター B 2 18 4004 3012 01 LEVER D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER D 1 20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY D 1 21 4038 2099 01 RAIL D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER D 1 24 1048 3059 01 RAIL D 1 25 4038 7021 00 GUIDE SCREW B 2 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE SCREW B 2 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW B 2 28 1048 5067 00 SHOULDER SCREW B 2 29 1048 8667 00 SHOULDER SCREW B 2 20 1 5 5 HOULDER SCREW B 2 20 1 5 5 HOULDER SCREW B 2 20 1 1	5	1164 3027 01		アクチュエータ		С	1	f-9739 0308 14
7 4004 3061 01 ACTUATOR 7クチュエータ 1 1 1 1 4004 3063 01 TENSION SPRING 7サション C 2 1 1 1 1 1 4038 2462 02 CUSHION クッション C 2 1 1 1 4038 2408 02 RAIL レール C 1 1 1 1 4 4038 2408 01 REINFORCE PLATE 捕締板 D 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1						В	1	1 0700 0000 11
8 4004 3063 01 TENSION SPRING 月張コイルばね							1	
9 4038 2162 02 CUSHION クッション								
10								
11								
12 1164 3022 02 HOLDER ホルダー 基板 A S S Y C 1 13 4037 0104 01 PWB ASSY 基板 A S S Y C 1 14 1164 3020 03 LEVER								-
13								
14 1164 3020 03 LEVER レバー C 1 15 4004 3052 01 SPACER スペーサ D 1 16 1164 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 17 4037 0904 01 PHOTO INTERRUPTER フォトインタラプター B 2 18 4004 3011 01 BRACKET 取付板 D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER レバー C 1 20 4038 740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY D 1 21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 設むじ C 1 25 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 26 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW D 1								
15 4004 3052 01 SPACER スペーサ D 1 16 1164 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 17 4037 0904 01 PHOTO INTERRUPTER フォトインタラプター B 2 18 4004 3011 01 BRACKET 取付板 D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER レバー C 1 20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY カセットサイズ検出 A S S Y C 1 21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1								
16 1164 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 17 4037 0904 01 PHOTO INTERRUPTER フォトインタラプター B 2 18 4004 3011 01 BRACKET 取付板 D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER レバー C 1 20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY カセットサイズ検出 A S S Y C 1 21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MP C)								
Transport Tr								
18 4004 3011 01 BRACKET 取付板 D 1 19 4004 3012 01 LEVER レバー C 1 20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY カセットサイズ検出 A S S Y C 1 21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1								
19 4004 3012 01 LEVER レバー C 1 20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY カセットサイズ検出 A S S Y C 1 21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WAS HER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1								
20 4038 R740 00 SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY カセットサイズ検出 A S S Y C 1 21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1	18	4004 3011 01				D	1	
21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1	19	4004 3012 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
21 4038 2099 01 CONTACT 接点 D 1 22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW Bat C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING Kita C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW Bat D 1	20	4038 R740 00	SIZE DETECTING PWB ASSY	カセットサイズ検出 ASSY		С	1	
22 4004 3029 01 RAIL レール D 1 23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1	21			接点		D	1	
23 1164 3057 01 WASHER ワッシャ C 1 24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド(MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1						D	1	
24 1164 3053 12 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ C 1 25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1							1	
25 4038 3054 01 PLATE SPRING 板ばね C 1 26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW Bねじ D 1							1	
26 4038 7021 00 GUIDE ガイド (MPC) C 1 27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1								
27 4038 5667 00 SHOULDER SCREW 段ねじ D 1								-
28 4035 5000 00 BRACKET #X1) #X D T T								
	20	4038 3000 00	BRACKET	4X 13 ftX		В	'	
								-
								_

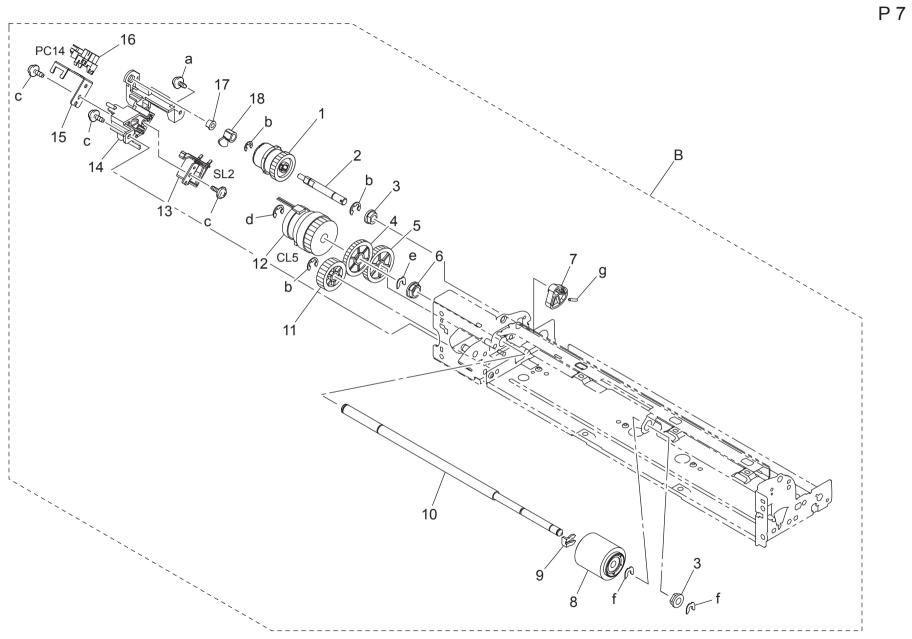


∕ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard pa
1	4038 7351 01	SCALE METRIC	手差しスケール メトリック	A,C	С	1	a-9739 0308 14
1	4038 7352 01	SCALE INCH	手差しスケール インチ	В	С	1	b-9735 0306 1
2	9J06 3282 01	COVER	カバー		С	1	c-9735 0310 1 d-9735 0408 1
3	4037 0906 01	PHOTO INTERRUPTER	フォトインタラプター		В	4	e-9735 0408 1
4	4030 3414 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	3	f-9646 0306 1
5	4030 3446 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		C	3	1-3040 0300 1
6	4030 3415 02	ACTUATOR	アクチュエータ		Č	3	
7	1134 3042 02	SHAFT	シャフト		D	3	
8	9J06 3281 02	TRAY	トレイ		C	1	
9	9J06 7303 01	LABEL MANUAL FEED	ラベル 手差し操作		C	1	
10	9J06 3287 00	SEAL SEAL	シール(ハーネス押さえ)		C	2	-
	9J06 3284 03	COVER	カバー (トレイ)		C	1	
11 12		BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	9J06 3235 01						
13	9J06 3283 04	TRAY	トレイ(マルチ手差し)		С	1	
14	4038 3233 02	ACTUATOR	アクチュエータ		С	1	
15	4038 3234 02	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		С	1	
16	9J06 3285 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
17	9J06 6813 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY		С	1	
18	9J06 6211 00	CUSHION	クッション(マル手トレイ)		С	1	
19	9J06 7354 01	LABEL	ラベル		С	1	
20	4038 3212 04	COVER	カバー		С	1	
21	9J06 3286 02	PLATE SPRING	板ばね(トレイ保持)		D	3	
22	9J06 3215 02	HOLD PLATE	保持板		D	1	
23	4038 3252 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	2	
24	4038 3253 01	HOLD PLATE	保持板		D	1	
25	9J06 3256 01	GUIDE	ガイド		C	1	
26	9J06 3213 01	COVER	カバー		Č	1	
27	9J06 3251 04	LIFTING PLATE	押上板		D	1	
28		BRAKE	ガンルーキ材		C	2	
	4038 3286 01						
29	4038 3221 03	REGULATING PLATE	規制板		С	1	
30	4038 3222 03	REGULATING PLATE	規制板		С	1	
31	9J06 3214 02	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
32	4038 3255 01	BRAKE	ブレーキ材		D	1	
33	9J06 6810 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		С	1	
34	4037 6899 01	RESISTOR	テイコウキ		D	1	
35	4038 3272 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
36	4030 3460 02	RACK	ラック		С	1	
37	4030 3412 01	GEAR 13/18T	ギヤ 13/18 T		С	1	
38	4038 0252 03	BRACKET ASSY	取付板 ASSY		D	1	
39	4687 3281 01	FRICTION SHEET	摩擦板		С	1	
40	4154 3804 01	SCREW	ねじ		C	1	7
41	4038 R775 00	MANUAL FEED TRAY UNIT	マルチ手差し		S	1	
42	4038 5604 00	SEAL	シール(マル手・ハーネス押さえ)		Č	1	
43	4038 5606 00	SEAL	シール(ハーネス押さえ)		Č	1	
.0	.300 0000 00		2 72 G F BASH CZE				
							+

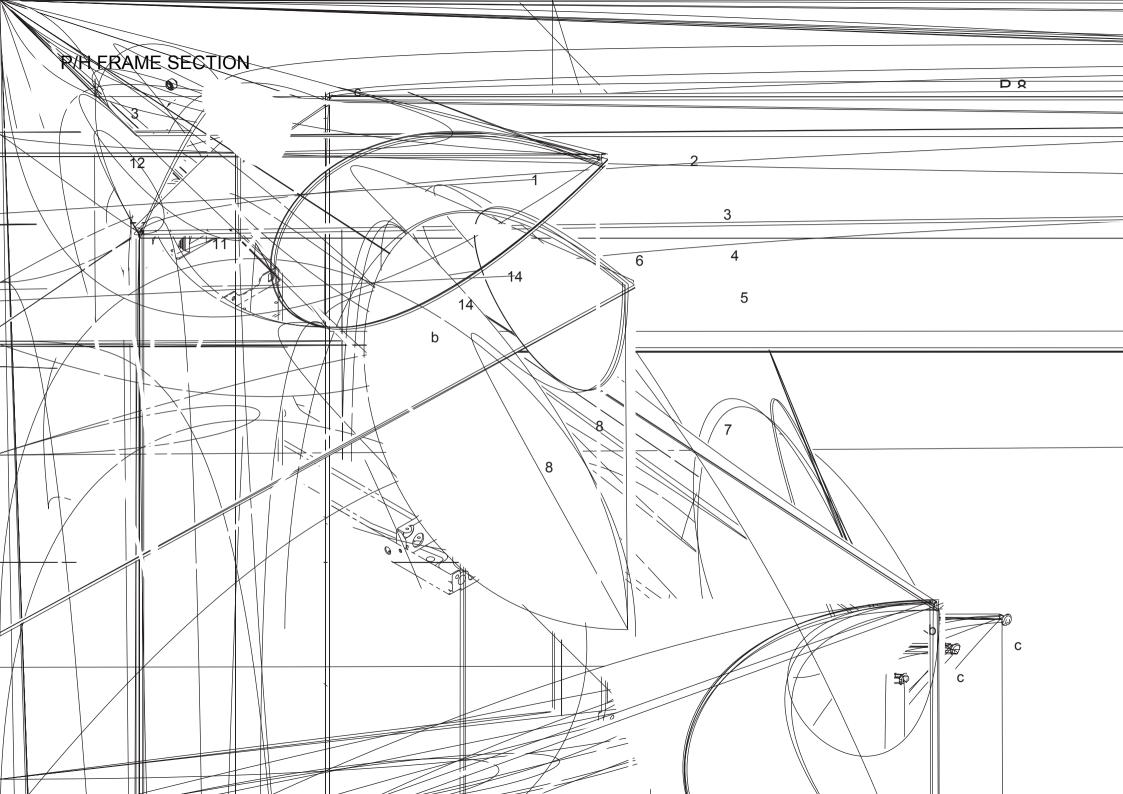
MANUAL FEED SECTION



-		ED SECTION					Page.
(ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard part
1	4038 5660 01	COVER	カバー (T)		С	1	a-9739 0308 14
	4038 3207 03	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	b-9735 0306 14
3	9J06 3208 02	FRAME	フレーム (F)		D	1	c-9735 0408 14 d-4425 3002 01
4	4038 3217 01	TENSION SPRING	引張コイルばね		С	1	e-9646 0306 14
5	4038 3216 03	LEVER	レバー		С	1	0 00 10 0000 11
3	4038 3220 01	HOLD PLATE	保持板		D	1	
	4038 3218 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
	4038 5656 00	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
9	4038 3269 02	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
	4030 3403 01	GUIDE	ガイド		C	2	
	4038 5653 00	GUIDE PLATE	ガイド板		C	1	
	4038 3268 02	GUIDE	ガイド		Č	1	
	4038 3204 05	GUIDE	ガイド		Č	1	
	4037 7001 00	SPACER	スペーサ		Č	4	
	9455 8076 01	RESISTOR	その他固定抵抗器		D	1	
	4038 3266 01	EARTH GROUND	アース		D	1	4
			アース ホルダ		D	•	
	4038 3261 02	HOLDER				1	
	4038 3262 03	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	4030 3475 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		C	1	
	4038 3270 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
	4038 5662 00	EARTH GROUND	アース板		D	1	
	9J06 R718 00	ROLLER ASSY	マルチ手差しサバキローラー ASSY		С	1	
	4034 0151 01	SEPARATION ROLLER	分離ローラ		Α	1	
	4038 3267 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
	4038 5651 00	COLLAR	カラー		С	1	
	9J06 0202 14	FRAME ASSY	フレーム ASSY		D	1	7
	4038 5661 00	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
	4038 5657 00	GUIDE	ガイド(L)		Ċ	1	
	4038 5664 00	GUIDE	ガイド (R)		Č	1	
	4038 5658 00	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		Č	2	
	4038 5663 00	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	2	1
	4038 5605 00	SEAL	シール		C	1	
	+000 0000 00	OLAL	" "			'	
\dashv							
\dashv							

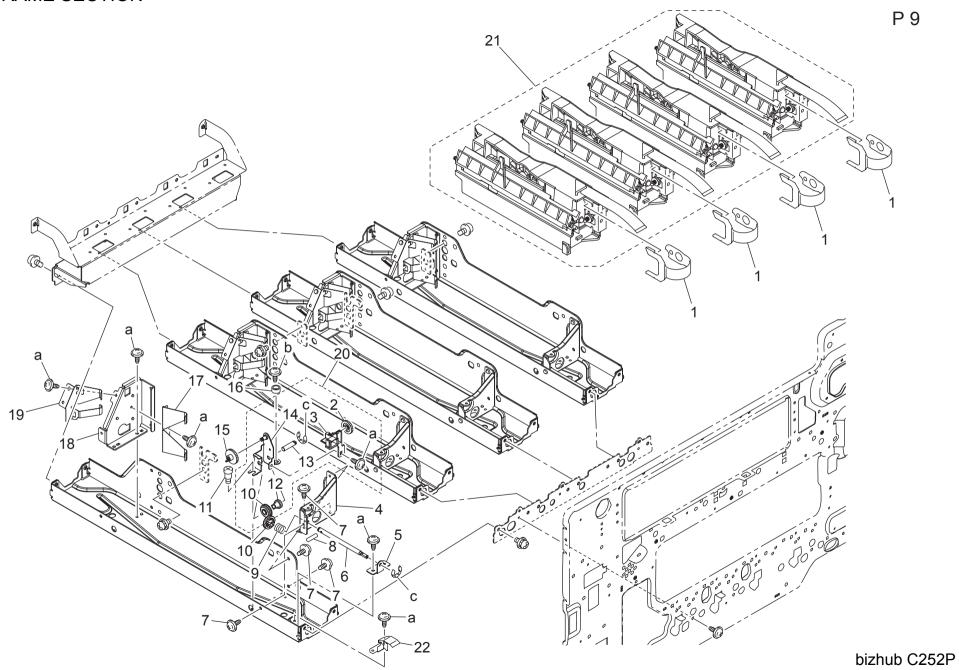


ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 3260 01	CLUTCH ASSY	クラッチ A S S Y	Destinations	C	1	a-9735 0306 14
2	4038 3240 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	b-9721 0400 01
			軸受		C		c-9739 0308 14
3	4030 3093 01	BUSHING				2	d-9721 0600 01
4	4038 3246 01	GEAR 30T	ギヤ 30 T		С	1	e-4425 3002 01
5	4038 3247 01	GEAR 30T	ギヤ 30 T		С	1	f-4425 3001 01
	4131 3532 02	BUSHING	軸受		C	1	g-9752 2010 50
	4038 3236 01	CAM	カム		С	1	
В	4131 3001 01	ROLLER	ローラ		Α	1	
9	4142 3217 01	STOP RING	止め輪		С	1	
0	4038 3232 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
1	1075 2565 01	GEAR 25T	ギヤ 25 T		С	1	
	9J06 M201 00	CLUTCH	クラッチ		С	1	
	9J06 M200 00	SOLENOID	フラッパーソレノイド		C	1	
	4038 3244 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
5	9J06 3249 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1 1	
6	9335 1300 61	PHOTO INTERRUPTER	フォトインタラプタ		В	1	
		BUSHING					
	4004 5339 01		軸受		C	1	
8	4038 3237 01	SHIELD PLATE	遮光板		С	1	
						1	
							-
							1
							-
							1
							1
	1					1	1



. /	LKAIME S	CHON					Page. o
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4	4038 0105 03 4038 2094 01 4038 2016 02 4038 2017 01	PWB ASSY ROLL LIFTING PLATE PRESSURE SPRING	基板 A S S Y ころ 押上板 圧縮コイルばね		1 C D C	1 8 8 8	a-9739 0308 14 b-9735 0308 14 c-9735 0306 14
5 6 7 8 9	4038 2018 03 4154 3804 01 4038 2061 01 4038 R737 00 4038 2249 02	HOLDER SCREW BRACKET CONNECTOR ASSY HOLDER	ホルダ ねじ 取付板 ATDC ドロア ASSY ホルダ		C D C	8 4 4 4	
10 11 12 13 14	4038 2060 02 4038 2067 01 4038 2051 01 4038 2086 01 4038 1281 00	HOLDER SEAL SEAL COLLAR PORYESTER FILM	ホルダ シール シール カラー ポリエステルフィルム		C C C	4 4 4 4 4	

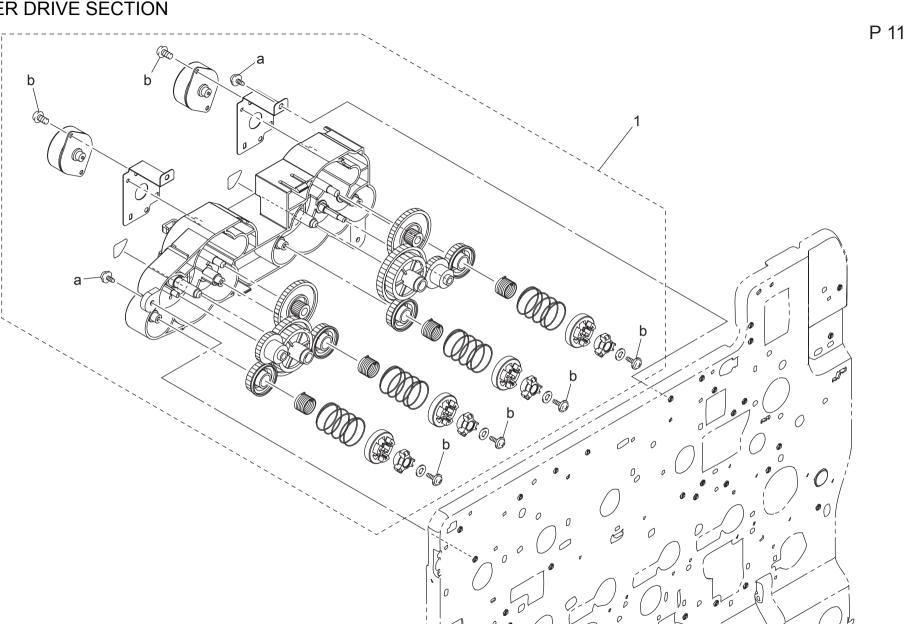
P/H FRAME SECTION



		DECTION					Page. 9
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
	4038 1906 04	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		С	4	a-9735 0306 14
2	4038 2189 01	GEAR 27T	ギヤ 27 T		С	4	b-9735 0308 14 c-9721 0300 01
3	4038 2187 04	GUIDE	ガイド		D	4	c-9/21 0300 01
4	4038 2044 02	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	4	
5	4038 2194 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	4	
6	4038 2193 03	SHAFT	シャフト		D	4	
7	4106 2063 01	SCREW	ねじ		С	20	
8	1067 2501 01	PIN	le °ン		С	4	
9	4038 2196 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	4	
	4038 2191 02	GEAR 16T	ギヤ 16 T		C	8	
	4038 2184 01	SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		C	4	
	4038 2190 03	GEAR 16T	ギヤ 16 T		Č	4	
	4038 2192 02	SHAFT	シャフト		Ď	4	
	4038 0211 04	BRACKET ASSY	取付板 ASSY		D	4	
	4038 2188 02	GEAR 30T	ギヤ 30 T		C	4	
	4038 2179 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		C	4	-
		SPRING				4	
	4038 2042 01		ばね		D		
	4038 2043 03	BRACKET	取付板		D	4	
	4038 2180 01	CONTACT	接点		D	4	
20	4038 R731 00	SKEW ADJUSTMENT ASSY	スキュー調整 ASSY		S	4	1
	4039 R723 00	PRINT HEAD UNIT	P / H		<u> </u>	1	
22	4038 1280 00	BRACKET	取付板		D	4	
							1
							1
							-
							ĺ
							1

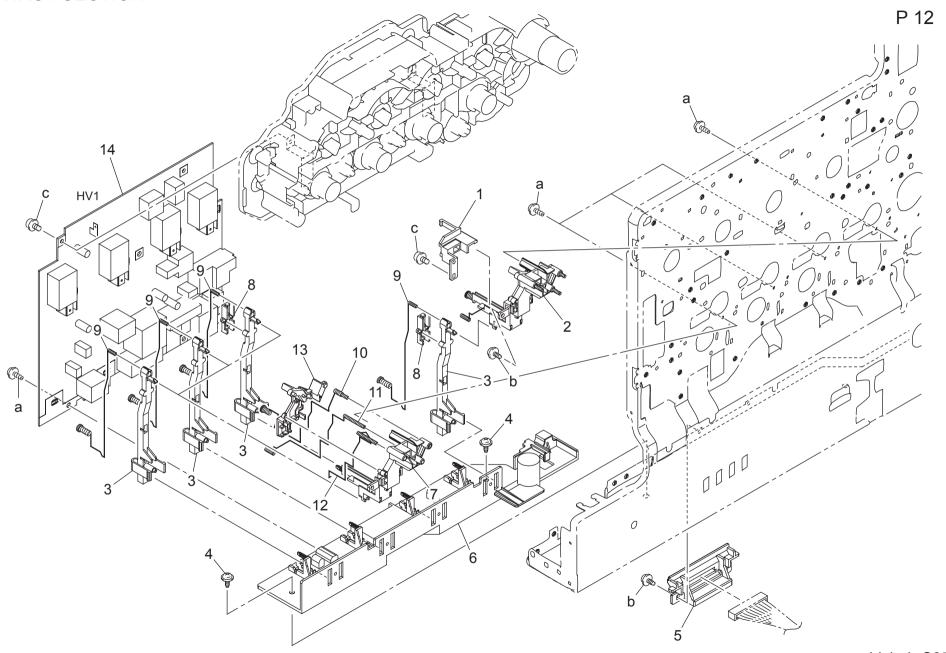
bizhub C252P

Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 2019 01	RAIL	レール		D	1	a-9735 0308 14
2	4038 2038 02	SET PLATE	押え板		D	1	b-9735 0306 14
3	4038 2175 02	PAWL	П	C	D	4	
3	4038 2173 02	PAWL	П	A,A1	D	4	
3	4038 2174 03	PAWL	π	В	D	4	
4	4038 7316 01	LABEL	ラベル		D	8	
5	4038 2020 02	RAIL	レール		D	1	
6	4038 2021 03	RAIL	レール		D	2	
7	4038 2022 02	RAIL	レール		D	1	
8	4038 6813 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	
9	4038 2107 03	GUIDE	ガイド		D	4	
10	4038 2109 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		C	4	
	4038 2108 01	STIRRING MEMBER	撹拌材	(C.M.Y)	Č	3	
12	4038 2150 01	SEAL	シール	(C.W. 1)	C	4	
		SEAL			C		
13	4038 2110 03	SEAL	シール	(DLACK)		4	
14	4038 1271 00	LEVER	撹拌材 (T/ C ガイド・K)	(BLACK)	С	1	
15	9J06 1013 00	SEAL	シール (C)		С	4	
16	4038 2102 01	SEAL	シール		C	4	
17	4038 1311 00	SEAL	シール (T / C レール)		С	1	



Key	Part No.	De	scription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
	4038 R729 00	HOPPER DRIVE ASSY	ホッパー駆動 ASSY		С	1	a-9735 0308 14 b-9732 0308 14
							-
							_
							_
							_
							-
							-
							-

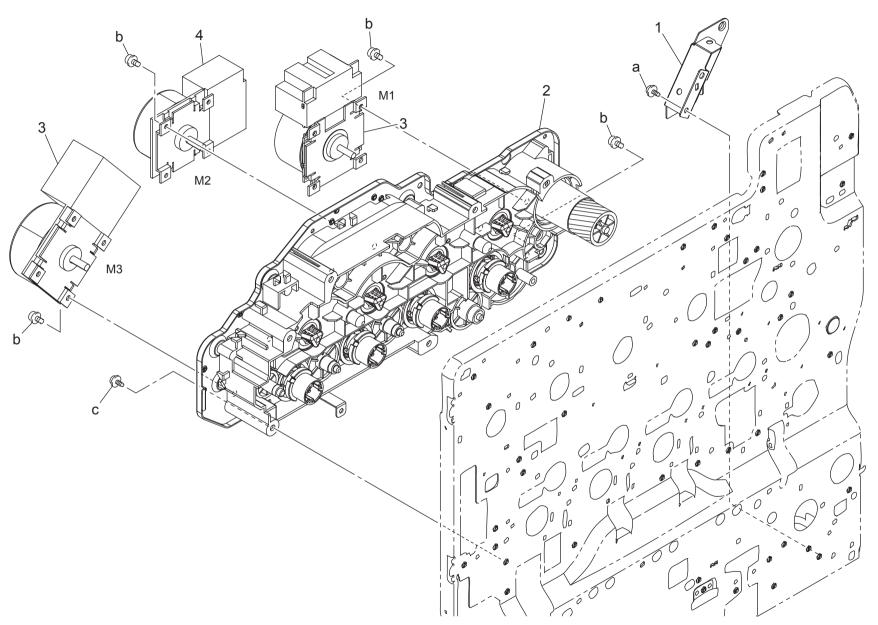
CONTACT SECTION



(ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard part
1	4038 2275 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	a-9739 0308 14 b-9735 0308 14 c-9646 0308 14
	4038 0760 00	IU CONTACT PLATE ASSY	I U 接点		C	1	b-9735 0308 14
3	4038 2233 02	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	4	c-9646 0308 14
4	4154 3804 01	SCREW	ねじ		Č	2	
5	4038 2313 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		Č	1	
	4038 2206 02	HOLDER	ホルダ				+
6	4038 2206 02	HOLDER	小ルグ		D	1	
7	4038 2274 03	Holder	ホルダ		D	3	
	4038 2255 01	COVER	カバー		D	2	
9	4038 2222 01	CONTACT	接点		С	4	
10	4038 2277 01	CONTACT	接点		С	3	1
11	4038 2276 01	CONTACT	接点		С	3	
12	4038 2225 02	CONTACT	接点		С	3	
13	4038 2232 01 Old	COVER	カバー		D	3	
13	4038 2232 13	Cover	カバー		D	3	
14	4038 6203 03	HV TRANSFORMER	高圧ユニット		ī	1	
17	4000 0200 00	TIV TIVINGI CINILIN	同ルユークト		'	'	1
							1
							_
							-
							_
	i				1	ı	1

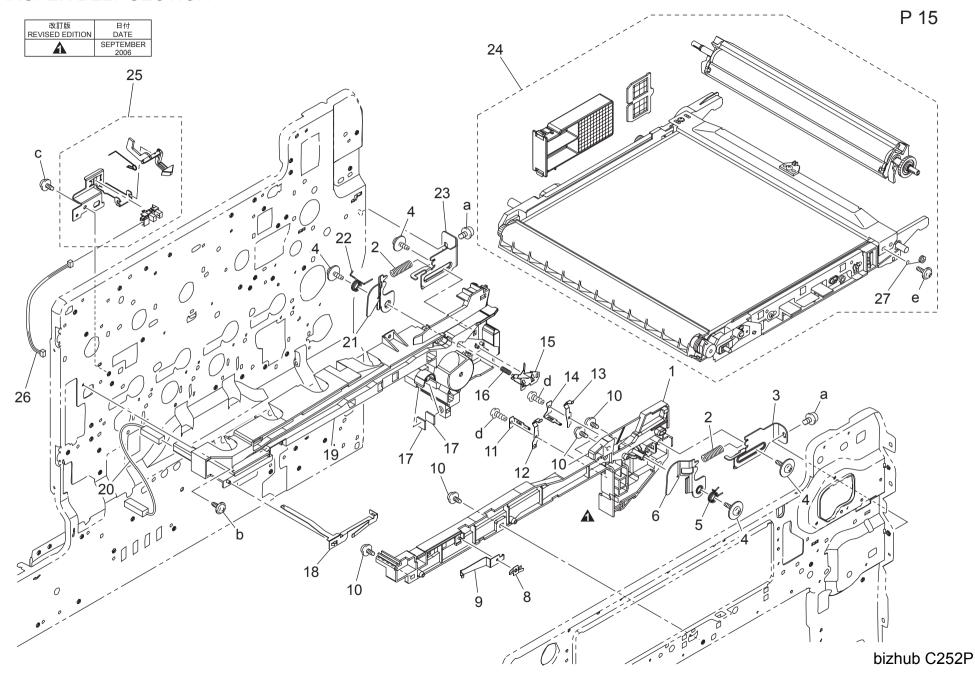


Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 2199 02	SHIELD PLATE	 遮光材		С	1	a-9646 0308 14
2	4038 2182 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	b-9735 0306 14 c-9743 0308 14
3	4038 2181 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	c-9743 0308 14
4	9353 2400 11	LED PILOT LAMP	発光ダイオード		С	4	d-9721 0300 01 e-9739 0308 14
5	4038 2015 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	f-9646 0316 14
6	4038 2014 08	RAIL	レール		D	4	
7	4038 7309 01	LABEL	ラベル		D	4	
8	4038 2069 01	SLIDER	すべり材		С	4	
9	4038 2072 04	PLATE SPRING	板ばね(前 V 字)		С	4	
10	4038 2198 02	SHIELD PLATE	遮光材		C	3	
11	4038 2040 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	4	
12	4038 2056 02	SEAL	シール		C	1	
13	4038 2052 02	DUCT	ダクト		Ď	1	
14	4038 2053 02	SEAL	シール		Č	1	
15	4038 2081 02	SEAL	シール		Č	1 1	
16	4038 2151 02	SEAL	シール		Č	8	-
17	4038 2106 01	PIPE	パイプ		D	3	
18	4038 2104 02	SEAL	シール		C	4	
19	4038 2103 04	SHUTTER	シャッタ		D	4	
20	4038 2105 04	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		C	4	
21	4038 2103 03	PIPE	パイプ		D	1	
	4038 2032 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	4	
22					D	1	
23	4038 2183 01	BRACKET	取付板		_		
24	4038 1273 00	POLYESTER FILM	ポリエステルフィルム		С	1	
25	9J06 1015 01	SEAL	シール(E)		C	1	
26	9J06 1017 00	SEAL	シール(IUレール奥)		С	1	
27	9J06 1016 00	SEAL	シール(IUレール下)		C	1	
28	9J06 1018 00	POLYESTER FILM	ポリエステルフィルム		С	1	
							_
							-

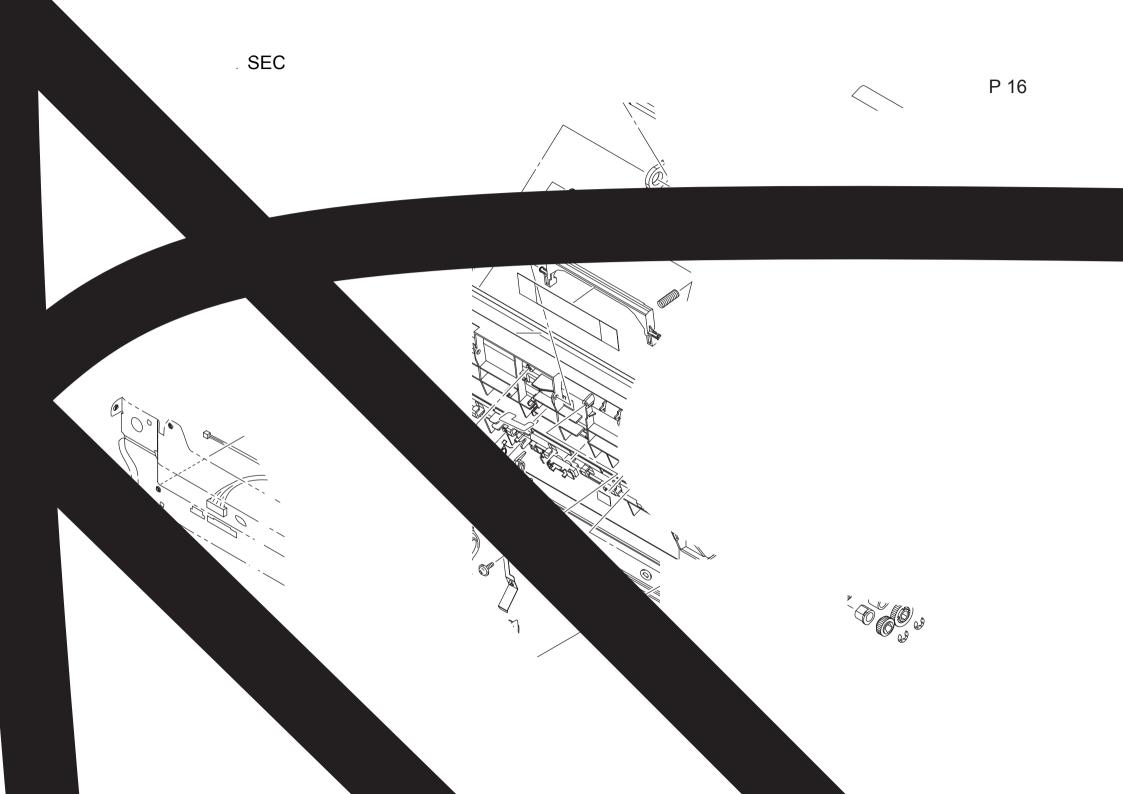


Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4	4038 3517 03 4038 R730 00 4038 M101 00 4038 M102 00	Reinforce plate DEVELOP DRIVE ASSY MOTOR MOTOR	補強板 現像駆動 ASSY ブラシレスモータ ブラシレスモータ		D C B	1 1 2 1	a-9735 0306 14 b-9646 0306 14 c-9735 0308 14
							-
							-
							-
							_
							-
							-
							-

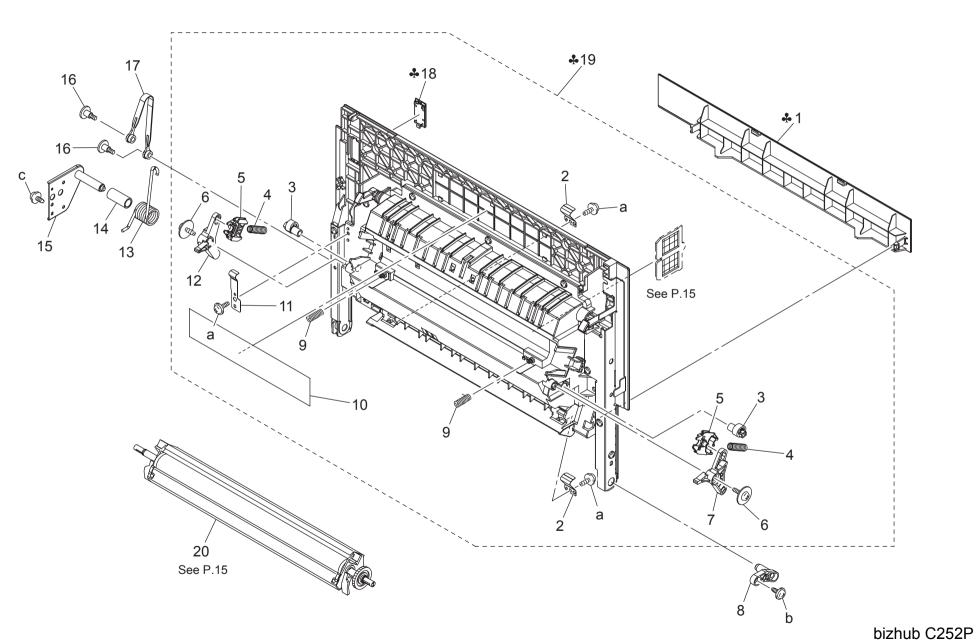
TRANSFER BELT SECTION



(ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 2023 18	RAIL	レール(中転・F)		D	1	a-9646 0408 14
2	4038 2029 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	2	b-9735 0308 14 c-9735 0306 14
3	4038 2046 01	LEVER	レバー		C	1	c-9735 0306 14
4	4163 5293 01	SCREW	ねじ		C	4	d-9732 0308 14 e-9739 0310 14
5	4038 2048 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		C	1	e-9739 03 10 14
6	4038 2047 02	ARM	アーム		C	1	1
8	4038 2080 01	CONTACT	接点		Č	1	
9	4038 2045 01	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		D	1	
	4154 3804 01	SCREW	ねじ		Č	4	
11	4038 2077 13	CONTACT	接点(新品検知1)		C	1 1	
	4038 2152 13	CONTACT	接点(新品検知3)		C	1	-
13	4038 2152 13	CONTACT	接点(新品検知4)		C		
14		CONTACT			C		
	4038 2078 13		接点(新品検知2)				
15	4038 2205 02	CONTACT	接点		С	1	
16	4038 2207 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		C	1	_
17	4038 2151 02	SEAL	シール		С	2	
18	4038 2217 01	CONTACT	接点		С	1	
19	4038 2024 02	RAIL	レール		D	1	
20	4038 6836 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	
21	4038 2027 01	ARM	アーム		С	1	
22	4038 2028 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		С	1	
23	4038 2026 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
24	4038 R743 00	TRANSFER KIT	転写部キット		A	1	
	4038 R733 00	SWITCH ASSY	1次転写離間検出スイッチ ASSY		С	1	
6	4038 6835 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY		D	1	
	4038 5002 00	CONTACT	接点(分離)		C	1	_

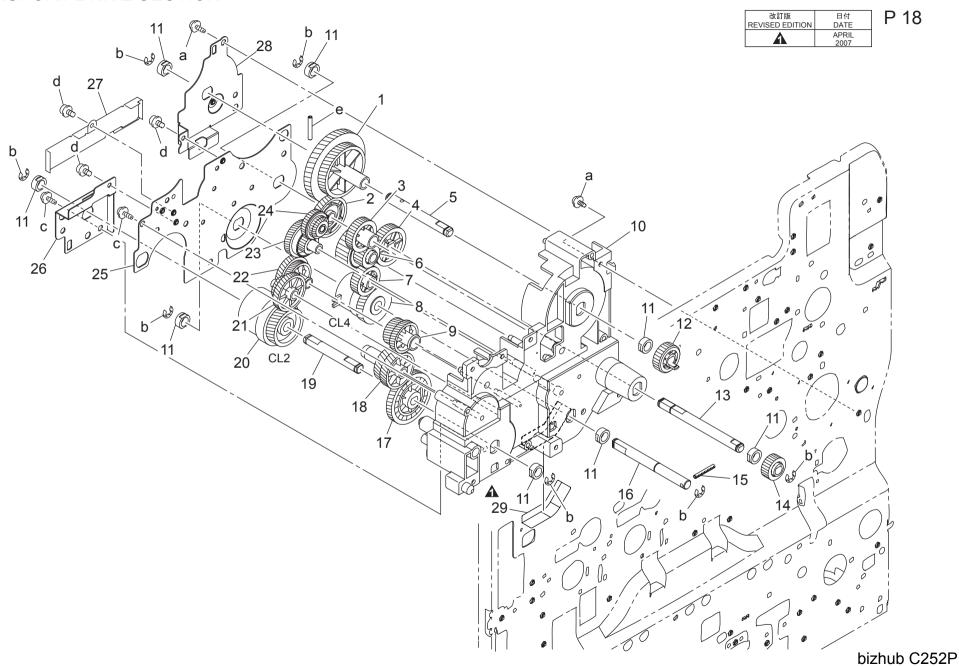


еу	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard pa
1 40	038 7303 01	LABEL M1	ラベル M 1		С	1	a-9735 0308 14
2 40	038 3532 01	HANDLE	取手		С	1	b-9739 0308 14
	038 3529 02	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	c-9721 0600 0
	038 3539 01	GUIDE	ガイド		C	1	d-9739 0306 1
	038 3501 01	ROLLER	n-5		Č	1	e-9739 0310 °
	335 1400 21	SOLID STATE SWITCH			C	1	-
	038 3537 01	GUIDE	ガイド		C	1	
		GUIDE	ガイド				
	038 3538 01				С	1	
	038 3536 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
	038 3502 02	ROLLER	ローラ		С	1	
	038 3540 03	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
	038 7022 00	GUIDE	ガイド (T / R)		С	1	
40	038 7023 00	SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		С	1	
40	038 3530 01	EARTH GROUND	アース		D	1	
	038 3525 01	TENSION SPRING	引張コイルばね		С	2	
40	025 3572 01	BUSHING	軸受		Č	4	1
	004 3503 02	GEAR 20T	ギヤ 20 T		Č	1 1	
	004 3503 02	GEAR 14T	ギヤ 14 T		Č		
	038 3567 01	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		D		
						1 1	
	455 8076 01	RESISTOR	その他固定抵抗器		D		_
	128 3522 01	SEAL	シール		С	2	
	038 3562 01	ACTUATOR	アクチュエータ		С	1	
	335 1400 11	PRISM	プリズム		С	1	
	038 3593 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		С	2	
40	038 3592 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	
93	372 1300 12	PHOTO SENSING ELEMENT	光電変換素子		В	2	
	038 3531 02	EARTH GROUND	アース		D	2	
	037 0906 01	PHOTO INTERRUPTER	フォトインタラプター		В	1	
	038 6830 02	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY		D	1	
	038 3561 03	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	372 5400 31	HUMIDITY CONVERTION EL.	湿度変換素子		C	1	_
	164 3527 02	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		C	1	
					В	-	
	322 1300 21	CLUTCH	クラッチ		_	1	
	038 3556 01	SEAL	シール		С	2	
	038 3559 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	2	
	038 3558 02	COVER	カバー		С	2	
	038 3527 03	GUIDE	ガイド		D	1	
	038 5603 00	SPACER	スペーサ		D	1	
40	038 R759 00	TRANSPORT UNIT	縦搬送ユニット		S	1	
40	038 7010 00	SEAL	シール		С	2	
+							1

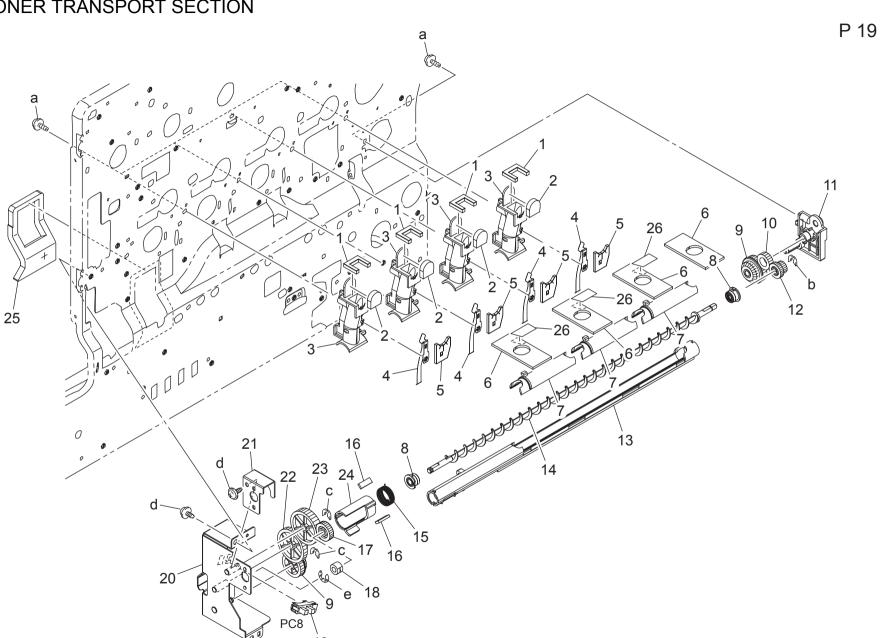


У	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard par
	4038 3515 02	COVER	カバー	A,A1	С	1	a-9739 0308 14
	4066 3770 03	COVER	カバー	B,C	С	1	b-9735 0308 14 c-9735 0306 14
	4038 3520 01	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		D	2	c-9735 0306 14
	4038 3553 01	CAM	カム		С	2	
	4038 4611 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	2	
	4038 3542 02	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	2	
	4163 5293 01	SCREW	ねじ		С	2	
	4038 3551 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
	4038 3516 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
	4038 4620 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	2	
	4038 7302 02	LABEL JAM	ラベル ジャム処理		D	1	
	4038 3571 02	CONTACT	接点		D	1	
	4038 3552 01	LEVER	レバー		C	1 1	
	4038 3512 02	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		Č	1	
	4038 3534 01	COLLAR	カラー		C		
	4038 0210 01	BRACKET ASSY	取付板 ASSY		D	1	+
	4038 3511 02	SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		C	2	
	4038 3523 01	STOPPER	ストッパ		C	1	
	4038 3521 01	COVER	カバー	A,A1	С	1	
	4038 R771 00	DOOR ASSY	縦搬送扉 A S S Y	A,A1	S	1	4
	4038 R772 00 4038 R742 00	DOOR ASSY ROLLER ASSY	縦搬送扉 ASSY 2次転写ローラー ASSY	B,C	S C	1 1	
l							-
							1
1							1
1							_

TRANSPORT DRIVE SECTION

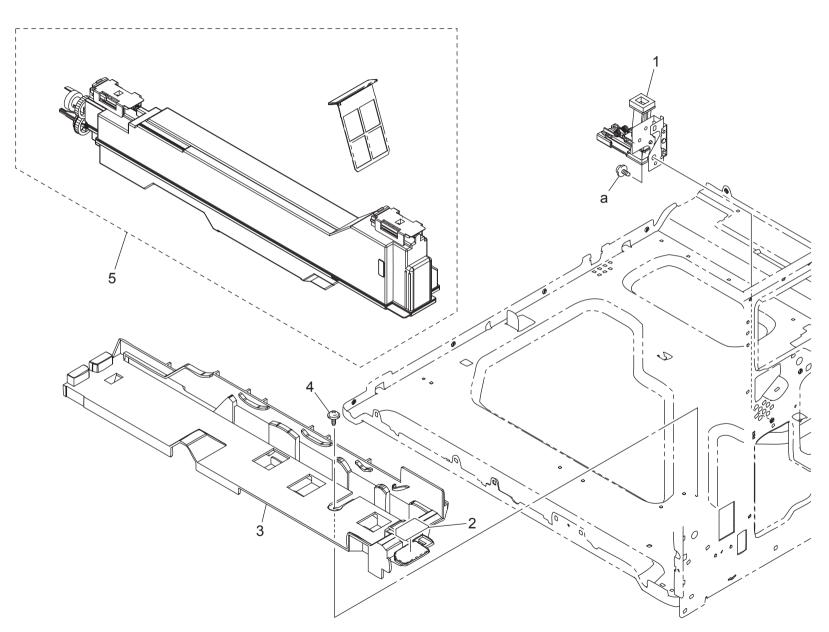


Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 2513 01	GEAR 83/115T	ギヤ 83/115 T		С	1	a-9735 0308 14
2	4038 2520 01	GEAR 65T	ギヤ 65 T		С	1	b-9721 0500 01
3	4038 2529 01	GEAR 26T	ギヤ 26 T		С	1	c-9739 0410 14 d-9646 0306 14
4	4038 2599 01	GEAR 32T	ギヤ 32 T		С	1	e-9754 3022 08
5	4038 2524 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	C 37 04 0022 00
6	4038 2531 01	GEAR 32/18T	ギヤ 32/18 T		С	1	
7	4038 2532 01	GEAR 24T	ギヤ 24 T		С	1	
8	9322 1400 21	CLUTCH	クラッチ		С	1	
9	4038 2551 01	GEAR 49/44T	ギヤ 49/44 T		С	1	
10	4038 2526 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
11	4658 3516 01	BUSHING	軸受		C	8	
12	4038 2519 01	GEAR 22T	#\frac{7}{22 T}		Č	1	
13	4038 2535 01	SHAFT	シャフト		Ď	1	
14	4038 2598 01	GEAR 18T	ギヤ 18 T		C	1	
15	4038 2699 01	PIN	ピン		C	1 1	
16	4038 2515 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
17	4038 2514 01	GEAR 50T	7		C	1	
					C		
18	4038 2549 01	GEAR 37/50T	ギヤ 37/50 T			1	
19	4038 2523 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
20	9322 1300 31	CLUTCH	クラッチ		C		
21	4038 2517 01	GEAR 22/38T	#\tau 22/38 T		С	1	
22	4038 2508 01	GEAR 55/31T	ギヤ 55/31 T		С	1	
23	4038 2578 01	GEAR 20/56T	ギヤ 20/56 T		С	1	
24	4004 2545 01	GEAR 18/30T	ギヤ 18/30 T		С	1	
25	4038 2539 01	HOLD PLATE	保持板		D	1	
26	4038 2536 01	HOLD PLATE	保持板		D	1	
27	4038 2253 01	SHIELD	シールド		D	1	
28	4038 2597 01	HOLD PLATE	保持板		D	1	
29	4038 2450 00	Seal	シール		D	1	
							1
							<u> </u> -

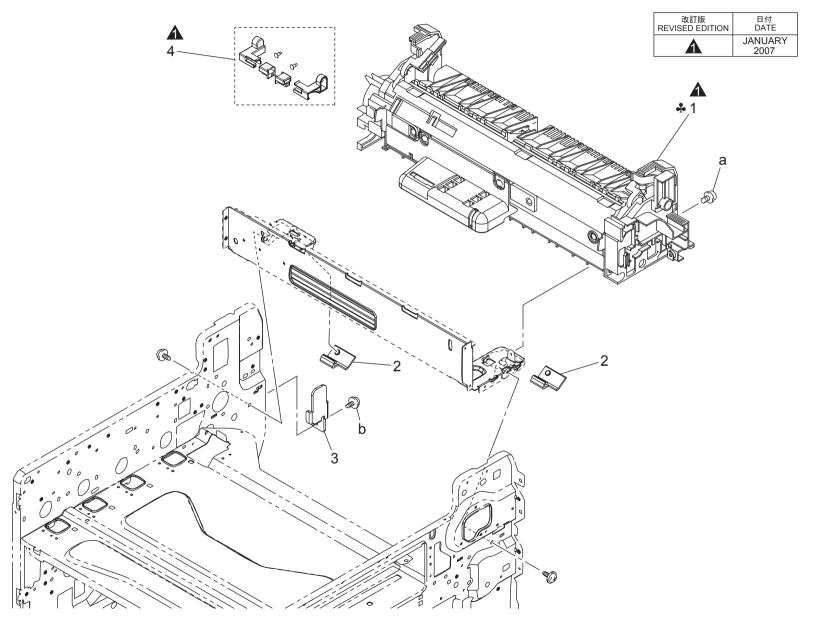


19

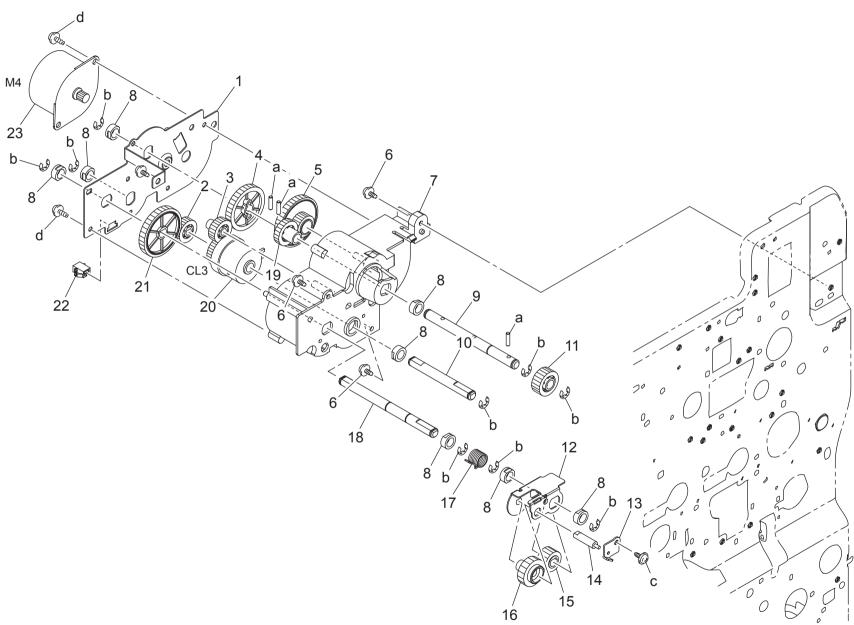
ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard part
1	4038 2118 01	SEAL	シール		С	4	a-9739 0308 14
2	4038 2076 01	SEAL	シール		С	4	b-4425 3001 01
	4038 2116 04	PIPE	パイプ(廃トナー後)		С	4	b-4425 3001 01 c-4425 3002 01 d-9735 0306 14
4	4038 2131 07	STIRRING PLATE	撹拌板		С	4	e-9721 0300 01
5	4038 2117 02	SEAL	シール		С	4	0 3721 0000 01
	4038 2119 01	SEAL	シール		С	4	1
	4038 2115 02	LID	蓋		C	3	
	4004 5607 02	BUSHING	軸受		C	2	
	4004 2545 01	GEAR 18/30T	ギヤ 18/30 T		C	2	
	4038 2579 01	GEAR 18T	ギヤ18 T		Č	1	
	4038 2586 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	1
	4004 5612 01	GEAR 18T	ギヤ 18 T		C	1	
	4038 2111 02	PIPE	パイプ		Č	1	
	4038 2111 02	SCREW	搬送羽根		C		
					C	1	
15	4038 2114 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね				
	4038 2143 01	SEAL CEAR 16T	シール		С	2	
	4038 2142 01	GEAR 16T	ギヤ 16 T		С	1	
	4038 2120 02	BUSHING	軸受		C	1	
9	9335 1300 61	PHOTO INTERRUPTER	フォトインタラプタ		В	1	
0	4038 0203 02	BRACKET ASSY	取付板 ASSY		D	1	1
	4038 2089 01	STOP PLATE	固定板		D	1	
	4038 2140 01	GEAR 32/30T	ギヤ 32/30 T		С	1	
3	4038 2130 01	GEAR 32T	ギヤ 32 T		С	1	
	4038 2113 02	SHUTTER	シャッタ		D	1	
	4038 2062 01	SEAL	シール		С	1	
	4038 1272 00	SEAL	シール		C	3	
							1
1							1
\dashv		_					_



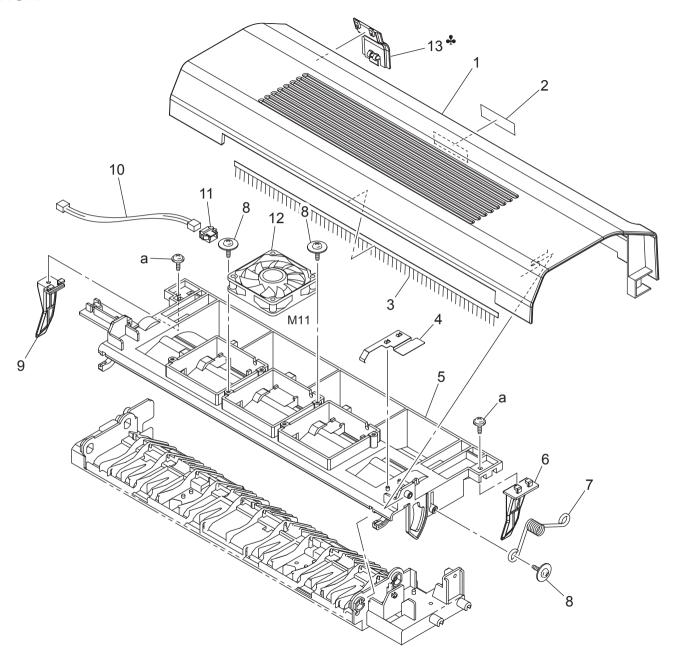
Key			Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4 5	4038 R732 00 4038 7311 02 4038 2013 04 4154 3804 01 4065 611	TONER PIPE LABEL RAIL SCREW WASTE TONER BOX	廃トナーパイプ(前) ラベル レール ねじ 廃棄トナーボックス		C D D C	1 1 1 1	a-9735 0306 14
							-
							-
							-



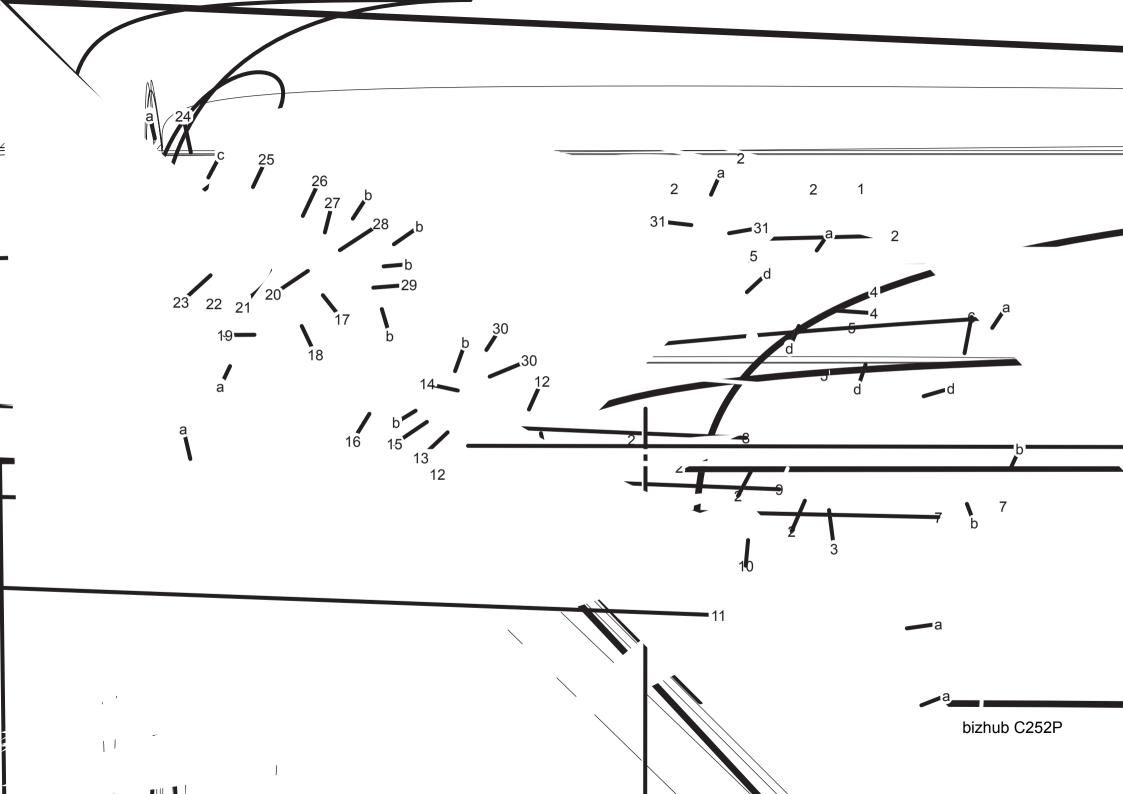
Key	Part No.	Desc	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 R774 00 4038 R773 00	FUSING UNIT 100V FUSING UNIT 110-127V	定着ユニット 100 V 定着ユニット 110-127 V	A,A1 B	A A	1 1	a-9646 0408 14 b-9735 0306 14
1	4038 R782 00	FUSING UNIT 220-240V	定着ユニット 220-240 V	c	A	1	
2	4038 2082 04	HOLDER	ホルダ (ロック爪・F)		С	2	
3	4038 3735 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
4	4038 R903 00	STOPPER KIT	ストッパキット		D	1	
							_
							4
							1
							╡
							1



Cey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard par
1	4038 2556 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	a-9752 3012 50
2	4038 2592 01	GEAR 18T	ギヤ 18 T		С	1	b-9721 0500 01 c-9735 0306 14 d-9739 0308 14
	4038 2591 01	GEAR 18T	ギヤ 18 T		С	1	c-9735 0306 14
	4038 2540 01	GEAR 37T	ギヤ 37 T		C	1	d-9739 0308 14
5	4038 2538 01	GEAR 81/17T	ギヤ 81/17 T		Č	1	
	4154 3804 01	SCREW	ねじ		C	3	_
	4038 2557 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
			ナルグ				
	4658 3516 01	BUSHING	軸受		C	8	
	4038 2573 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
	4038 2596 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
1	4038 2574 01	GEAR 20T	ギヤ 20 T		С	1	
2	4038 2576 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	4038 2577 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	4038 2588 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
5	4038 2580 01	GEAR 16T	ギヤ 16 T		Č	1	
			+ + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +				_
	4038 2575 01	GEAR 22T			С	1	
	4038 2600 02	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		С	1	
	4038 2587 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
	4038 2541 01	GEAR 20T	ギヤ 20 T		С	1	
	9322 1300 21	CLUTCH	クラッチ		В	1	
	4038 2593 02	GEAR 41T	ギヤ 41 T		С	1	
	9383 2210 11	CONNECTOR 2P	コネクター		D	1	
	9314 1400 71	MOTOR	パルスモータ		C	1	
	9314 1400 / 1	MOTOR	77/22-3		C	'	
_							
\dashv							╡
							_
1							1
_							_
\dashv					_		4
		1	l e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	•	1		

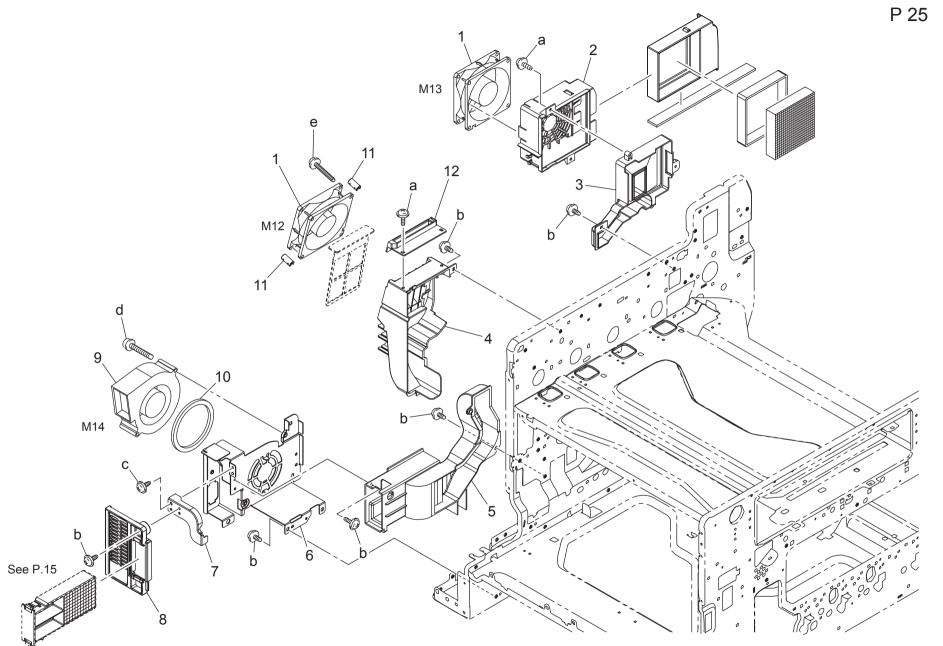


Key	Part No.	D	escription	Destinations	Class	Class QTY	
	4038 5881 05	COVER	カバー	255	C	1	Standard parts a-9739 0308 14
2	4038 7304 01	LABEL EXIT COVER	ラベル 排紙カバー		C	1	
3	4038 5856 01	NEUTRALIZING BRUSH	除電ブラシ		D	1	
4	4038 5886 03	EARTH GROUND	アース		D	1	
4	4038 5883 03		ガイド		C		
		GUIDE	7/16			1	
6	4038 5894 03	LEVER	レバー		C	1	
7	4038 5896 02	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		С	1	
8	4163 5293 01	SCREW	ねじ		С	3	
9	4038 5895 03	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
10	4038 6835 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	
11	9383 2210 41	CONNECTOR 3P	コネクター		D	1	-
12	9J06 M100 00	FAN MOTOR	ファンモータ		C	1	
12	9J00 W100 00	FAN MOTOR	J				
13	4038 5852 02	COVER	カバー	A,A1	С	1	
							7
							1
							4
							+
							1
							_
							4
							4
		1	•	1			

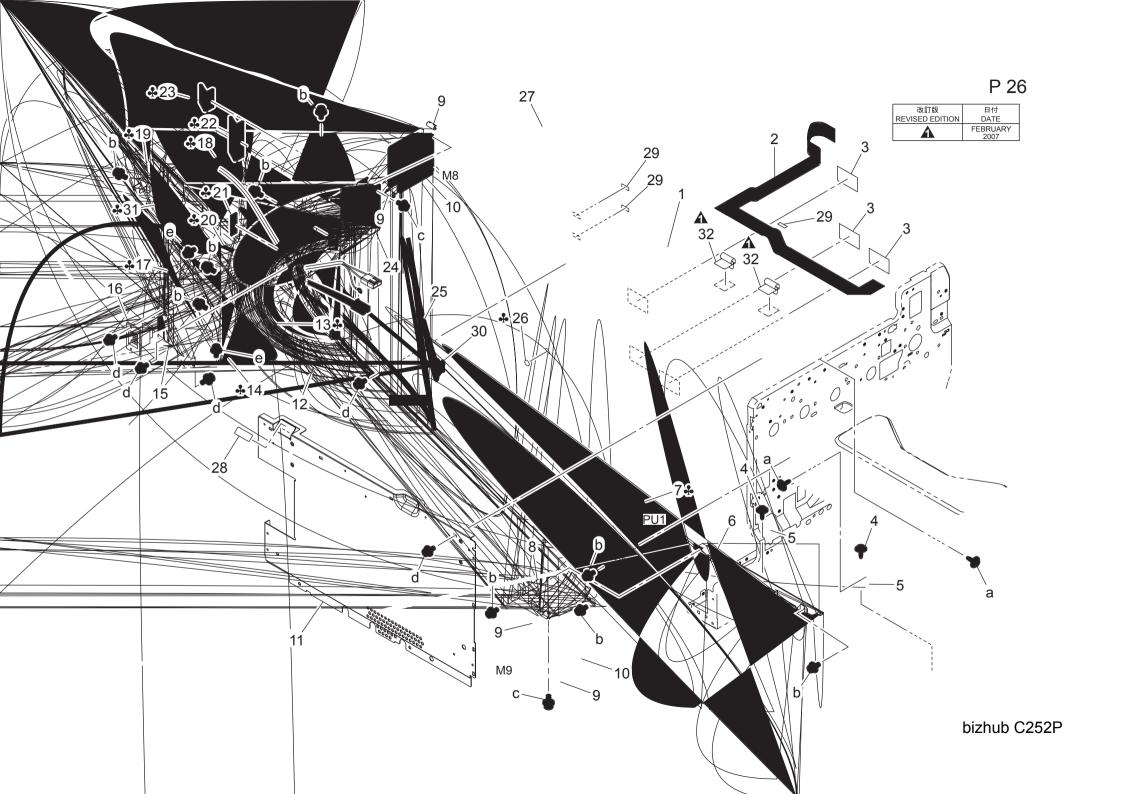


	1	DIVIVE SECTION	ativati a va	D. efficient	Olasa	OTV	1 age. 24
Key	Part No.		ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 5887 01	ROLLER	ローラ		С	1	a-9739 0308 14 b-9721 0400 01
2	4038 5915 01	ROLL	ころ		С	8	c-9739 0306 14
3	4025 5984 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	2	d-9752 3016 50
4	4038 5890 02	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		D	2	4 5 . 52 55 . 5 55
5	4139 5577 01	COLLAR	カラー		С	5	
6	4038 5891 02	EARTH GROUND	アース		D	1	
7	4038 5860 01	BUSHING	軸受		С	4	
8	4038 5884 03	GUIDE	ガイド		D	1	
9	4038 5901 01	ROLLER	ローラ		С	1	
10	4038 5885 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
11	4038 5869 01	DUCT	ダクト		D	1	
12	1200 1646 03	WASHER	ワッシャー		D	2	
13	4038 5893 01	TIMING BELT 144L	タイミングベルト 144 L		С	1	
14	4038 5897 01	PULLEY 24/16T	プーリ 24/16 T		С	1	
15	4038 5898 01	PULLEY 24T	プーリ 24 T		С	1	
16	4038 5889 02	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
17	4038 5870 01	GEAR 23/21T	ギヤ 23/21 T		С	1	
18	4038 5873 01	GEAR 32T	ギヤ 32 T		С	1	
19	4038 5879 01	GEAR 33/32T	ギヤ 33/32 T		С	1	
20	4038 5877 02	GEAR 24/20T	ギヤ 24/20 T		C	1	
21	4038 5862 01	TENSION SPRING	引張コイルばね		С	1	
22	4038 5864 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		C	1	
23	4038 5863 01	LEVER	レバー		Č	1	
24	4038 0212 01	BRACKET ASSY	取付板 ASSY		D	1	
25	4038 0213 01	BRACKET ASSY	取付板 ASSY		D	1	
26	4038 5861 02	LEVER	レバー		C	1	1
27	4038 5874 01	GEAR 16T	ギヤ 16 T		Č	1	
28	4038 5872 02	GEAR 18T	ギヤ 18 T		č	1	
29	4038 5871 02	GEAR 17/16T	ギヤ 17/16 T		č	1	
30	4038 5876 01	GEAR 14T	¥7 14 T		č	2	
31	4038 5888 02	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		D	2	1
l	.555 5555 52	. 22 5	100.10			_	
		<u> </u>					
							-
		+					4

REAR DUCT SECTION

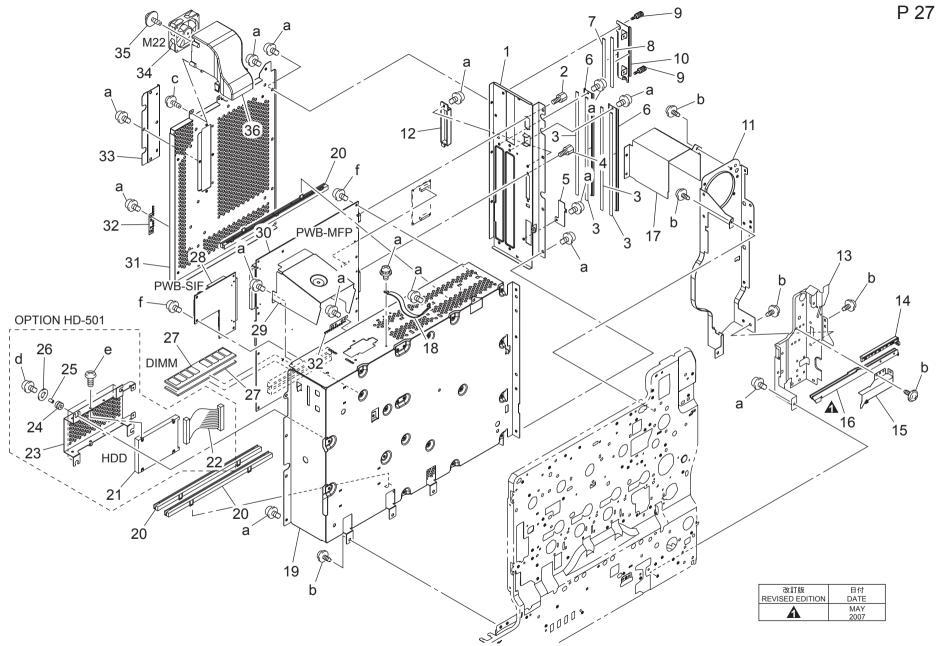


1 2	0040 4400 04					
2	9313 1400 81	FAN MOTOR	ファンモータ	С	2	a-9739 0308 14 b-9735 0308 14 c-9735 0306 14 d-9646 0440 14 e-9739 0335 14
-	4038 2031 01	DUCT	ダクト	D	1	b-9735 0308 14
3	4038 2033 01	DUCT	ダクト	D	1	c-9/35 0306 14
4	4038 2034 04	DUCT	ダクト	D	1	0-9040 0440 14 0-0730 0335 1/
5	4038 2055 02	DUCT	ダクト	D	1	6-9139 0333 14
	4038 2241 02	BRACKET	取付板	D	1	7
7	4038 2237 01	BRACKET BRACKET	取付板	D	1	
8	4038 1018 02	LEFT COVER	左カバー	C	1	
0	9313 1000 72	FAN MOTOR	ファンモータ	C		
9	9313 1000 72	SEAL	シール	C	1	
	4004 2148 01	SEAL	シール		1	4
	4038 2309 01	COLLAR	カラー	С	2	
12	4038 2195 03	RAIL	レール	D	1	
					i	
					i	
					i	
Î						1
					1	
					1	
					1	
					1	
						4
					i	
					i	
					i	
					i	
					<u> </u>	
					ĺ	
					i	
					i	
					i	
				1	i	
					 	-
				1	i	
				1	i	
				1	i	
				1	i	
						
					1	
					1	
					1	
					1	
					1	
						1
					1	
					1	
					1	
					1	
					 	4
					1	
					1	
					1	
					1	
					1	
					1	7
					1	
					1	
					1	
	l .			1	1	I

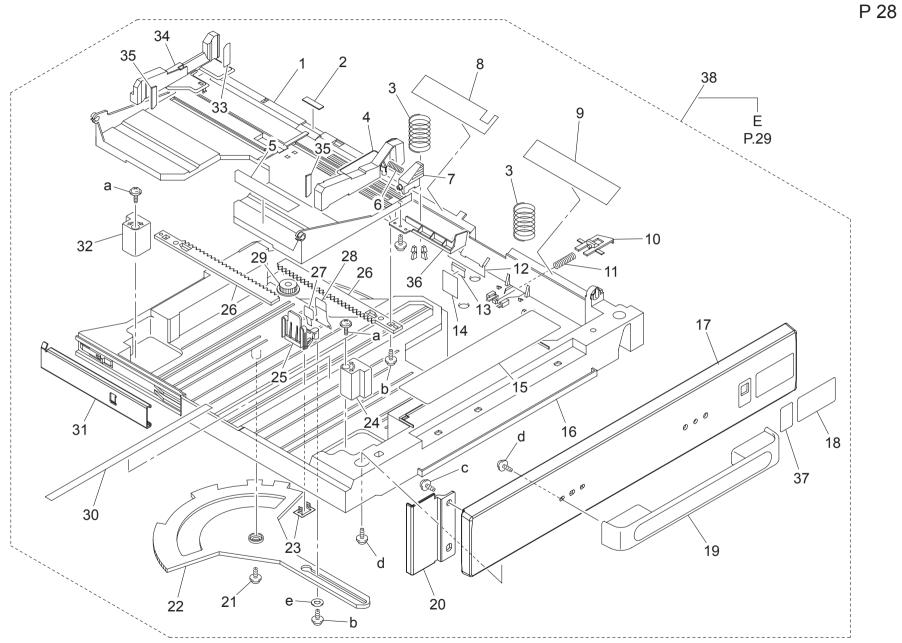


ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard par
1	4038 2401 08	FRAME	フレーム		D	1	a-9735 0306 14
2	4038 6847 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		С	1	b-9646 0306 14
	4038 2178 01	SEAL	シール		С	3	c-9646 0330 14
	4154 3804 01	SCREW	ねじ		C	2	d-9646 0308 14 e-9646 0408 14
	4038 2071 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	2	e-9040 0406 14
-	4038 2307 02	GUIDE	ガイド		D	1	-
	4038 6201 02	POWER SUPPLY	直流安定化電源	A,B			
					!		
	4038 6202 04	Power source Power supply /230V	電源低圧電源/230 V	С	<u> </u>	1	
	4038 2308 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	4038 2309 01	COLLAR	カラー		С	4	
0	9313 1400 81	FAN MOTOR	ファンモータ		С	2	
1	4038 2304 02	COVER	カバー		D	1	
	4038 2402 05	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	4038 2314 03	BRACKET	取付板	A,A1	D	1	
		WIRE HARNESS ASSY		A,A1	D	1	
	4025 6805 01		ハーネス ASSY	A,A1			
	9J06 2403 01	COVER	カバー		С	1	
	9J06 6814 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		С	1	
	9383 5000 11	JACK	ジャック	A,A1	D	1	
3	4037 2239 02	BRACKET	取付板	A,A1	D	1	
	4037 0775 01	POWER CORD	電源コード	A,A1	D	1	
	4038 2316 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板	B,C	D	1	┪
	4037 6751 01		導電材料	C	D	1	
		ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE MATERIAL	等电价 什				
	9384 4300 11	ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE MATERIAL	導電材料	C	C	1	
	9384 4300 21	ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE MATERIAL	導電材料	С	С	1	
	4038 2406 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	4038 H001 01	PWB ASSY	基板 ASSY			1	
	1500 2320 02	LABEL EARTH	ラヘ゛ル アース	A,A1	D	1	
	4038 6848 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY	, ,,	Č	1	
	4038 1050 01	SEAL	シール		č		
	4109 5530 01	STOPPER	ストッパ		С	3	
	9326 1410 31	FERRITE CORE	フェライトコア		D	1	
	4038 6807 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY	B,C	D	1	
2	4038 1310 00	SEAL	シール(台板・左)		С	2	
Ī							
4							_
\dashv							-

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS



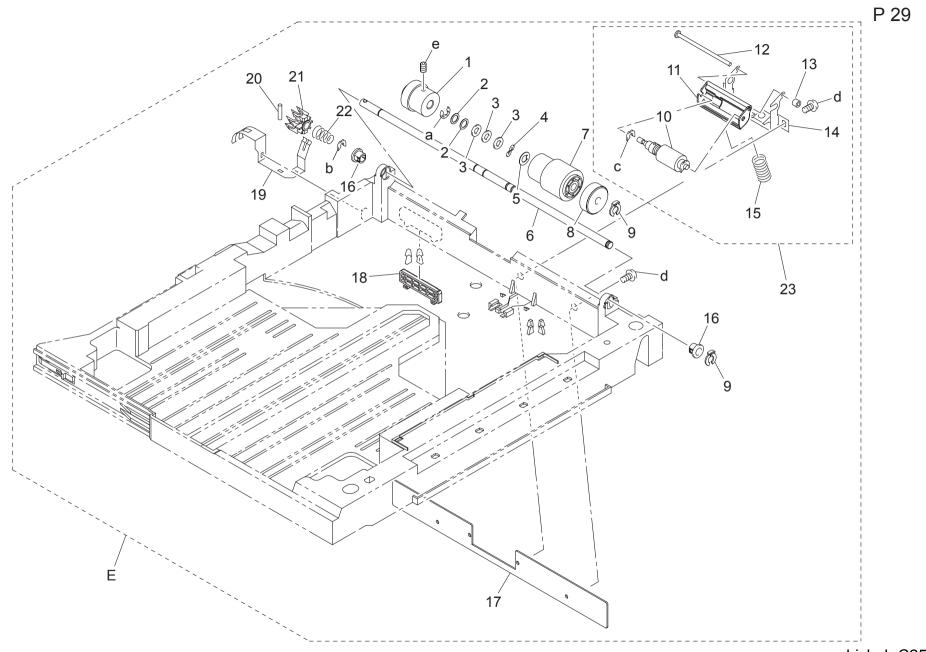
1 4038 2303 02 BRACKET	Class	QTY	Standard parts
3	D	1	a-9646 0306 14
### 4 # 4581 2269 04	D	2	b-9735 0306 14
5	D	4	c-9739 0308 14 d-9646 0316 14
Gold	С	2	e-9654 0304 14
6 4037 2247 01	С	1	f-9646 0308 14
Reference Re	C	2	1 00 10 0000 11
8 037 6777 01	D	1	
9	D	1	
10 4037 2219 02 BRACKET 取付板	Č	2	
11	Ď	1	
12 4038 2315 01 COVER カバー 補強板 14 4038 2074 05 REINFORCE PLATE 補強板 15 4038 2075 02 REINFORCE PLATE 補強板 16 4038 2073 02 Reinforce plate 補強板 17 4038 2073 02 Reinforce plate 補強板 17 4038 2073 02 Reinforce plate 相強板 18 4037 6812 01 WIRE HARNESS ASSY ハーネス A S S Y 20 4004 2203 01 GUIDE ガイド 20 4004 2203 01 GUIDE ガイド 20 4004 2203 01 GUIDE ガイド 20 4004 2203 01 BRACKET 取付板 (OPTION) (OPTI	D	1	
13	D	1	
44 4038 2036 01 CAP	D	1	
15			
Reinforce plate 特強板 17 4038 2405 01 DUCT ダクト	С	1	
17	D	1	
18	D	1	
9	D	1	1
4004 2203 01 GUIDE	D	1	
11 9J06 M705 00	D	1	
2 4036 6870 01 WIRE HARNESS ASSY	D	3	
2 4036 6870 01 WIRE HARNESS ASSY	1	1	
3	С	1	
4 4025 2294 01 BUSHING ブッシュ (OPTION) (D	1	
5 4025 2295 01 COLLAR カラー (OPTION) 6 4038 1351 00 WASHER ワッシャ (OPTION) 7 4037 6076 01 DIMMO DIMMO DIMMO 8 4038 0123 03 PWB ASSY 基板 A S S Y 9 4038 2404 03 DUCT ダクト 0 4038 0121 06 PWB-MFP PWB-MFP 1 4038 2302 01 LID 蓋	C	4	
6 4038 1351 00 WASHER ワッシャ (OPTION) 7 4037 6076 01 DIMMO DI MMO 基板 A S S Y 基板 A S S Y タクト PWB-MFP PWB-MFP PWB-MFP 1 4038 2302 01 LID 基	Č	4	
7 4037 6076 01 DIMMO DIMMO B 4038 0123 03 PWB ASSY 基板 A S S Y タクト DUCT タクト PWB-MFP PWB-MFP PWB-MFP B Motor	C	4	=
8	Ŭ	2	
9 4038 2404 03 DUCT ダクト 10 4038 0121 06 PWB-MFP PWB-MFP 11 4038 2302 01 LID 蓋	- ;	1	
Region	D		
31 4038 2302 01 LID 蓋	D .		
2 4038 1510 01	1	1	
33 4037 2244 01 COVER カバー 34 9J06 M100 00 FAN MOTOR ファンモータ 35 4163 5293 01 SCREW ねじ	D	1	
94 9J06 M100 00 FAN MOTOR ファンモータ 35 4163 5293 01 SCREW ねじ	D	2	
35 4163 5293 01 SCREW ねじ	D	1	
	С	1	
66 4038 2410 01 DUCT ダクト	С	2	
	D	1	
 			



bizhub C252P

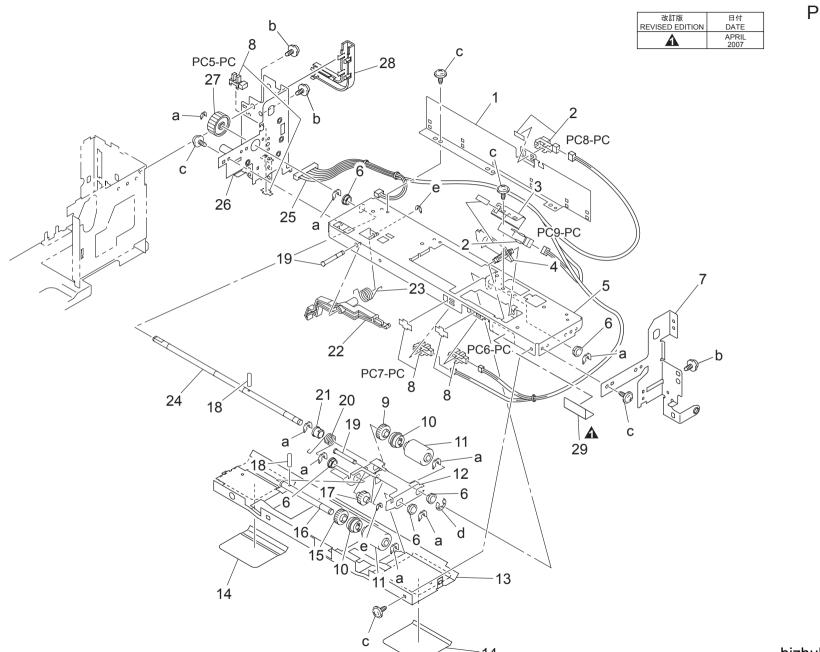
IVII	CAUGET	IE IRAT SECTION					Page. 20
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4036 3022 03	LIFTING PLATE	押上板		С	1	a-9739 0308 14
2	4687 3281 01	FRICTION SHEET	摩擦板		С	1	b-9739 0310 14
3	4134 3106 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	2	c-9739 0408 14 d-9739 0410 14
4	4036 3008 01	REGULATING PLATE	規制板		С	1	e-9716 0300 01
5	4036 7314 01	LABEL MP CD	ラベル マルチパーパス CD		D	1	3 37 13 3300 01
6	4038 5601 00	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	1	
7	4037 3210 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
8	4004 3040 02	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
9	4004 3024 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
10	1164 3061 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
11	1164 3062 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	1	
12	4004 3033 01	GUIDE PLATE	ガイド板		D	1	
13	4004 3038 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
14	4004 3008 01	SEAL	シール		С	1	
15	4038 7337 01	LABEL PAPER SUPPLY	ラベル ペーパー補給		С	1	
16	4036 3021 02	CASSETTE	カセット		D	1	
17	4038 3020 03	COVER	カバー (MPC)		D	1	
18	4038 7321 01	LABEL NUMBER	ラベル 段数表示		С	1	
19	4036 3025 01	HANDLE	取手		С	1	
20	4038 3071 02	COVER	カバー		С	1	_
21	4163 5293 01	SCREW	ねじ		С	1	
22	4004 3051 02	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
23	4004 3031 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
24	4037 3226 01	SPACER	スペーサ		D	1	
25	4037 3223 01	REGULATING PLATE	規制板		С	1	<u> </u>
26	4004 3032 01	RACK	ラック		С	2	
27	4021 3036 01	GUIDE	ガイド		C	1	
28	4004 3042 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
29	1164 3045 01	GEAR 20T	ギヤ 20 T		С	1	
30	4036 7313 01	LABEL MP FD	ラベル マルチパーパス FD		D	1	<u> </u>
31	4039 5604 00	RAIL	レール(補助・左)		D	1	
32	4037 3227 01	SPACER	スペーサ		D	1	
33	4004 7324 01	LABEL CAPACITY	ラベル 積載量		C	1	
34	4036 3028 12	REGULATING PLATE	規制板		С	1	
35	4036 3086 01	BRAKE	ブレーキ材		D	2	.
36	4036 3019 01	LEVER	レバー		D	1	
37	4030 7301 02	LABEL NEAR EMPTY	ラベル ニアエンプティ		С	1	
38	4038 R734 00	MULTIPURPOSE CASSETTE	MP カセット		S	1	
Ī							
-							<u> </u>
-							-
-							-{
	I						1

MPT CASSETTE PAPER TAKE-UP SECTION



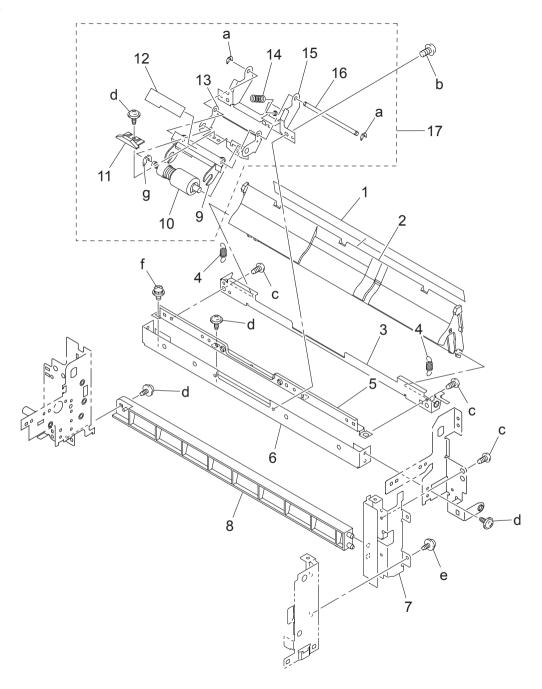
bizhub C252P

1.0							
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 3063 01	WEIGHT	重り		D	1	a-9721 0600 01
	4036 3030 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		С	2	b-1066 1151 01 c-4425 3002 01 d-9654 0408 14
3	4036 3031 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		С	3	C-4425 3002 01
	4011 3020 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		С	1	e-9684 0406 08
	1164 3066 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		С	1	
	4004 3001 02	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
	4034 3012 01	ROLLER	ローラ		Α	1	
	4004 3005 01	COLLAR	カラー		С	1	
	4658 3046 01	STOP RING	止め輪		С	2	
	4034 0151 01	SEPARATION ROLLER	分離ローラ		Α	1	
	4038 5654 00	HOLDER	ホルダ		С	1	
	4658 3040 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
	4038 5655 00	COLLAR	カラー		D	1	
	4004 3004 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	4004 3006 03	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	1	
	1164 3003 01	BUSHING	軸受		С	2	
	4036 3040 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	
	4039 5602 00	SPACER	スペーサ		D	1	
	4036 3018 01	EARTH GROUND	アース		D	1	
	4036 3014 01	PIN	ピン		С	1	
	1164 3004 03	PAWL	爪		С	1	
	1164 3005 02	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	1	
23	4038 R748 00	ROLLER ASSY	MP サバキ ASSY		С	1	
							-
			+				1
1							1
							1
1							1

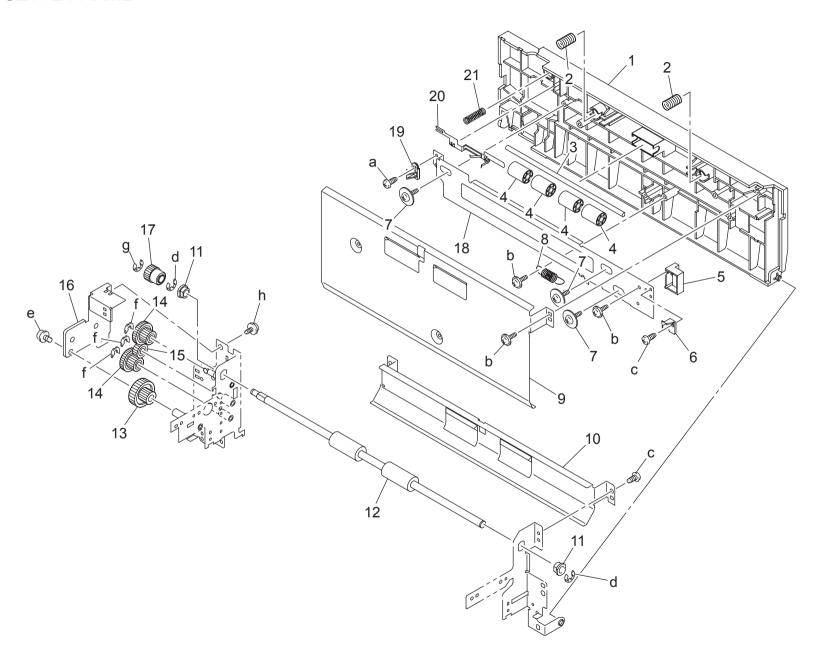


bizhub C252P

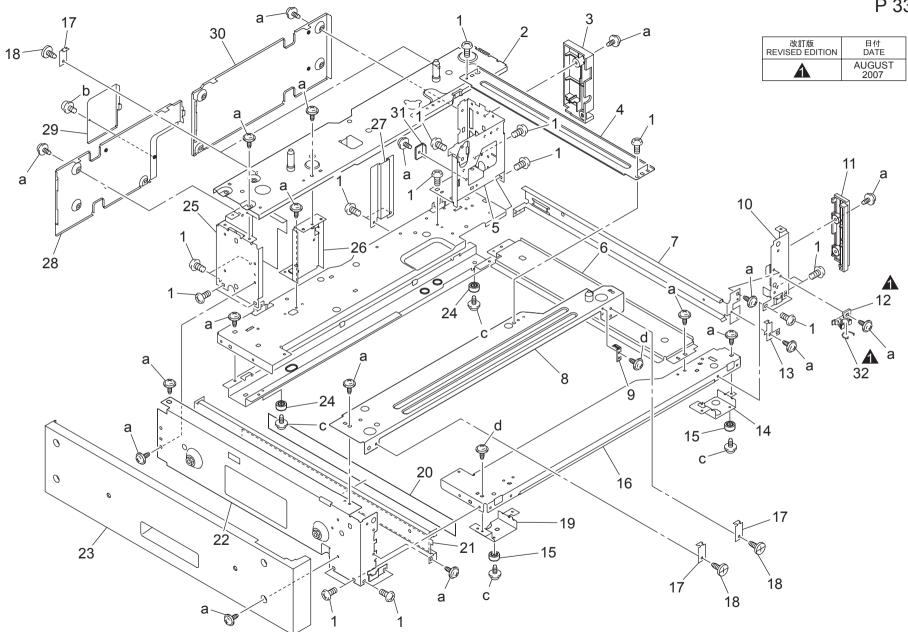
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
_		DDA OVET	•	Destinations			
1	4348 3046 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	a-4425 3001 01 b-9735 0408 14
2	4037 0902 01	PHOTO INTERRUPTER	フォトインタラプター		В	2	c-9735 0306 14
3	4348 3049 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	d-9721 0400 01
4	4030 3016 12	ACTUATOR	アクチュエータ		С	1	e-4425 3002 01
5	4030 3010 02	FRAME	フレーム		С	1	
6	4131 3003 01	BUSHING	軸受		С	5	
7	4067 3816 02	FRAME	フレーム		D	1	
8	4037 0906 01	PHOTO INTERRUPTER	フォトインタラプター		В	3	
	4425 3013 01	GEAR 30T	#7 30 T		С	1	
10	4030 3034 01	CLUTCH	クラッチ		Č	2	
11	4030 3005 01	ROLLER	ローラ		A	2	
	4030 3003 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
12							
13	4030 3095 01	GUIDE PLATE	ガイド板		С	1	
14	4030 3036 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	2	
15	4425 3016 01	GEAR 32T	ギヤ 32 T		С	1	
16	4030 3003 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
17	4030 3008 01	GEAR 29T	ギヤ 29 T		С	1	
18	1067 2501 01	PIN	ヒ°ン		С	2	
19	4030 3020 02	SHAFT	シャフト		D	2	
20	4030 3030 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		Č	1	
21	1065 3086 01	BUSHING	シ゛クウケ		C	1	
			レバー			1	
22	4030 3011 03	LEVER			С		
23	4030 3012 01	TORSION SPRING	ねじりコイルばね		С	1	
	4348 3047 01	SHAFT	シャフト		С	1	
25	4067 6804 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	
26	4067 0204 03	FRAME ASSY	フレーム ASSY		D	1	
27	4348 3029 01	GEAR 32T	ギヤ 32 T		С	1	
28	4348 3070 02	COVER	カバー		D	1	
	4067 5620 00	Seal	シール		D	1	



Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4030 3105 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	a-4425 3002 01
2	4030 3124 03	GUIDE	ガイド		D	1	b-9743 0308 14 c-9743 0306 14 d-9735 0306 14 e-9735 0308 14
3	4030 3129 03	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	c-9743 0306 14
4	4030 3125 01	TENSION SPRING	引張コイルばね		Č	2	d-9735 0306 14
5	4030 3037 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	e-9735 0308 14 f-9646 0308 14
			取付板			1	g-4425 3001 01
6	4030 3025 02	BRACKET	以为似		D		g-4425 3001 01
7	4036 3846 02	STAY	支柱		D	1	
8	4036 3838 01	GUIDE PLATE	ガイド板		D	1	
9	4030 3077 01	GUIDE	ガイド		D	1	
10	4030 0151 01	SEPARATION ROLLER ASSY	分離ローラ ASSY		Α	1	
11	4030 3078 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
12	4030 3079 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
	4030 3013 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
	4030 3017 03	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		C	1 1	
			江州コイルは4				
	4067 5614 00	BRACKET	取付板(さばきホルダ)		D	1	
16	4030 3039 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
17	4067 R704 00	ROLLER ASSY	ローラー ASSY		S	1	
						1	7
							1
						1	
						1	1
						1	1
					<u> </u>	1	1
						1	
						1	
						1	
						1	1
							_
							1
						1	
						1	1
					-	+	4
						1	
						1	1
						1	
	I	1			1	1	1



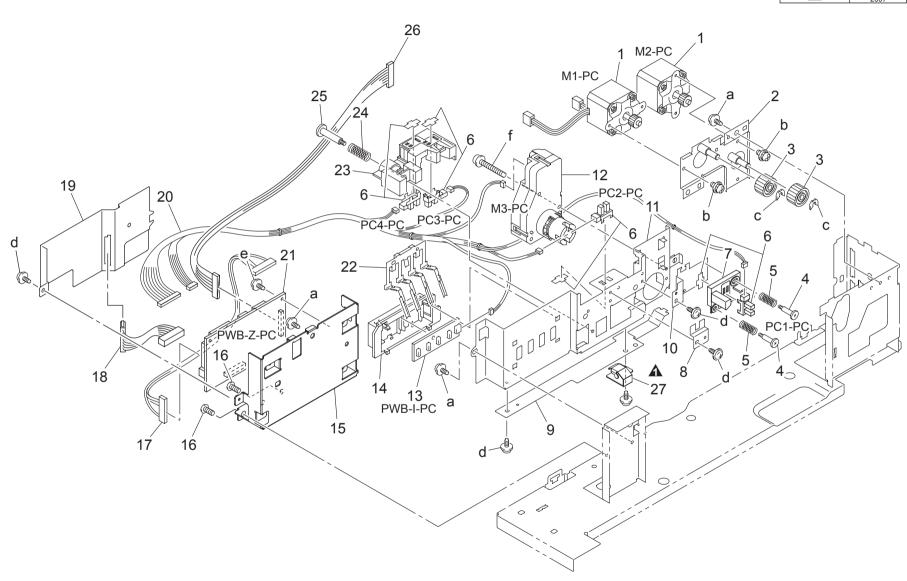
ey	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard par
1	4067 3822 03	DOOR	扉		С	1	a-9735 0308 14
2	4030 3123 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	2	b-9739 0308 14
3	4348 3071 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	c-9743 0306 14 d-9721 0600 01
ŀ	4030 3122 01	ROLL	ころ		С	4	e-9646 0306 14
;	4067 3833 01	HANDLE	取手		C	1	f-4425 3001 01
;	4036 3823 01	LEVER	レバー		C	1	g-9721 0400 01
	4163 5293 01	SCREW	ねじ		Č	3	g-9721 0400 01 h-9735 0306 14
	4030 3116 01	TENSION SPRING	引張コイルばね		C		
						1	
	4067 3834 01	GUIDE PLATE	ガイド板		D	1	
)	4348 3042 01	GUIDE PLATE	ガイド板		С	1	
	4131 3532 02	BUSHING	軸受		С	2	
	4348 3011 04	ROLLER	ローラ		С	1	
	4348 3048 01	GEAR 19/40T	ギヤ 19/40 T		С	1	
	4348 3031 01	GEAR 19/32T	ギヤ 19/32 T		С	2	
	4348 3032 01	GEAR 20T	ギヤ 20 T		С	1	
	4348 3069 04	BRACKET	取付板		D	1 1	1
	4348 3028 01	GEAR 22T	ギヤ 22 T		C	1 1	
	4067 3832 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1 1	
	4038 6251 00	LEVER	サスプリが		C		
	4067 3825 01	EARTH GROUND	アース		D	1	4
	4036 3831 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	1	
							1
							1
							4
							1
							1
							1
							1
							1
							1
-						1	╡
							1
							1
							1
	ı	i	1	1	i	1	1



ZINL	OAOOLI	I E FRAIVIE					Page. 33
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4002 2581 01	SCREW	ねじ		С	21	a-9735 0408 14
2	4067 0202 03	PLATE ASSY	天板 ASSY		D	1	b-9646 0308 14 c-9735 0308 14 d-9735 0306 14
3	4067 3803 02	COVER	カバー (右後)		D	1	c-9/35 0308 14
4	4067 3818 02	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	u-9735 0306 14
5	4036 3810 03	STAY	支柱		D	1	
6	4036 3849 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	1
7	4348 2042 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
8	4067 0201 02	PLATE ASSY	天板 ASSY(前)		D	1	
9	4067 3821 01	PLATE SPRING	板ばね		D	1	
10	4036 3808 03	STAY	支柱		D	1	
11	4067 3802 01	COVER	カバー		D	1	
12	4348 6205 00	Holder	ホルダ		D	1	
13	4067 5601 00	STOPPER	ストッパ(カセット)		D	1	
14	4036 3843 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
15	0996 3055 01	RUBBER FOOT	コ゛ムアシ		C	2	
16	4036 3814 01	BASE FRAME	コームアン 台板		D	1	-
					С	4	
17	4658 3140 02	STOP PLATE	固定板			4	
18	4658 3042 02	SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		С	4	
19	4036 3828 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
20	4348 2044 01	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	_
21	4348 2041 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
22	4067 3807 03	STAY	支柱 (左前)		D	1	
23	4067 3805 02	LEFT COVER	左カバー		D	1	
24	4030 2080 01	RUBBER FOOT	ゴム足		D	2	
25	4036 3809 01	STAY	支柱		D	1	
26	4036 3811 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
27	4067 3871 01	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	
28	4067 3856 02	REAR COVER LEFT	後カバー 左		D	1	
29	4067 3857 02	COVER	カバー		С	1	
30	4067 3855 02	REAR COVER RIGHT	後カバー 右		D	1	
31	4348 2040 01	SPACER	スペーサ		D	1	
32	4348 6206 00	Stop ring	止め輪		D	1	
						-	
-							-
-							1

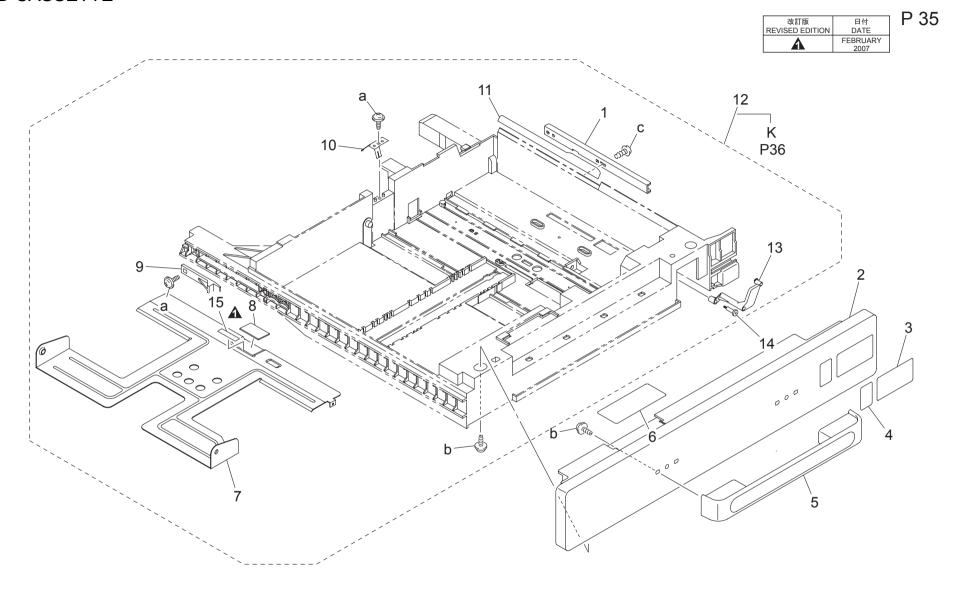
P 34

改訂版	日付
REVISED EDITION	DATE
A	FEBRUARY



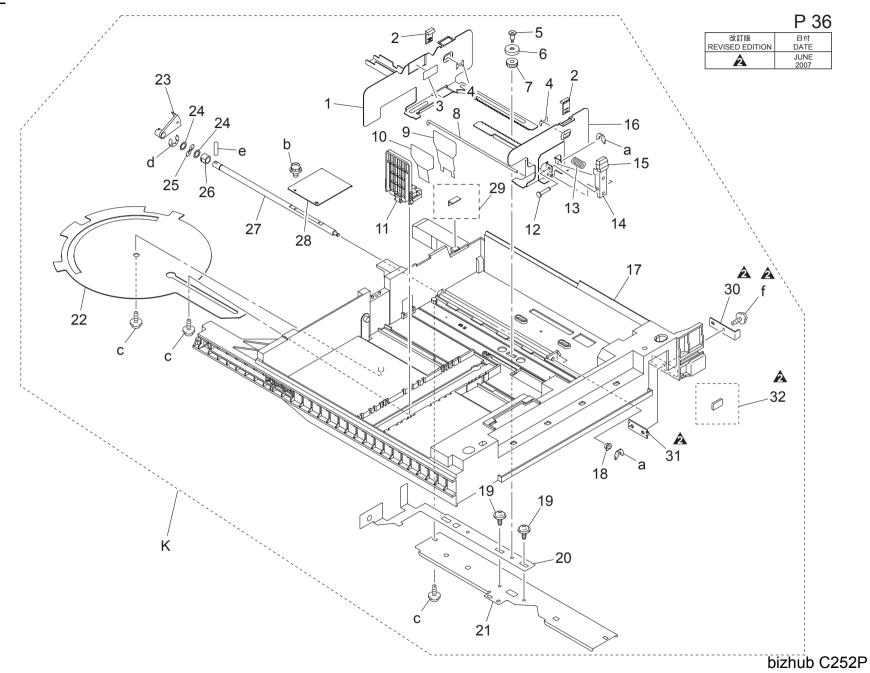
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard par
1	9314 1300 61	MOTOR	パルスモータ		В	2	a-9735 0408 14
2	4067 0203 02	FRAME ASSY	フレーム ASSY		D	1	b-9646 0306 14
	4348 3030 01	GEAR 27T	ギヤ 27 T		С	2	c-4425 3001 0
	4030 3224 02	SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		Č	2	d-9735 0306 1
5	4030 3081 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		Č	2	e-9735 0308 1 f-9646 0330 14
-		PHOTO INTERRUPTER	フォトインタラプター		В	4	1-9646 0330 12
	4037 0906 01						
	4030 3083 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
	4030 3048 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
9	4030 3049 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
0	4030 3208 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
1	4030 3046 03	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	9J06 M103 00	MOTOR	マグネットモータ		В	1	
	4037 0104 01	PWB ASSY	基板 ASSY		C		
					_	!	
	4011 3012 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
	4067 3815 02	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
6	4002 2581 01	SCREW	ねじ		С	2	
	4067 6801 04	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	
	4067 6805 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY		D	1	
		COVER	カバー		D		
	4067 3820 01						
	4067 6802 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネスASSY		D	1	4
	4067 0101 03	PWB ASSY	基板ASSY		С	1	
2	4030 3091 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
3	4030 3047 02	HOLDER	ホルダ		D	1	
	4002 3110 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		С	1	
	4002 3131 01	SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		č	1	
	4067 6803 02	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY		D	1	=
	50GA 6271 01	LIFTING STAY	押上げステー		C	1	
							_
							_

2ND CASSETTE

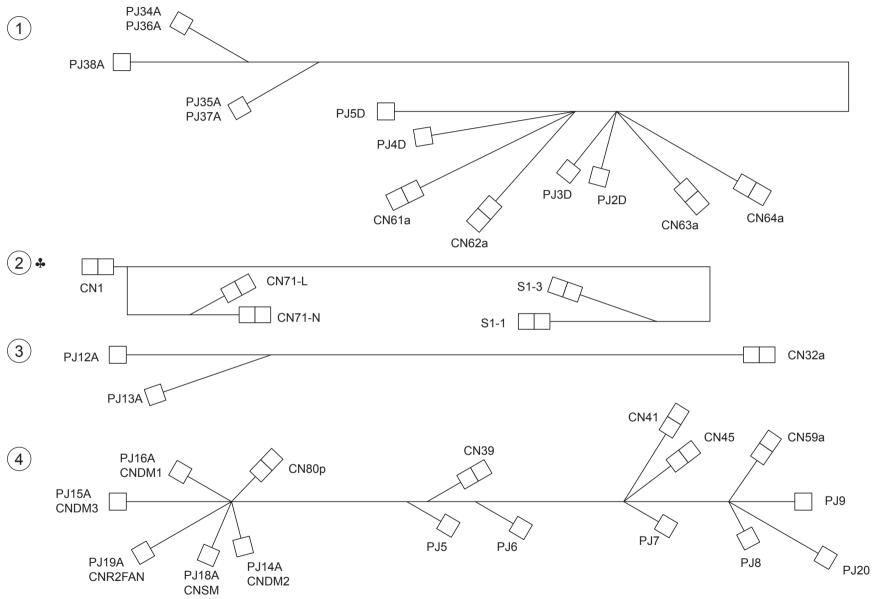


Key	Part No.	De	scription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4030 3229 02	REINFORCE PLATE	補強板		D	1	a-9739 0308 14 b-9739 0410 14 c-9742 0308 14
2	4067 3852 01	FRONT COVER	前カバー		С	1	b-9739 0410 14
3	4038 7321 01	LABEL NUMBER	ラベル 段数表示		С	1	c-9742 0308 14
4	4030 7301 02	LABEL NEAR EMPTY	ラベル ニアエンプティ		С	1	
5	4036 3025 01	HANDLE	取手		С	1	
	4040 7304 01	LABEL PAPER SUPPLY	ラベル ペーパー補給		C	1	
7	4030 3203 01	LIFTING PLATE	押上板		č	i	
	4030 3226 01	FRICTION SHEET	摩擦板		Č	1	
		STOPPER	ストッパ		D		
9	4498 3469 01	STOPPER	アース		C	1	
	4030 3223 03	Earth ground				1	_
1	4030 3222 03	GUIDE	ガイド		С	1	
2	4040 0156 0D	CASSETTE ASSY	カセット ASSY		S	1	
3	4030 3221 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
14	4030 3224 02	SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		С	1	
15	A00J 6234 00	FRICTION PLATE	摩擦板		С	1	
							-
							1
							_
							Ⅎ
						-	-
						1	1

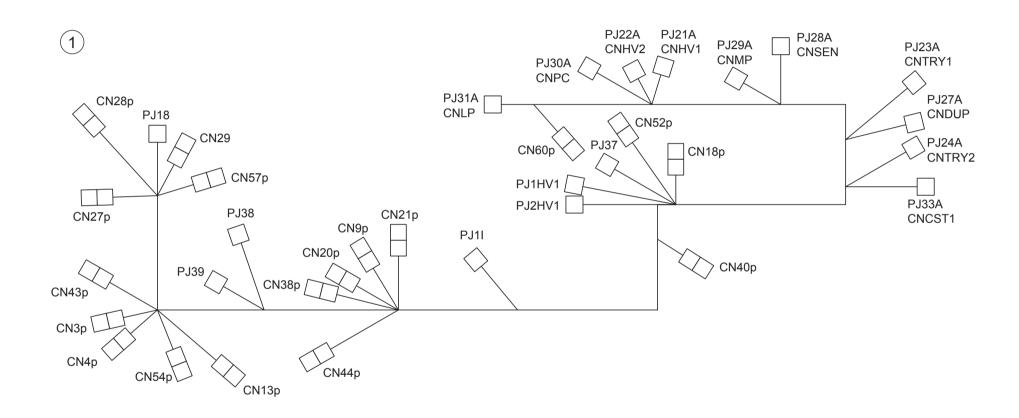
2ND CASSETTE



2 465 3 400 4 465 5 403 7 465 8 403 9 403 10 403	030 3212 01 058 3048 01 002 7306 01 058 3049 01 030 3214 02	REGULATING PLATE GUIDE LABEL CARRYING CAPACITY	規制板 ガイド		С	1	a-4425 3002 01
2 465 3 400 4 465 5 403 7 465 8 403 9 403 10 403	558 3048 01 002 7306 01 658 3049 01 030 3214 02		ガイド	1	1 -	i	
4 465 5 403 6 403 7 465 8 403 9 403 10 403	358 3049 01 30 3214 02	LABEL CARRYING CAPACITY			С	2	b-9646 0308 14 c-9739 0308 14
4 465 5 403 6 403 7 465 8 403 9 403 10 403	358 3049 01 30 3214 02		ラベル 積載量		С	1	c-9739 0308 14
5 403 6 403 7 465 8 403 9 403 10 403	30 3214 02	STOPPER	ストッパ		C	2	d-9721 0600 01 e-9754 3025 08
7 465 8 403 9 403 10 403		SHOULDER SCREW	段ねじ		С	1	f-9735 0310 14
7 465 8 403 9 403 10 403	030 3215 01	GUIDE	ガイド		D	1	1 0700 0010 11
8 403 9 403 10 403	558 3012 01	GEAR 14T	ギヤ 14 T		С	1	
9 403 10 403	30 3217 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
10 403	30 3228 12	GUIDE	ガイド		C	1	
	30 3227 01	GUIDE	ガイド		Č	1	
11 403	37 3213 12	REGULATING PLATE	規制板(後)		C	1	
	198 3826 01	SHAFT	シャフト		Ď	1	
	198 3825 01	PRESSURE SPRING	圧縮コイルばね		C	1	
	128 3823 01	LEVER	レバー		č	1	
	37 3204 01	KNOB	つまみ		C	1	
	030 3211 02	REGULATING PLATE	規制板		C	1	-
	30 3211 02	Cassette	カセット		D	1	
	992 3014 01	BUSHING	ジクウケ		C	1	
					-		
	198 3834 01	SCREW	ねじ		C	2	
	030 3216 01	BRACKET	取付板				_
	030 3218 01	BRACKET	取付板		D	1	
	002 3108 01	LEVER	レバー		С	1	
	030 3207 01	ACTUATOR	アクチュエータ		С	1	
	011 3021 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		С	2	
	011 3020 01	WASHER	ワッシャ		С	1	
	274 3603 01	BUSHING	ジクウケ		С	1	
	30 3205 01	SHAFT	シャフト		D	1	
	30 3206 01	LEVER	レバー		D	1	
	030 P002 00	SPACER	スペーサ		С	1	
	30 6214 00	Stopper	ストッパ		D	1	
	30 6215 00	Plate nut	板ナット		D	1	
32 403	30 3238 00	STOPPER	ストッパ		D	1	
							1
-+					1		
-+					1		4

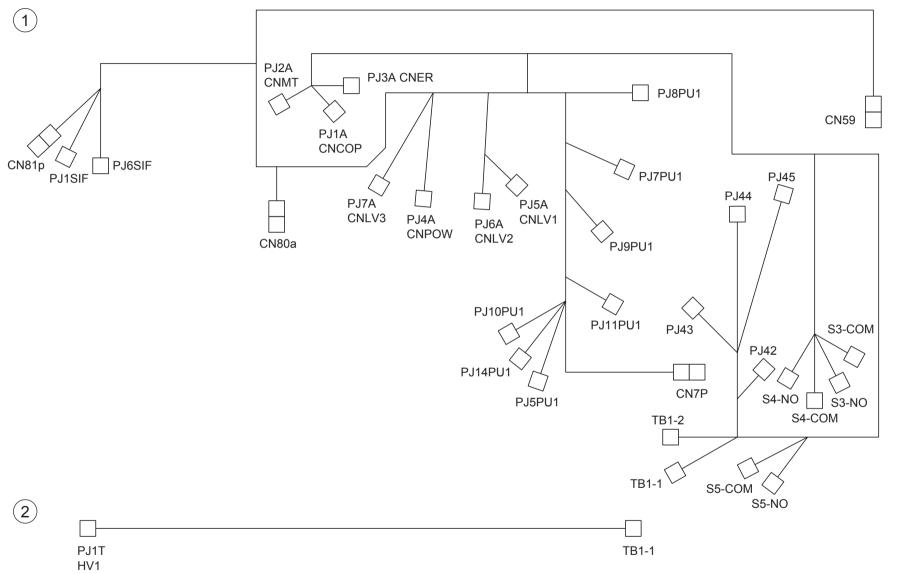


	Part No. Description Destinations Class QTY Stand						
Key	Part No.			Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4	4038 6803 03 4038 6817 03 4038 6821 02 4038 6824 04	WIRE HARNESS ASSY WIRE HARNESS ASSY WIRE HARNESS ASSY WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス A S S Y ハーネス A S S Y ハーネス A S S Y ハーネス A S S Y	A,A1	D D D	1 1 1 1	



Key	Part No.		scription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	4038 N100 00	WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY(本体制御)		D	1	
							_
							_
							_





Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2	4038 6841 05 4038 6836 01	WIRE HARNESS ASSY WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY ハーネス ASSY		D D	1	
							_
							_
							<u> </u>
l							

1

CN84 PJ8Z

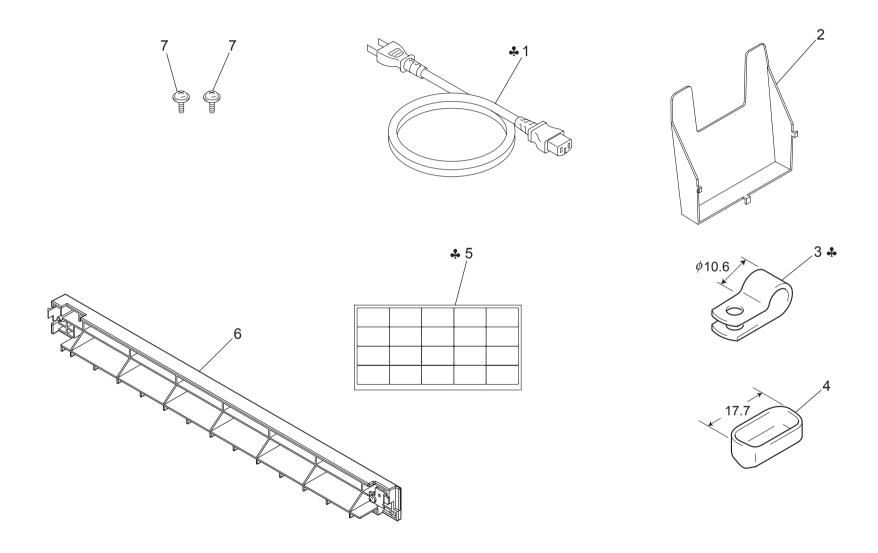
2 PJ4 SIF ___

PJ1UN1

Key			escription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2	4038 6844 01 4038 6842 02	WIRE HARNESS ASSY WIRE HARNESS ASSY	ハーネス ASSY ハーネス ASSY		D D	1 1	
							_
							-
							-
							-
							-

							F 41
5.21	13.2	11 8.5	33 18	21	26	31	36
5.2	5.2	12 46.1 25.8	17 4 11.1	22			37
3 7.6 6.4	7.3	13 31.4	18	23	28	33	38
14.4	9 30 7	14 L=104	19	24	29		39
9.2	10 5 1.3 2.4	15 L=110	20	25	30	35	40

Эy	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
	9384 1000 51	WIRING SADDLE	ワイヤーサドル		D	5	
2	9J06 M900 00	WIRE SADDLE	ワイヤーサドル		D	3	
	9384 1310 81	WIRING SADDLE 6.4H	ワイヤーサドル		D	1	
	9384 1921 01	WIRING SADDLE 14.4H	ワイヤーサト゛ル		D	3	
	9384 1921 11	WIRING SADDLE 9.2H	ワイヤーサト゛ル		D	5	
	9384 1921 21	WIRING SADDLE 9:211 WIRING SADDLE 15:2H	ワイヤーサト゛ル		D	11	-
						37	
	9384 1000 51	WIRING SADDLE	ワイヤーサドル		D		
	9384 1100 91	WIRING SADDLE	ワイヤーサドル		D	33	
	9384 1100 31	RETAINER	保持部品		D	7	
	1065 5872 02	CORD CLAMP	CORD PUSH		D	16	
1	9384 2010 21	EDGE COVER 8.5H	エッジカバー		D	15	
2	9384 2910 21	EDGE COVER	エッジカバー		D	3	
	9384 2910 31	EDGE COVER	エッジカバー		D	9	
	9384 1311 11	CABLE TIE 104L	ケッソクハ゛ント゛		D	4	
	9384 1410 51	CABLE TIE 110L	ケッソクハ゛ント゛		D	1 1	
		INSULATING MEMBER	クリノソハ フト (44/41++				
	1038 4006 01		絶縁材		D	1	
	9384 1521 51	CORD BUSHING	コート゛フ゛ッシンク゛	A,A1	D	1	
	4581 7901 02	JIG	治具		S	1	
9	4038 R913 00	Compact Flash	メモリーカード		S	1	
							_
							-
						1	
						1	
_							4
Į						İ	
						I	
Į						I	
ļ							1
Į						I	
						I	
						I	
						I	
						1	
┥						 	1
J						1	
						I	
						I	



	CCESSURT PARTS						
Key	Part No.		ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	9381 4101 31	POWER CORD	プラグ付電源コード	В	С	1	
1	9381 4300 41	POWER CORD	プラグなし電源コード	С	С	1	
2	1156 7501 01	HOLDER	ホルダ		С	1	
3	9384 1700 24	P-CLIP	P クリッフ°	В	D	1	
4	9384 2200 31	CN COVER	コネクタカバー		D	1	
5	4038 7313 01	LABEL METRIC	ラベル メトリック	A,C	C	1	
5	4038 7314 01	LABEL INCH	ラベル インチ	B	Č	1	
	4030 7314 01	COVED ACCY		D			
6	4067 R706 00	COVER ASSY	カバー ASSY		С	1	
7	9646 0308 14	SCREW	コネジ		D	2	
	1				İ	İ	1
	ļ						
	 	<u> </u>					1

MAINTENANCE LIST 1/1

● The items with no Page/Key numbers are not handled as spare parts.

No.	Section	PM Parts Description	Maintenance (Cycle (K=1,000)	Parts No.	Destinations	Page/Key	Note
		-	QTY	Replace				
1	Tray 1	Feed Roller	1	200K	4034301201		P29-7	
2		Separation Roller Assy	1	200K	4034015101		P29-10	
3	Bypass	Feed Roller	1	200K	4131300101		P7-8	
4		Separation Roller Assy	1	200K	4034015101		P6-23	
5	Tray 2	Feed Roller	1	300K	4030300501		P30-11	
6		Separation Roller Assy	1	300K	4030015101		P31-10	
7		Pick-up Roller	1	300K	4030300501		P30-11	
8	Conveyance section	2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit	1	120K	4038R74200		P17-20	*2
9		Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance	1	120K				*2
10	Fusing section	Fusing Unit	1	120K	4038R77400	A,A1	P21-1	
10		Fusing Unit	1	120K	4038R77300	В	P21-1	
10		Fusing Unit	1	120K	4038R78200	С	P21-1	
11		Deodorant Filter	1	20K				*3
12	Processing section	Imaging Unit Y/M/C	1	30K				
13		Imaging Unit K	1	70K				
14		Ozone Filter	1	120K				*2
15		Toner Cartridge Y/M/C	1	12K				
16		Toner Cartridge K	1	12K				*3
17		Dust Filter/Cooling Fan	1	30K				*4
18	Image transfer section	Image Transfer Belt Unit	1	120K	4038R74300		P15-24	*2
19		Waste Toner Box	1	30K	4065611		P20-5	*4

^{*1:} Actual durable cycle is the Life counter value.

^{*2:} Also replace the 2nd Image Transfer Roller Unit, Dust Filter/Vertical Conveyance and Ozone Filter packed in the Image Transfer Belt Unit at the same time when 120 K is reached.(Part No. of the Transfer Kit: 4038 R743 00)

^{*3:} Also replace the Deodorant Filter packed in the Toner Cartridge K at the same time when 20 K is reached.

^{*4:} Also replace the Dust Filter/Cooling Fan packed in the Waste Toner Box at the same time when 30 K is reached.

メンテナンスリスト

●ページ/キーナンバーのないものは、アフターサービス部品ではありません。

No.	区分	PM 部品名称	サイクル	(K=1,000)	部品番号	仕向地	頁/キー	備考
			員数	交換				
1	トレイ1	給紙ローラ	1	200K	4034301201		P29-7	
2		分離ローラ Assy	1	200K	4034015101		P29-10	
3	手差し	給紙ローラ	1	200K	4131300101		P7-8	
4		分離ローラ Assy	1	200K	4034015101		P6-23	
5	トレイ2	給紙ローラ	1	300K	4030300501		P30-11	
6		分離ローラ Assy	1	300K	4030015101		P31-10	
7		ピックアップローラ	1	300K	4030300501		P30-11	
8	搬送部	2 次転写ローラユニット	1	120K	4038R74200		P17-20	*2
9		防塵フィルタ / 縦搬送	1	120K				*2
10	定着部	定着ユニット	1	120K	4038R77400	A,A1	P21-1	
10		定着ユニット	1	120K	4038R77300	В	P21-1	
10		定着ユニット	1	120K	4038R78200	C	P21-1	
11		消臭フィルタ	1	20K				*3
12	プロセス部	イメージングユニット /Y/M/C	1	30K				
13		イメージングユニット /K	1	70K				
14		オゾンフィルタ	1	120K				*2
15		トナーカートリッジ /Y/M/C	1	12K				
16		トナーカートリッジ /K	1	12K				*3
17		防塵フィルタ / 冷却ファン	1	30K				*4
18	転写部	転写ベルトユニット	1	120K	4038R74300		P15-24	*2
19		廃棄トナーボックス	1	30K	4065611		P20-5	*4

- *1: 実質交換サイクルの数値は、ライフカウンタの値である。
- *2: 2 次転写ローラユニット、防塵フィルタ / 縦搬送およびオゾンフィルタは、転写ベルトユニットに同梱され、120 K で同時交換する。(転写キット部品番号: 4038 R743 00)
- *3: 消臭フィルタは、黒のトナーカートリッジに同梱され、20 K で同時交換する。
- *4: 防塵フィルタ/冷却ファンは、廃棄トナーボックスに同梱され、30 K で同時交換する。

DESTINATION

Destination No.		Destinations		V	Hz	Model No.
А	A1	JAPAN		100	50/60	4038-002
	A2	JAPAN		200	50/60	
В		USA, CANADA		120	60	4038-302
С		EUROPEAN TYPE		220-240	50/60	4038-206
D	D1	S.E ASIA TYPE	THAILAND, SRI LANKA, SINGAPORE, MALAYSIA, HONG KONG, PAKISTAN, INDIA, BANGLADESH, INDONESIA	220-240	50/60	
	D3	OCEANIA TYPE	AUSTRALIA, NEW ZEALAND	220-240	50/60	
E		PHILIPPINES		220-240	50/60	
F	F1	SAUDI ARABIA		127	60	
	F2	SAUDI ARABIA		220-240	50/60	
G	G1	C.S AMERICA		220-240	50/60	
	G2	C.S AMERICA		120	60	
Н		TAIWAN		110	60	
I		JORDAN, LEBANON, SYRIA, SOUTH AFRICA, IRAQ, IRAN, N.YEMEN, CAMEROON, UAE, BAHRAIN, OMAN, QATAR, KUWAIT, KENYA, TUNISIA, IVORY COAST, MOROCCO		220-240	50/60	
J		CHINA		220-240	50/60	
K		KOREA		220-240	50/60	